



WAIPOUA STATE FOREST 13 ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT
STAGE ONE REPORT SUBMITTED AT THE COMPLETION OF
ARCHAEOLOGICAL CONTRACT NO. 13

1985

N.Z.F.S.

AUCKLAND CONSERVANCY

MICHAEL TAYLOR

ANNETTA SUTTON

WITH A SECTION ON TRADITIONAL
MAORI HISTORY BY NED NATHAN

Released under the Official Information Act

CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
1.0 INTRODUCTION	1
1.1 Waipoua and the Hapu <u>Te Roroa</u> by Ned Nathan	3
1.2 Logging on Archaeological Sites	7
2.0 COMPARTMENT 5	10
2.1 Resurvey	10
2.2	14
2.3 Logging of Archaeological Sites	17
2.4 Future Management	20
3.0 COMPARTMENT 15	22
3.1 Resurvey	22
3.2 Management Undertaken	22
3.3 Logging of Archaeological Sites	26
3.4 Future Management	27
4.0 OTHER WORK UNDERTAKEN	29
4.1 Compartment 6 Survey	29
4.2 Compartment 7 Survey	29
4.3 Compartment 19 Survey	29
4.4 Compartment 19, 20, 22 and 27 Shelter Belts	29
4.5 Compartment 27 Survey	29
4.6	30
4.7 Compartment 30	30
4.8 Compartment 66	30
5.0 WAIPOUA FOREST ARCHAEOLOGICAL RESERVE AND ADVISORY TRUST	31
6.0 SUMMARY REMARKS	33
7.0 REFERENCES	35
8.0 APPENDICES	
Appendix I History of Waipoua by Ned Nathan.	
Appendix II Compartment 5 Site Record Forms and Additional Information Sheets.	
Appendix III Compartment 15 Additional Information Sheets and Site Record Forms.	
Appendix IV Compartments 20, 27 and 30 Site Record Forms.	

Released under the Official Information Act

PAGETABLES

Table 1 : Summary of Archaeological Site Management within Compartments 5 and 15 of Waipoua S.F. 13	2
Table 2 : Te Roroa O Ngatiwhatua	4
Table 3 : Waka Mamari O Ngapuhi Te Waka Mahuhu Ki Te Rangi O Ngatiwhatua	6
Table 4 : Summary of Archaeological Sites In Compartment 5	12
Table 5 : Summary of Archaeological Sites in Compartment 15	24

FIGURES

Figure 1 : Map of Compartment 5 Showing Archaeological Site Locations	11
Figure 2 : Map of Compartment 15 showing Archaeological Site Locations	23

PLATES

Plate 1 : Heap 1 viewed from south west, eastern edge, Site N18/109, Waipoua S.F.13(See plan)	Appendix II
Plate 2 : Heap 4 viewed from west, eastern edge, Site N18/109, Waipoua S.F. 13 (See plan)	Appendix II
Plate 3 : Heap 5 viewed from west, eastern edge, Site N18/109, Waipoua S.F. 13 (See plan)	Appendix II
Plate 4 : Heap 7 viewed from north, eastern edge, Site N18/109, Waipoua S.F. 13 (See plan)	Appendix II
Plate 5 : Intact stonework on Feature 13, Site N18/140, Waipoua S.F. 13	Appendix III
Plate 6 : Feature 15, viewed from southeast, Site N18/140, Waipoua S.F. 13	Appendix III
Plate 7 : Surface, Feature 15 layer 2 during excavation. Site N18/140, Waipoua S.F. 13	Appendix III
Plate 8 : Layer 2, Feature 15, partially excavated. Site N18/140, Waipoua S.F. 13	Appendix III

Released under the Official Information Act

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This report records the results of archaeological site survey and management work undertaken in Waipoua State Forest 13 between March and July 1985.⁽¹⁾ The work included the completion of detailed archaeological surveys of Compartments 5 and 15, and with the assistance of the Waipoua Forest Staff, the development of proposals to minimise any damage to archaeological sites during clearance of pines. Archaeological sites also occur in several other compartments in the forest but attention was focused on Compartments 5 and 15 as logging was due to proceed there in 1985-86. However, logging which was planned to occur during the term of the contract did not proceed.

Survey work revealed a greater number of sites than previously known, and a greater proportion of sites in pines than anticipated. Several of the sites discovered include features that are unique in New Zealand and warrant preservation. Previous fieldwork in Waipoua Forest has been reviewed by Coster (1983) who also presented a detailed review of the proposals for archaeological site management in the forest. A summary of Coster's proposals, updated by Ian Lawlor (1984), Auckland Conservancy Archaeologist, prior to the start of this contract, is presented in Table 1. Central to previous proposals (Papworth 1980; Pierce 1981; Coster 1983) was the recommendation that a substantial number of sites in native bush bordering the river and some of the sites in pines be protected as an archaeological reserve.

Considerable liaison and co-operation between the tangata whenua, the hapu Te Roroa of Ngati Whatua, and Forest Service archaeologists has taken place. A statement written by Ned Nathan, reflecting the importance of the sites to Te Roroa people, is included in this report (see Section 1.1). This statement includes whakapapa and a list of the names of places, most of which still remain to be identified by archaeologists.

The Reverend Maori Marsden of Te Roroa performed whakanoa ceremonies and blessed the principle sites in Compartments 5 and 15 on 13 April 1985. The whakanoa were said both for these old places and the valley sites as a whole. Te Roroa valley residents, their families, and Forest Service staff and archaeologists took part in the ceremonies.

Numerous other visitors have also inspected the sites, in particular the terraces and stonework of Te Kopae, N18/106 and N18/187. These visitors have included Forest Service staff from Waipoua and Auckland, trainees from the School of Forestry in Christchurch, Forest Service goat hunters and a Forest Research Institute possum survey team, archaeologists from the University of Auckland, Lands and Survey Department and Historic Places Trust, and members of the Northern Wairoa (Dargaville) Museum.

(1) An interim report titled *Notes on Archaeological Site Management Waipoua S.F. 13 Compartments 5 and 15*, was submitted to the Forest Service, 16 April 1985 (see Auckland Conservancy File 6/13/21/1).

Released under the Official Information Act

COMPARTMENT 15

COMPARTMENT 5

[illegible]Table 1

Summary of Archaeological Site Management
Within Compartments 5 and 15 of Waipoua
S.F. 13, November 1984

```
t = previous Historic Places Trust
(HPT) authorities issued.
tt = previous HPT permits issued.
? = problems
H = high priority investigation.
L = low priority investigation.
R = monitor ringbarking trials.
```

(cf. Lawlor 1984)

Released under the Official Information Act

A visit from a television news crew from the *Te Karere* programme lead to features on both *Te Karere* and the 6.30 *News* on 20 May 1985 which featured Te Kopae and parts of N18/109.

1.1 Waipoua and the Hapu Te Roroa by Ned Nathan

Not having sufficient time, and the fact that I have already submitted a brief summary of the Waipoua history and the past leaders of note (Appendix 1), I believe it is now opportune to record some of our whakapapa (Tables 2 and 3). This we believe will be useful to the archaeologists in establishing chronological factors as their work and research progresses.

There are many sites not mapped whose individual characteristics form part of a synthesis. Raiha Paniora and myself are the only survivors who can evaluate and give a traditional tribal perspective to the information concerned. Our resolve to reveal these traditions has been prompted by the sensitivity of Forest Service archaeologists, Ian Lawlor and his associates Annetta Sutton and Michael Taylor to our feelings. Their professional pragmatism has neither dominated nor infringed on our mana and mauri. In the past, ignorance and insensitivity in these matters has caused apprehension and indignation.

We are very pleased that we have been consulted and invited to participate where possible. This we know will be mutually beneficial to the project, because instances will arise where our familiarity with events will help in the analysis and interpretation. This factor became apparent when the Te Kopae spring of exorcism (site N18/109) was uncovered. We anticipate this will happen again as the project continues. For that reason we hope the project proceeds without delay as both Raiha and myself are now counting months not years.

We request that the local tangata whenua be seriously considered as employees on the restoration of these sites. Apart from the advantage of proximity to the sites we welcome the opportunity to learn from professionals with whom we have already established a harmonious relationship and in whom we have confidence our spiritual aspirations will continue to be recognised. It would be disheartening if for some reason the restoration work is terminated; it would be false economy in our estimation to cease operations considering the time, effort and expenditure already committed.

We also feel that the time is right to correct registered but erroneous place names. Historians and others, through negligent authography, though unintentional, have caused literal misinterpretations as well as the traditional significance embodied to be lost.

Released under the Official Information Act

Table 2

Te Roroa O Ngatiwhatua

Manumanu I of Ngaitamatea, who had links with tribes from Muriwhenua (extreme north) settled in Waipoua approximately 400 years ago. He married Maearoa of the people of Kui, the descendants of Tuputupuwhenua. He initially settled at Whenuahou (the Paniora flats). He relinquished the name Ngai-Tamatea out of his affection for his famous warrior son, Manumanu II. He repelled all invaders' attempts to conquer Waipoua. Seemingly he was an enormous person, and brave as a lion. The name stems from the admiration of his enemies, who, whilst gazing upon his dead torso, exclaimed *Te Hei! Te Roroa o te tangata, rite tonui ki te kahikatea!* (Behold! How tall the man that resembles the Kahikatea (white pine)).

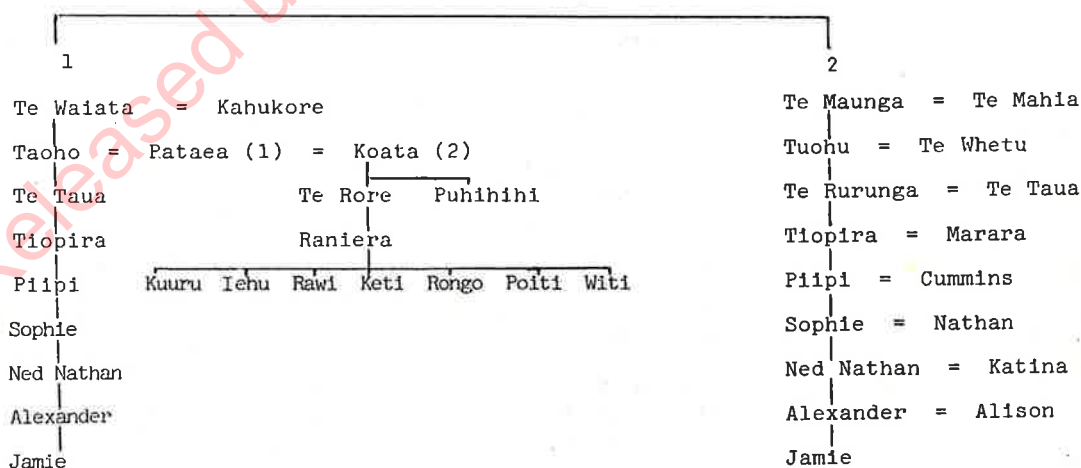
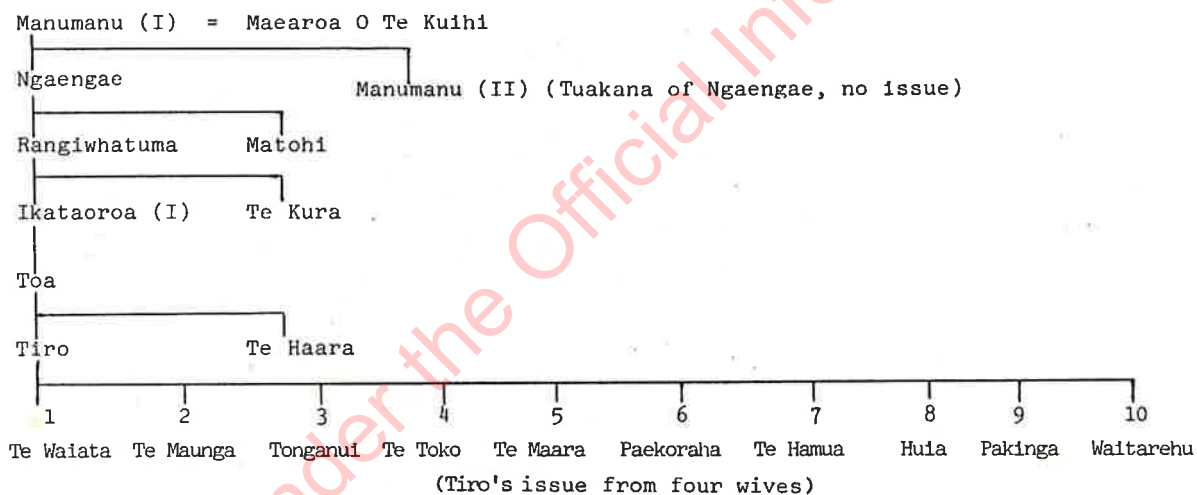


Table 2 continued...

Released under the Official Information Act

1
4

Te Toko = ?
Ikataoroa (II)
Hakaraia = Te Ata o te Rangi
Hakaraia Paniora
Keita Pohe*¹ Poutu Rupena Taru
 Arthur Pae Rueben
 Barney Freda
 David

Toa = Waitarehu
Tiro Te Haara
 Poaka
 Te Haurangiroa
 Te Ngaru Te Arahua Wi-Tuwahere
 Naera Neta Te Arahua
 Te Ngaru
 Matene Naera
 Wiremu
 Whetu

Tiopira = Marara (one son, four daughters, and grandchildren)
Ahe =
Rewiri = Heremaia Kaiwhatu = P.Paniora*¹ Hira = Paraone Pairama Iha = Kereama Piipi = Cummins
 Taoho Te Atarangi Ngutahi (no issue) 1. Sophie
 Hemo Te Taua = Birch Wharangi 2. Rihiri
 Rewa Heta 3. Pahinui
 Riria 4. Wereta
 Hana 5. Rewiri
 Rapata

Released under the Official Information Act

Table 3

Waka Mamari O Ngapuhi

Ruanui
 Tekora Konui A Rua
 Matiti
 Wawenga
 Hakumanu
 Taiwawe
 Tuputa
 Papauenuku
 Ruanui-Tuawa
 Tuwhenuaroa
 Tumutumu
 Paparewa Rawheao
 Poutu Tauwhenua
 Moeana Puaiti
 Kahukore* Takangaroa
 Taoho Mawete
 Te Taua Rua
 Tiopira Erana = Ngakuru Pana
 Piipi = Cummins
 Sophie = Nathan
 Ned Nathan = Katina
 Alexander = Alison
 Jamie

Te Waka Mahuhu Ki Te Rangi O Ngatiwhatua

Rongomai
 Tikiwharawhara
 Mawete
 Taiko
 Urukahinga
 Te Aweoterangi
 Te Kura
 Haurangiroa
 Paehangi
 Tiaho
 Tuhoromia
 Kekeao
 Manumanu (I) = Maearoa O Te Kuihi
 Ngaengae Manumanu (II) (of Te Roroa fame - no issue)
 Rangihwhatuma Matohi
 Ikataoroa Te Kura
 Toa Te Ara (I)
 Tiro Te Ara (II)
 Te Waiata* Hana
 Taoho Kiripute
 Te Taua Karawai
 Tiopira Kuao
 Piipi Iraia Hone
 Sophie Iraia Hare
 Ned Nathan Iraia Piri
 Alexander
 Jamie

Whatuakaimarie
 Pukerewa
 Mata (I)
 Kehi
 Hapetu
 Ruaohewhenua
 Haki
 Mata (II)
 Taiuiui
 Kauere
 Heremaia
 Rekauere
 Taitua
 Kura
 Waitarehu =

Tuputupuwhenua
 Ngaengae

Released under the Official Information Act

The Papatea site N18/87 (*Place of Divinity*) we regard as significantly more important than many of the other sites. According to Tiopira Kinaki it was the tuahu (the spiritual nucleus within which ritual ceremonies were performed). Te Maunga was the tupuna said to control this papakainga. He was the brother of Te Waiata who was responsible for the Te Kopae papakainga (N18/106 and 187) at Oputonga. We know from ancient chants that it was established before Te Maunga's time as reference is made to a *tuahu tuaarangi* (ancient location). We are naturally curious to learn the scientific dating.

The following are place names not recorded on maps. All have historical significance.

Te Waimana A Toa	Whangamoa
Taniwhanui	Tarangore
Matatuahu	Morungaroa
Tuhirangi	Rangitarere
Waingata	Mahurangi
Okuratore	Te Kauri
Pupuaia	Katianui
Maringiroa	Paraweta
Kakanui	Pananawe
Owhiotu	Te Paekoraha
Te Riu	Te Morunga
Wairangahau	Matatina
Okowhanga	Whenuahou
Kaimanu	Te Rurunga
Hauoto	Te Koutu
Puketapu	Owetenga
Paoka	Manuwhetai
Koputauaki	Whangaiariki

Some of these place names are associated with Rongomai of waka Mahuhu ki te Rangi. Tradition has it that waka Mahuhu arrived before the main migrations from Polynesia. They found the uri of Tuputupuwhenua on the land and through inter-marriage gained ascendancy. This is the reason I've attached the genealogies.

1.2 Logging on Archaeological Sites

Logging of all sites will need to be carried out with sensitivity to ensure that archaeological values are disturbed as little as possible. The Forest Service has agreed that logging of sites will be carried out with the protection of sites being the primary objective rather than commercial considerations. For this purpose a specially trained Forest Service logging gang will be brought together and supervised at a senior level.

Released under the Official Information Act

The detailed logging of individual sites can be planned on site by consultation between the logging officer and archaeologist. Detailed felling and extraction plans for timber on each site would entail a considerable amount of time and would not obviate the need to have an archaeologist present during logging operations. It is also anticipated that the presence of more sites will become apparent as logging proceeds, and it will be important to have an archaeologist present to recognise these features and to evaluate their worth.

In the discussion of logging in Waipoua Forest archaeological sites can be divided into two types :

earthwork sites	- pits, terraces, drains etc.
stonework sites	- heaps, facings, channels etc.

Experiments in logging on earthwork sites have had some success. In Waipoua, pines were logged on a pit and terrace site, N18/142, with only minimal disturbance to earthworks (Pierce 1982). During recent logging of a coastal pa, N49/80, in Tairua State Forest, damage was limited to some areas of surface disturbance (Lawlor in prep.).

Many of the Waipoua earthwork sites can probably be clearfelled with minimal disturbance to archaeological features or disruption to normal timber production. Most of these sites are located on steep knolls or ridges and trees can be felled down the surrounding slopes away from the features, and dragged away using waste timber as slides.

No trial logging of stone structure sites has been undertaken and techniques will need to be developed and modified as protection logging proceeds. However, the fragile nature of the stone structures suggests they could suffer considerable damage during logging. The intact stone faces that can be found on many of the stone structures at Waipoua are especially vulnerable to collapse.

A number of general practices should apply during the logging of sites :

- 1.2.1 All undergrowth and scrubby vegetation should be cut at ground level where necessary during clearfelling to reduce the risk of damage to features and soil stratifications.
- 1.2.2 Trees, including those on sites, should be felled away from sites and features.
- 1.2.3 Unmerchantable trees should be felled across sites and slopes to act as skids for the extraction of timber.
- 1.2.4 No machines should enter within marked site perimeters. On large sites where access may be necessary, machine corridors should be clearly defined in advance.

Released under the Official Information Act

1.2.5 Attention to erosion control will be necessary and cutouts on tracking should be put in wherever necessary to avoid damage to adjacent sites through water run-off.

1.2.6 Where necessary a wide variety of other protective measures can also be utilised. Trees can be removed singly or in segments, stumps can be cut high on site perimeters and features, to prevent logs swinging across sites and to restrict machine access. Waste timber and slash can be stacked against features as protection and trees can be left standing where felling will be exceptionally damaging.

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

2.0 COMPARTMENT 5

Compartment 5 (Fig. 1), a series of north facing ridges, flats, gullies, and steep slopes, is bounded to the north by the Waipoua River for approximately 4.5 km, and extends south to an east-west aligned ridge-top. Opotonga Road traverses the length of the compartment below the ridge line. The road name is derived from an old name, Oputonga, meaning *sheltered from the south* (Ned Nathan pers. comm.).

Soils within the compartment are variable and include large areas of Waipoua basalt derived soils and alluvium at lower levels, overlaid by sandy soils on the upper slopes. Deposits of resistant basalt occur naturally on the ground surface throughout the compartment and it is in these areas that Maori stonework is found.

A 1915 survey plan (ML 10004) for the area shows the majority of the compartment as *poor land* with light bush in the wet gullies where native bush is retained today. The *poor land* shown on the survey plan was planted in a variety of pine species in the 1930s and 1940s (Table 4). The only features of archaeological interest recorded on the early plan within Compartment 5 are horse tracks which skirted the compartment's boundaries and which can still be traced on the ground.

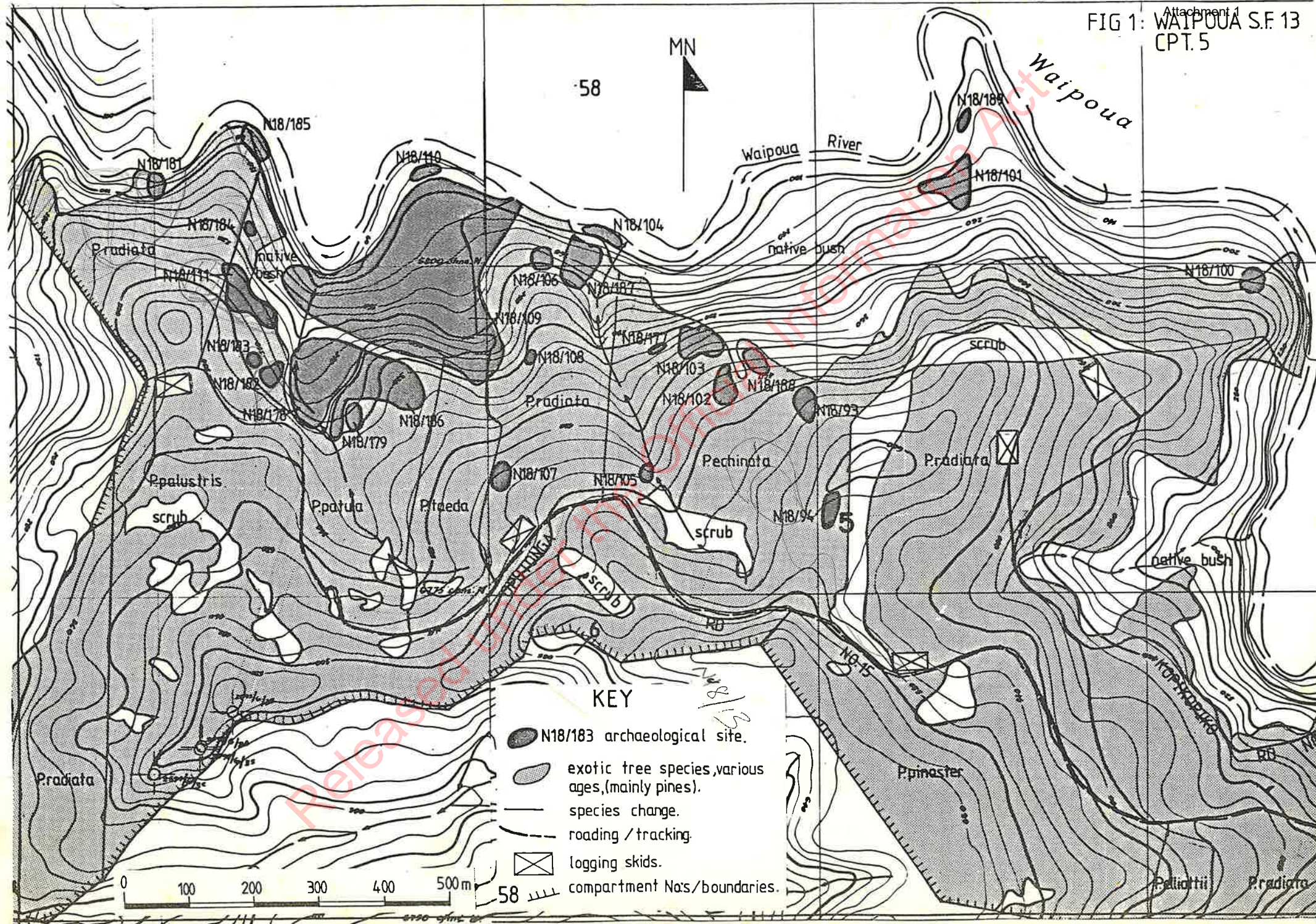
Details of the original archaeological reconnaissance survey of Compartment 5 are recorded in Papworth (1980). Further work has been limited to ring-barking of pines on pit site N18/93 (Coster 1979), test excavations of three pit storage sites, N18/94, 105, 107 (Charters 1982), and a further reconnaissance survey (Moore 1984). Proposals for the management of sites within Compartment 5 were also presented by Coster (1983) and these were used in formulating the present study.

2.1 Resurvey

Archaeological remains in mature pine in Compartment 5 are much more extensive than anticipated before the present fieldwork (compare Tables 1 and 4). Initial efforts were concentrated on the relocation and checking of recorded sites. This presented some difficulties as several sites had been mislocated during previous surveys and prominent features had not been detailed on others. Once previously recorded sites could be confidently relocated, areas between them were walked until the entire compartment had been traversed. Pine forest and native bush adjacent to pines were given a higher priority than the larger native bush areas which were not examined as intensively. The density of pines and native undergrowth and the thickness of the pine duff layer on the forest floor made site and feature identification difficult at times.

Released under the Official Information Act

Attachment 1



Released under the Official Information Act



Table 4 Summary of Archaeological Sites in Compartment 5

NZAA SITE NO.	OLD GRID. REF.	NEW GRID. REF.	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	ASSOCIATED SITES	NZHPT AUTHORITY TO MODIFY (logging date)*	FURTHER INFORMATION IN THIS REPORT	NOTES
13	029-050	-	Reputed pa	<i>Pinus palustris</i>	-	Needed for 1986-87	2.2, 2.3, 2.4	Findspot
93	038-055	-	4 pits	<i>Pinus echinata</i>	-	1985/2 (1986-87)	2.0, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4	-
94	039-054	-	2 pits 1 terrace	<i>Pinus echinata</i>	N18/102 N18/188	Needed for 1986-87	2.0, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4	Excavated Charters 1982
100	045-057	-	2 pits	Native bush edge	-	-	2.1, 2.2	-
101	040-058	-	Stone structures	Native bush	-	-	2.2, Appendix II	Large and impressive site
102	037-034	037-056	6 pits 1 terrace	<i>Pinus echinata</i>	N18/94 N18/188	1985/2 (1986-87)	2.2, 2.3, 2.4	-
103	036-056	-	Pits, terraces, drains, stone structures.	<i>Pinus echinata</i>	N18/102 N18/177	1985/2 (1986-87)	2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	-
104	035-057	-	5 stone heaps	Native bush	Te Kopae	-	2.2 Appendix II	-
105	035-055	-	8 pits	<i>Pinus echinata</i>	-	1985/3 (1986-87)	2.0, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4	-
106	033-057	034-057	4 terraces (Te Kopae)	<i>Pinus radiata</i>	N18/109 N18/187	1985/2 (1986-87)	1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, 5.0, 6.0 Appendix II	Mapped by Ian Smith 1985 <i>once examined</i>
107	033-053	-	4 pits	<i>Pinus taeda</i>	-	1985/2 (1985-86)	2.0, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4	Excavated Charters 1982
108	030-055	033-056	1 pit	<i>Pinus radiata</i>	N18/109	1985/2 (1986-87)	2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	
109	030-057	031-058	Stone structures, 2 pits, spring, 1 terrace	<i>Pinus radiata</i> / <i>Pinus taeda</i> / <i>Pinus patula</i> / Native bush	N18/106 N18/108 N18/110	1985/2 (1985-86) (1986-87)	1.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 6.0 Site plans Appendix II	Large site
110	029-058	032-059	1 pit	Native bush	N18/109	1985/2 Not needed	2.2 Appendix II	
111	029-057	-	26 pits 2 terraces	<i>Pinus patula</i>	N18/178 N18/184	1985/2 (1985-86) (1986-87)	2.2, 2.3 2.4 Appendix II	
177	035-056	-	1 terrace	<i>Pinus echinata</i>	N18/103	1985/2 (1986-87)	2.2, 2.3, 2.4	

* subject to revision

Continued over ...

Released under the Official Information Act



Table 4 Summary of Archaeological Sites in Compartment 5 Continued

NZAA SITE NO.	OLD GRID. REF.	NEW GRID REF.	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	ASSOCIATED SITES	NZHPT AUTHORITY TO MODIFY	FURTHER INFORMATION IN THIS REPORT	NOTES
178	032-059	030-057	2 terraces	Native bush	N18/111 N18/186	1985/2 Not needed	2.2 Appendix II	
179	032-058	030-056	3 pits and knoll	<i>Pinus patula</i>	N18/186	1985/2 (1986-87)	2.2, 2.4, 6.0 Appendix II	
181	-	027-059	Stone structures	<i>Pinus radiata</i>	-	Needed for 1985	2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	
182	-	028-056	Stone structures	<i>Pinus patula</i>	N18/186	Needed for 1986-87	2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	
183	-	028-057	1 pit	<i>Pinus patula</i>	-	Needed for 1986-87	2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	
184	-	029-058	2 terraces	<i>Pinus patula</i>	N18/111	Needed for 1986-87	2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	
185	-	029-059	5 stone heaps	<i>Pinus radiata</i>	-	Needed for 1985-86	2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	
186	-	031-056	Stone structures	<i>Pinus patula</i> <i>Pinus taeda</i> Native bush	N18/178, N18/179	Needed for 1985 1986-87	2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	Large site mapped by Ian Smith 1985
187	-	034-058	Stone structures (Te Kopae)	<i>Pinus radiata</i>	N18/104 N18/106	Needed for 1986-87	1.0, 1.1, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 5.0, 6.0 Appendix II	Large site mapped by Ian Smith
188	-	038-056	6 pits 3 terraces	<i>Pinus echinata</i>	N18/93 N18/102	Needed for 1986-87	2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 Appendix II	
189		042-061	4 pits	Native bush	N18/101	-	2.1, 2.2 Appendix II	

Released under the Official Information Act

All 18 sites previously recorded in Compartment 5 (Moore 1984; Papworth 1980) were relocated, except N18/100, and 11 of these had modifications and additions made to their site record forms (Appendix II). In addition 9 new sites were recorded, as follows:

N18/181	Grid. ref. 027-059 Stone structures
N18/182	028-056 Stone structures
N18/183	028-057 Pit
N18/184	029-058 Two terraces
N18/185	029-059 Stone heaps
N18/186	031-056 Extensive area of stone heaps, facings and other stone structures
N18/187	034-058 Numerous stone faced terraces and heaps (Te Kopae)
N18/188	038-056 Pits and terraces
N18/189	042-061 Pits

2.2 Management Undertaken

Management undertaken during the present contract has been confined largely to accurately locating, clearing, marking, and recording sites and features in the field. This emphasis was necessary as sites with heavy undergrowth and deep litter cover were virtually invisible, even to archaeologists. It was therefore necessary to render such sites visible prior to recording and assessment. This was achieved in two ways: first by clearing the undergrowth from sites and floor litter off individual features; and second, in areas not cleared, by marking a tree on or adjacent to each archaeological feature with red paint so that the features became intervisible. Both methods were successful and allowed visual identification of the extent of sites. However, the clearing of undergrowth was limited to that necessary for planning and photography because of the large amount of work involved. Only Te Kopae, N18/106 and the adjacent stonework N18/187, was cleared entirely for use as an example of a site to present to necessary visitors.

Work by students from the Department of Anthropology, University of Auckland, was undertaken in May and August on sites N18/106, N18/186 and N18/187 under the direction of Ian Smith. He will report independently on the detailed mapping undertaken (Smith in prep.).

Released under the Official Information Act

All site perimeters were marked along a 10 m buffer zone with red tape and/or red paint.

Individual site management undertaken is detailed in Appendix II and a summary is given below:

- N18/13 *A reputed pa.*
No earthworks were located but an obsidian flake and a yellow chert flake (Z 3925) were surface collected on the highest point beside the forest track.
- N18/93 *Pits.*
Pines were ring-barked in 1979 and about sixty per cent have decayed and fallen. The site perimeter was marked and the vegetation was photographed.
- N18/94 *Pits.*
The previous excavations (Charters 1982) were back filled and the site perimeter was marked.
- N18/100 *Pits*
Not located.
- N18/101 *Stone structures in native bush.*
These were marked with strips of red tape.
- N18/102 *Pits and terrace.* Details were added to the existing site record plan. The perimeter was marked and the site photographed.
- N18/103 *Pits, terraces, drains, and stonework.*
Site survey revealed terraces, drains, and stone structures in addition to the recorded pits. The site was photographed and the perimeter marked.
- N18/104 *Stone heaps in native bush.*
Site was located accurately.
- N18/105 *Pits.*
Previous excavations (Charters 1982) were back filled and the perimeter marked.
- N18/106 *Terraces.*
All undergrowth was removed and the perimeter marked with red paint only. Three terraces were planned in detail by Ian Smith, University of Auckland (Smith in prep.).
- N18/107 *Pits.*
These were correctly located, photographed and marked. Previous excavations (Charters 1982) on the site were back filled.
- N18/108 *Pit.*
The site was correctly located and the perimeter marked.
- N18/109 *Stone structures, terraces, pits, and spring* (see Plates 1 to 4 Appendix II)
Individual features in pine were marked with red paint and photographed. A section of the eastern pine perimeter was mapped in detail. A section of the southern perimeter below the proposed new skid site was marked with red tape.

Released under the Official Information Act

- N18/110 *Pit.* Located accurately in native bush.
- N18/111 *Pits and terraces.* The undergrowth was thinned and an additional terrace mapped. The perimeter was marked.
- N18/177 *Terrace.* The site was photographed and the perimeter marked.
- N18/178 *Terraces in native bush.*
The site was sketch planned and marked with red tape.
- N18/179 *Pits.* The site boundary was extended to include the earthworks of an adjacent modified knoll, and was then sketch mapped.
- N18/181 *Stone structures.* These were planned and the site perimeter marked.
- N18/182 *Stone structures.* Individual features marked.
- N18/183 *Pit.* Perimeter marked with red tape.
- N18/184 *Two terraces.* Site was planned and the perimeter was marked with tape.
- N18/185 *Stone heaps.* These were cleared, planned, photographed, and marked individually with red tape.
- N18/186 *Stone structures.* The depth of *Pinus patula* litter made identification of features difficult. All assumed features were marked with red paint and the edge of the proposed logging road and skid were marked with red tape. A sketch plan of the site was made. Extensive clearing and detailed mapping was undertaken by students under the direction of Ian Smith, Department of Anthropology, University of Auckland (Smith in prep.).
- N18/187 *Te Kopae, stone faced terraces and heaps.*
This site was cleared of all undergrowth and the majority of the features cleared of litter. All slash was removed from the site. The site perimeter was marked with red paint and the site was photographed. Detailed mapping was undertaken by a party from the University of Auckland under the direction of Ian Smith. Well over one hundred people visited this site and N18/106 during the period of the contract.
- N18/188 *Pits and terraces.* The site was planned and photographed and the perimeter marked with red tape.
- N18/189 *Pits in bush.* Sketch plan made.

Released under the Official Information Act

2.3 Logging of Archaeological Sites

Twenty of the 26 sites in Compartment 5 are wholly or partially in pine forest, with the remainder located in native bush. Three stone structure sites, N18/186, 187 and parts of N18/109, present particular problems for timber clearance as stone structure sites are especially vulnerable to damage during logging. Particular efforts should be made to avoid damage to N18/109. The majority of other sites in Compartment 5 are earthwork sites (pits and terraces) or small sites with stone structures where damage can be more readily minimised.

Logging of the sites should proceed according to the guidelines outlined in Section 1.2 and according to the specific measures detailed below. As felling of timber on the site proceeds, these principles will be modified according to the experience gained.

N18/13, 93, 94, 105, 107, 108, 111, 177, 183, 184, 188 *Pits and terrace sites.*

Trees should be dropped away from the pits and terraces with the exception of smaller waste timber which should be cross felled over earthworks and the adjacent slopes to act as buffers and slides for removing timber from the sites. Machinery should not enter within the marked site perimeters unless vehicle access paths are marked. Care should be taken that heads of trees outside the sites do not fall on the sites. Trees on N18/93 have been ringbarked and will pose a danger unless felled. At N18/111 timber on the native bush edge should be felled to waste if extraction without damage to the features is not feasible.

At N18/177 a skidder track will be necessary on the southwestern site perimeter.

N18/102 *Pit site.*

The relatively large flat area of this site and the short height of the *Pinus echinata* trees will provide some difficulties for logging as machines will need to approach within the site perimeter. Archaeologists will need to define one or two drag lines on the site. This may require test excavations to determine if features are present along the proposed drag lines. As on other pit sites the trees should be felled away from the features and waste logs used as buffers and slides wherever it

Released under the Official Information Act

is necessary to fell and shift timber across the site. Stumps should be cut high amongst the archaeological features to prevent dragged logs from swinging across high points, thereby damaging features. Observation by archaeologists during the logging of the site will be necessary.

N18/103 Pits, drains, terraces, and stone work.

Trees growing amongst the stone structures should not be felled thus eliminating the need for detailed archaeological investigations. Machine tracks will need to be defined on both the eastern and western side of the pits and terraces. The main logging approach to the site, and to the ridge below, should cross the gully on the south-western perimeter of the site. Damage to the drain east of the pits and terraces should be avoided. Archaeological supervision of the logging on this site will be necessary.

N18/106 Terraces.

Fallen trees, waste logs and native slash should be piled against earthworks on this site to act as buffers and help minimise damage. Logs should be rolled off features wherever dragging will disturb the earth surface. No timber should be felled across the site and no machines should cross it. Ground surface disturbance in the vicinity of this and adjacent sites should be minimised as much as possible. Pines below N18/106 near the river, and on very steep slopes, should be left standing or felled to waste if their extraction will be too problematic, or if their removal will accelerate soil erosion. The presence of archaeologists during logging on this site will be necessary.

N18/109 Stone structures.

Concerted efforts should be made to avoid damaging this site, because of its importance to the Te Roroa people and its central location in the proposed archaeological reserve (see Section 1.1). Fortunately most archaeological features skirt the pine perimeter and most timber will be able to be extracted.

Two approaches to logging will be of value on this site. First, pines should not be felled into or towards the native bush, and second, where this is unavoidable, pines should not be felled.

Released under the Official Information Act

Where trees accidentally fall into the native bush they should not be extracted. Skidder tracks should be located as high above the site as possible, and not intrude onto or near features. Surface erosion and soil deposition resulting from tracking, should be monitored.

The southern site perimeter of N18/109 is on a steep slope which leads up and south to the stone structure site N18/186. The logs on this slope will provide additional extraction problems. Attention will be necessary to ensure that debris from skid construction above N18/109 does not intrude upon the site. Care will also be necessary to protect the watersheds leading into site N18/109.

Archaeologists should be present when logging proceeds on or adjacent to N18/109.

N18/186 *Stone structures.* The pit and terrace site N18/179 is within the pine perimeter of N18/186. Logging of this site can be expected to severely damage some archaeological features. Considerable clearance of features and detailed archaeological investigations will be necessary prior to logging. This work is being undertaken under the direction of Ian Smith (in prep.).

At present a road and skid are planned along the eastern perimeter of this site but this should cause minimal damage as no prominent features occur on the proposed road line. Care will be necessary not to damage stonework adjacent (north-west) to the skid site. Archaeologists should monitor all stages of road and skid construction and determine if additional subsurface features are present and record them.

N18/187 *Te Kopae, Stone structures.*

As this site is entirely bounded by large *Pinus radiata*, damage could be severe and considerable effort will be necessary to minimise disturbance. Fallen timber and native slash should be stacked against features liable to be heavily damaged, to offer some protection. Non-economic pines should be cross-

Released under the Official Information Act

felled to waste to act as slides for the extraction of larger logs and then cleared by hand. Logs should be removed singly and where necessary rolled off the features prior to dragging away. If damage is necessary it should be confined to restricted zones or tracks defined in advance. Machines should not be allowed to enter onto the site, however skidder tracks could be defined immediately adjacent (south-west and north-east) to the stonework if necessary. Care should be taken to minimise ground disturbance and to prevent soil erosion. Monitoring of operations by archaeologists will be necessary.

N18/182, 184, 181 *Two terraces and stone structures.*

Standard procedures for feature protection during logging as discussed in this Section and Section 1.2 should be adopted to avoid unnecessary damage to features on these three sites.

2.4 Future Management

All sites at present planted in pine should be regarded to B management grouping⁽¹⁾ to allow removal of the trees. All sites in native bush should be graded A and permanently protected. Following removal of pines those sites to be included in the archaeological reserve should be regraded A and other sites should be re-assessed individually.

It will be necessary for the Forest Service to involve archaeologists in the planning of, and during logging operations, on sites N18/102, 103, 106, 109, 111, 177, 179 and 181-188. If practical, archaeologists should also be present during the logging of N18/93, 94, 105, 107 and 108.

Further sub-surface features are likely to be uncovered during logging operations in the vicinity of known sites and an archaeologist should be at hand in order to quickly assess, record, and possibly investigate features, before further logging proceeds. This should help to ensure minimal disruption to logging schedules. Prior to logging at sites N18/106 and N18/187 and at N18/179 and N18/186, detailed archaeological investigations will be necessary. Both of these areas contain extensive archaeological

(1) Forest Service Management Grade A = Permanent preservation.

B = Further investigation required.

C = Historic Places Trust (HPT) Authority for modification.

Released under the Official Information Act

remains and they may suffer from considerable disturbance during logging. Ian Smith will undertake initial investigations at N18/179 and N18/186 in December 1985 and will continue work at N18/106 and N18/187 at a later date.

As logging proceeds sites need to be remarked with red paint and tape (temporary high visibility markers) to prevent accidental damage while machines are still working in the locality, and to ensure the sites are able to be relocated.

All sites in Compartment 5 should be reinspected after logging is completed to assess the impact on the sites. Sites with an A management grading should be permanently marked with posts and tags bearing the New Zealand Archaeological Association (NZAA) site number.

Future management of archaeological sites within Compartment 5 will depend to a large extent on decisions to be taken by the proposed Te Roroa - Waipoua Advisory Trust (See Section 5). The principle options for the future management are the development of sites for public presentation or to leave the sites with no further disturbance.

Most areas with sites will not be replanted with pines and vegetation management should be planned to allow revegetation by native trees. These should be removed from archaeological features, but otherwise trees should be allowed to grow to maturity to enhance the visual appearance of the sites. This will not only help control erosion and limit future vegetation management, but also enhance the presence of wildlife. Some planting of native trees may also be necessary.

Particular attention may be necessary to control erosion on and in the vicinity of archaeological sites after logging. Some of the steeper slopes which will not be replanted in pine may be particularly susceptible to soil erosion and slumping.

Areas containing stonework should not be burnt off after logging as fire appears to break up the individual stones and thereby destroys the stone structures.

Aerial photographs of cleared areas should be used progressively, to produce a detailed contour and site location map before regrowth of vegetation obscures the ground surface. Advantage should also be taken of timber clearance to record intersite visibility and tacheometric survey sight-lines across and along the river valley.

Released under the Official Information Act

3.0 COMPARTMENT 15

Most of Compartment 15 (Fig 2) had been cleared of pines and replanted prior to this contract commencing. Attention was therefore concentrated on the south-eastern portion of the compartment which was still to be logged. This included the southern and eastern slopes of the ridge on which Kaitieke Pa, site N18/82, is situated.

The current vegetation in this area of the compartment consists of *Pinus elliottii*, planted in 1942, 2.0 ha of *Pinus palustris* (1942), and patches of native bush in the gullies and along the river edges. A 1915 Lands and Survey plan (ML 10004) shows a patch of heavy native bush bordering the Waipoua River in the south-eastern area of the compartment. Recorded archaeological sites are concentrated in this south-eastern area which is characterised by alluvium and basaltic soils.

Archaeological fieldwork in this compartment began with Papworth's survey (1980) and management has continued with the ringbarking of several hundred pine trees adjacent to site N18/82 (Coster 1979), the permanent marking with posts of sites N18/82, 84, 85, 139, 140, and 142 (Charters 1982 and Coster 1979) and the trial logging of site N18/142 (Pierce 1982).

3.1 Resurvey

All known sites except N18/141 were relocated (Table 5) and the areas between these sites were then traversed. No new sites were recorded.

3.2 Management Undertaken

Sites N18/84, 92, and 137 which border Compartments 14 and 15, are included in this section because they may be adversely affected by logging in Compartment 15. Detailed descriptions of the results of work undertaken on sites are given in Appendix III a summary for each site is presented below. All site perimeters were marked with red tape and/or spray paint.

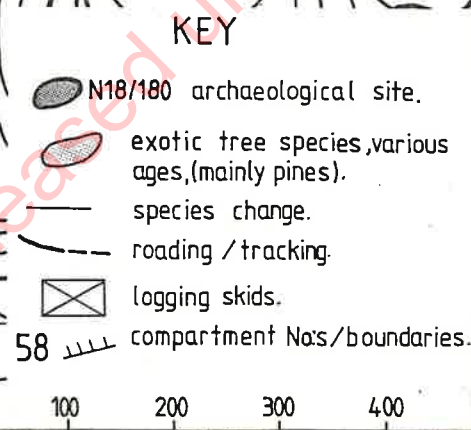
N18/82 Kaitieke, pa.

This site is in native scrub and ring-barked *Pinus elliottii*. Portions of the site's perimeter were marked with red tape, but this is unlikely to survive well because of falling ring-barked trees. John Coster, the archaeologist who proposed and supervised the ring-barking, inspected the site on 2 June 1985 and considered the ring-barking trial a successful method of removing trees.⁽¹⁾ The dead trees rot while standing and

(1) The Auckland Conservancy Assistant Conservator (David Black) dislikes this method of tree removal because it leads to wind throw and isolated islands of decaying trees which are susceptible to disease attack.

Released under the Official Information Act

Attachment 1
WATPOUA S.F. 13



Released under the Official Information Act

Table 5 Summary of Archaeological Sites in Compartment 15

NZAA SITE NO.	GRID REF.	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	ASSOCIATED SITES	NZHPT AUTHORITY TO MODIFY	FURTHER INFORMATION IN THIS REPORT	NOTES
82	017-062	Pa (Kaitieke)	Native scrub Ring-barked pine	-	1985/2	3.0, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4.	Posted
84	023-058	Pits	Scrub in fire break	85	1985/2 Not needed	3.0, 3.2, 3.3.	Posted
85	024-059	Earth mound Stone structures	Native bush <i>P. elliotii</i>	84, 180	1985/2	3.0, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 6.0. Appendix III	Posted
92	013-062	6 pits	Native scrub in fire break	-	-	3.2, 3.3, 3.4 Appendix III	Posted
137	020-059	2 pits	Native scrub in fire break	138	1985/2 Not needed	3.2, 3.3, 3.4. Appendix III	Posted
138	021-059	Stone structures	<i>P. elliotii</i>	137, 180	1985/3	3.2, 3.3, 3.4. Appendix III	
139	019-060	Stone structures	Mature native bush	140	1985/3 Not needed	3.0, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4.	Posted
140	021-060	Stone structures	Mature native bush <i>P. elliotii</i>	139	Needed	3.0, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4 Appendix III	Posted
141	014-065	1 pit	<i>P. radiata</i>	142	-	3.1, 3.2. Appendix III	Site destroyed
142	015-065	3 pits Terrace Findspot	Scrub	141	-	1.2, 3.0, 3.2, 3.4. Appendix III	Posted Findspot
180	024-061	Hearth Terrace	Mature native bush	85, 138	-	3.2, 3.3, 3.4. Appendix III	Posted

Released under the Official Information Act

permanent posts marking this site was increased to three by replacing battens, and the location of these posts was recorded by a Forest Service tacheometric survey team.

N18/141 *Pit.*

This site was not relocated and it is assumed that it was destroyed or buried by a bulldozed logging track.

N18/142 *Pits in scrub.*

No action necessary. The site was photographed. Pig rooting is damaging the features. Stone flakes (Z3867/1-12) were found on the bulldozed track on the ridge above and immediately to the west of the site (Appendix III).

N18/180 *Terraces and stone hearth in native bush.*

A permanent marking post was put in place and the location of this was recorded by a Forest Service tacheometric survey team. The hearth was photographed.

3.3 Logging of Archaeological Sites

Of the 11 recorded archaeological sites in Compartment 15, 4 are planted or partially planted in pine. Only one of these sites, N18/85, will be difficult to log without damaging the archaeological features. The other 7 sites are in native bush or fire-breaks and should not be at risk.

N18/82 *Kaitieke, pa.*

All pines bordering the pa were ring-barked in 1979 but a considerable number of trees have not yet fallen. Care should be taken to fell these and green pines downhill away from the pa.

N18/85 *Earth mound and stone structures.*

Detailed archaeological investigations of this site will be necessary prior to logging. At present the main features in the native bush and bordering pines have been planned (Charters 1982). Other archaeological features which extend into the pines from the river bank to Papatea Road, have not been planned or investigated. The stone structures (platforms) on the earth mound at this site may collapse during logging with the impact of the felled trees hitting the ground. This could seriously damage the intact stone features.

Released under the Official Information Act

All pines on this site must be felled away from the main group of platforms and from the native bush. Waste logs should be cross-felled and used to slide timber across. A single track, parallel to the river and possibly following an existing bulldozed route, should be defined as a drag line for extracting logs. Care should be taken to minimise ground disturbance. Archaeologists should be on hand during the logging of this site.

N18/139, 140 and 180 *Stone structures and terraces in native bush.*

Pines should be felled away from these sites. Site N18/140, which is partially in pine trees, will require special care on its perimeter. Archaeologists should be present during logging on N18/140.

N18/138 *Stone structures.* The undergrowth on this site should be cut down prior to logging to reduce drag damage. Pines should be felled to avoid stone structures and then removed singly.

N18/84, 92 and 137 *Pits in firebreaks.*

Pines should be felled down slope, away from these sites and no machines should enter within marked site perimeters.

3.4 Future Site Management

The ring-barking trials on site N18/82 should continue to be monitored by fieldchecks and by photographing tree decay. A site plan should be prepared after all trees have fallen and decayed.

Before logging proceeds on site N18/85 detailed archaeological mapping and investigations of stone structures, drains, and adjacent river flats should be undertaken. A detailed photographic record should be made of all stonework. Two permanent posts require metal tags with the NZAA site number.

Site N18/92 should be regraded from C to A because the pits are located in a firebreak and further damage can be easily avoided. Self-sown pines on and adjacent to the site should be removed. The bulldozed firebreak should be re-established outside the southern perimeter of the site. The permanent posts require metal tags with the NZAA site number.

Released under the Official Information Act

The permanent posts placed on site N18/137 require metal tags with the NZAA site number.

Site N18/138 needs to be permanently posted and tagged after logging, to give it permanent protection.

A plan of site N18/139 needs to be prepared. The management classification should be upgraded from B to A because the site is permanently posted, and it is in mature native bush and therefore under no threat from development.

Logging on site N18/140 needs to be monitored closely. After logging of the site perimeter the site classification should be upgraded from B to A and the boundary should be redefined with an appropriate buffer zone. The site is permanently posted and in mature native bush, and is therefore under no threat from further development. A fallen native tree that has displaced a permanent post by the roadside should be removed and the post relocated. Vegetation on the site should be managed to prevent tree and shrub seedlings from becoming established on stonework.

Site N18/142 should be upgraded from B to A because it is permanently posted, and was not planted in pine during the current rotation. A tagged batten should be placed on Road 38 to mark the access track (Charters 1982:129). Pigs rooting on the site are damaging features and should be controlled. Regular vegetation regrowth checks will be necessary.

Site N18/180 should be monitored for damage by pigs, tree growth, and logging of adjacent pines. The permanent post marking the site requires a metal tag bearing the NZAA site number.

Released under the Official Information Act

4.0 OTHER WORK UNDERTAKEN

4.1 Compartment 6 Survey

The development area in the compartment consisted of a steep ridge and it was inspected on 4 April 1985. It was walked over after burning-off and prior to V-blading or planting. One group of 25 or more gum holes was located in flat swampy ground at Grid. ref. 034-043, 10 m from forest road No. C 6. The area measured approximately 50 x 50 m and the holes varied from 0.75 m square up to 4 x 2 m, and most were 0.50m to 1 m deep. These features were not recorded as an archaeological site.

4.2 Compartment 7 Survey

The development areas in this compartment were walked over on 4 April 1985. One group of at least 26 gum holes was located off Patata Road at Grid. ref. 041-0305 in the eastern corner of the compartment. The holes were situated in an area of swampy ground at the head of a stream which runs down the south side of the compartment. The features covered an area about 50 x 20 m and most holes were 1 m square and about 1 m deep. These features were not recorded as an archaeological site.

4.3 Compartment 19 Survey

The development area had been cutover and burnt when inspected on 4 April 1985. The area had previously been inspected in 1984 (Moore 1984:3), but much of the ground surface was obscured by cutover vegetation prior to burning. V-blading in the gullies was completed at the time of inspection. No archaeological sites or other remains were observed.

4.4 Compartments 19, 20, 22 and 27 Shelter Belts

As part of the development of new coastal shelter belts, lines were bulldozed through coastal *Pinus pinaster* near the cliff edges in early 1985. These lines were all walked along and one small midden, N18/192 (Grid ref. 983-036) was recorded in Compartment 20 (Appendix IV). A retrospective authority to modify this site from the Historic Places Trust has been applied for.

4.5 Compartment 27 Survey

The coastal sand dunes north of the Waitotane Stream were inspected following reports of eroding human skeletons. No human remains were observed. A site comprising a palaeosoil and numerous eroded stone flakes (Z3926/1-94) was recorded approximately 200 m north of the Waitotane Stream at N18/191 (Appendix IV).

Released under the Official Information Act

4.6 Compartments 28 and 29

Thinning of pines is proceeding in these compartments, and an HPT Authority to thin trees on site N18/64, 65, 66, 67 and 68 should be applied for. These sites are all recorded as doubtful.

4.7 Compartment 30

A storage pit site with four pits was recorded in this compartment at N18/193 (Appendix IV).

4.8 Compartment 66

Site N18/118, which comprises thirty-five pits, was inspected following a request from Rod Young (Waipoua O/C). Previously the site was visited by Kevin Jones (HPT) and Jull Pierce (Forest Service) in 1981, and a decision on its future management has been pending since then. The pits are poorly preserved and may have been trampled by stock when the adjacent river flats were farmed. It is recommended that an HPT Authority to thin the pine trees on this site be applied for, and that the thinning should proceed under the supervision of an archaeologist.

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

5.0 WAIPOUA FOREST ARCHAEOLOGICAL RESERVE AND ADVISORY TRUST

The Forest Service is prepared to set aside and reserve the main areas of archaeological sites which are situated on the lower slopes and river terraces of the Waipoua River Valley. The exact areas to be included in this reserve have yet to be determined. It is not the intention of this report to identify these areas. Sites located in the native bush should be included in the reserve and as far as possible they should be left undisturbed in their *natural* state. Management of vegetation should be confined to the removal of tree seedlings and other new growth from stone structures or other archaeological features to prevent further deterioration.

Future archaeological attention should be focused on the sites planted in pines. These pines will be cleared using the least damaging logging techniques and the protection of sites will be the primary objective. Conservation or protection logging will replace commercial logging operations. Recording and investigations of these sites should be encouraged and supported by the Forest Service, prior to logging. Sites that are accidentally damaged during logging should be restored if they are to be included in the reserve.

Future management of the sites, including where appropriate revegetation and interpretation, will be carried out in consultation with an Advisory Committee or Trust.

The formation of the Advisory Trust has been recommended and agreed to by the Forest Service, members of Te Roroa hapu, and the Historic Places Trust. The primary function of the Trust will be to advise the Forest Service, or other government department responsible for the area, on the management of the archaeological sites, and in particular the proposed Archaeological Reserve. Other functions of the Trust will be to facilitate archaeological and historical research in the valley and to foster the development of appropriate skills amongst Te Roroa hapu to enable them to undertake management and interpretative work on their traditional sites.

A working committee, drawn from the principle Te Roroa families, the Forest Service, and the Historic Places Trust, has been established to act in the interim until the formal establishment of the Trust proceeds. The Trust should be formed as soon as possible because the future management of many of the archaeological sites is dependent on decisions that need to be made in the short term.

Released under the Official Information Act

The principle options for the future management of the sites are, either to leave the sites without further disturbance once logging is completed, or to develop the Reserve for public presentation and interpretation. A decision to use the sites for public presentation will require a management plan detailing the options for site interpretation, restoration and tracking, and the development of amenity areas and vehicle roads that may be considered necessary.

Immediate consideration by the Trust needs to be given to the matter of public access to the sites, as there already exists considerable interest in visiting them. Visits to sites by small groups could be incorporated into the 1985-86 summer programme on a limited basis. This would enable some evaluation of the demand for such visits. However, to date, only Te Kopae, sites N18/106 and N18/187 is suitably cleared for visitors. Damage to the site by a limited number of visitors during the dry summer period would likely be minimal.

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

Research into the early Maori and European histories of the Forest will also produce useful information to enhance our understanding of valley's past. Considerable relevant material is held in various archives.

Much of the forest remains to be surveyed for further sites by archaeologists. In particular, the area up-river from Compartments 5 and 15 should be surveyed as soon as possible, to help define the upper limits of the proposed Archaeological Reserve.

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

7.0 REFERENCES

- Charters, A.H. 1982 Site Management in Waipoua S.F. 13. A report to NZFS, April 1982. Unpublished report, NZFS Auckland sample plot file A478/A.
- Coster, John 1979 Archaeological Sites in Established Pine Due to be Thinned or Clearfelled. NZFS Auckland file note 6/13/21/1, 13 August 1979.
- Coster, John 1983 Archaeological Site Management in the Waipoua River Valley - A Review and Proposals. Unpublished report, NZFS Auckland, sample plot file A478/8.
- Lawlor, Ian 1984 Waipoua Archaeological Project : Stage 1 Information Sheet. Unpublished report, NZFS Auckland Conservancy file 6/13/21/1, 5 November 1984.
- Lawlor, Ian in prep. Report of logging on N49/80, Coastal pa, Tairua S.F. 150.
- Moore, Annetta 1984 Waipoua State Forest 13, Reconnaissance Survey and Site Management 1984 Planting Season. Auckland F.S. file A478/8.
- Papworth, Martin 1980 Waipoua River Valley Site Survey, March-April, 1980. Unpublished report, NZFS Auckland, NZFS Auckland sample plot file A478/8.
- Pierce, Jill 1982 Report on Trial Logging on N18/142 Pits/Terrace Site Cpt, 15, Waipoua S.F. 13. NZFS Auckland file note 6/13/21/1, 30 March 1982.
- Smith, Ian in prep. Waipoua Archaeology. Report on 1985 fieldwork.

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

8.0 APPENDIX I by Ned Nathan

Waipoua and Te Roroa Hapu (Outline for a proposed information leaflet).

Waipoua is so named after the poua, a large sized pipi that tastes like a toheroa. The Waipoua River entrance had rock formations, was navigable, and abounded with poua, kutae, kina, poua, pipi, and all the popular species of fish.

In early times the river flowed directly out to sea along the northern foothills of the valley. After 1928, wind driven sand from the north caused the river to change course to the south and the mouth became blocked. As a result the poua and other kaimoana no longer survived there.

Pahinui pa was the main fortification for the people of the Waipoua River valley defending them from attacks from the eastern and seaward approaches. Tirakohua, the high point opposite Pahinui, was the sentinel for the western and south-western approaches. Similar to other high points in the valley, this place was not strategically defendable and became a permanent look-out point, and on occasions a semi-permanent kainga.

Tradition holds that in early times Rongomai of waka Mahuhu occupied the area and that he was drowned at Kawerua. His body was gnawed by araara and washed ashore near a stream, which was subsequently named Wai-ara-ara. The present name Wairara is a misnomer. Rongomai's remains were recently exhumed and reinterred with his uri in Pahinui urupa.

Little dependable information remains regarding the period between Rongomai and his twelfth generation descendant Manumanu (see Te Roroa whakapapa tables in Section 1.1 of report).

Manumanu, according to Piipi Tiopira, a recent descendant, was of the Ngaitamatea iwi from north-Muriwhenua. He settled in Waipoua, in a place named Whenuahou (new land) situated on the Paniora property. His son, Manumanu (II), was the first of many famed leaders. It is from Manumanu (II) that the name Te Roroa originates.

When Manumanu (II) was slain in battle, his great torso provoked an outburst from a respectful and astonished antagonist: Te Hei! Te Roroa o te tangata, rite tonui ki te Kahikatea! Behold! How tall the man that resembles the Kahikatea!

Released under the Official Information Act

The terrain that came under Te Roroa dominance ranged from Waimamaku to Tuawai and Pouto. The main signalling points (from north to south) were Piwakawaka, Pawakatutu, Pukekaitui, Maunganui, Pouto-oterangi, Maungaraho and Tokatoka.

Following Manumanu (II), perhaps the most famous leaders of Te Roroa were Toa, Tuwhare, Taoho and Tuohu. Intermarrriages, from the time of Toa, took places with a number of tribes including Pou, Rongo, Rangī, Uriohau, Taiamai, Te Rarawa, Korokoro, Ngapuhi and others.

Of the Te Roroa leaders Taoho is particularly memorable. Taoho was a warrior, tohunga and poet. He has been well documented by early New Zealand writers such as White, Smith, Marsden, Manning, Earle, and others. He was a man of small stature, but he displayed phenomenal strength, agility and extraordinary perceptive instinct. His size emboldened his adversaries. They made the often fatal mistake of underestimating him and became over-confident. To make matters more complicated he was left-handed, a characteristic not all warriors were trained to counter. In combat Taoho's back or blind-side was usually protected by his best lieutenants. This allowed him to concentrate on the leader of the opposing force. Slaying a leader would often cause the rank and file to lose confidence in battle. Taoho was both feared and respected by his enemies, in particular Hongi Hika, whose father and uncle he slew in the Moremonui battle. He was wounded many times but died of old age at Kaihu.

Tuohu, also a great warrior, was better remembered for his industriousness, and work direction. He was apparently responsible for improving the techniques in horticulture. He reintroduced many of the Polynesian root crops and fruits that the people had lost.

Tuohu was killed by Hongi Hika at Pakia Hunoke. Several years later his death was avenged by Maratea, his son. Hongi died of the wound inflicted by Maratea.

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX II

Compartment 5Site Records Forms (Sites N18/181-189)

and

Site Additional InformationSheets (Sites N18/13, 93, 94, 100-111, 177-179)Grid. references for Waipoua S.F. 13 Compartment 5 Sites

<u>Site No.</u>	<u>Old grid.</u>	<u>New Grid.</u>
<u>N18/</u>	<u>reference</u>	<u>reference</u>
13	029-050	-
93	038-055	-
94	039-054	-
100	045-057	-
101	040-058	-
102	037-054	037-056
103	036-056	-
104	035-057	035-0585
105	035-055	-
106	033-057	034-057
107	033-053	-
108	030-055	033-056
109	030-057	031-058
110	029-058	032-059
111	029-057	-
177	035-056	-
178	032-059	030-057
179	032-058	030-056
181	-	027-059
182	-	028-056
183	-	028-057
184	-	029-058
185	-	029-059
186	-	031-056
187	-	034-058
188	-	038-056
189	-	042-061

Released under the Official Information Act

NOTIFICATION OF FINDING OF ARTIFACT

(Section 11 of the Antiquities Act 1975)

For artifacts found after 1 April 1976.

This copy — to be retained by notifying museum or discarded if completed by finder

Note: Your local public museum will be happy to help you complete this form.

Your Record No.

1. Type of artifact Stone flakes

2. Where and when found Waipoua S.F.13, Oct 5, N18/13

Maximum length	Maximum depth	Maximum width	Weight
(a) 5.4cm (b) 1cm	-	a) 2.5cm b) 3cm	-

4. Description of artifact, including material a) Obsidian flake (1)
 b) Yellow chert flake with percussion point (1)

5. Has a photograph/sketch been taken of the artifact? YES/NO
 If so, please attach a copy if possible for the National Register, or state where it is held: Details will be included in a report on Waipoua SF13 Archaeology 1985 by M. Taylor and A. Sutton.

6. Give details of the circumstances of finding, including the precise location, how the artifact came to be found, and any association with other identifiable signs of human occupation. Please enclose a sketch map of the site and where the artifact was found and if possible, give the grid reference for the site. GR 029-050

..... On high point of bulldozed track crossing reputed pa
 N18/13 during archaeological site management for N.Z.F.S.

7. Name and address of:

(a) Finder	and	(b) Present holder of artifact
<u>M. Taylor</u>		<u>N.Z. Forest Service</u>
<u>Box 3931</u>		<u>Waipoua State Forest,</u>
<u>Auckland</u>		<u>Private Bag</u>
		<u>Dargaville.</u>

8. Form completed by:

Name: M. Taylor,
 Address: Box 3931, Auckland
 Date: 10 JUNE 1985

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

9. Recommendation for custody of artifact.....

Signature: H. B. Khan

Date: 10 June 1985

10. Decision of Secretary for Internal Affairs as to custody to New Zealand Forest Service
Waipoua State Forest

11. Date 18.10.85

12. National registration number: 2.3925

Jayne Korumuk
 Secretary for Internal Affairs

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM	SITE NUMBER N18/101
Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 040-058	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE Stone structures/drains

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Access to this site is gained from the lower skid on lower Kopikopiko Road. The section of road marked on the site record form(27-3-80) passing through a finger of pines is at present disused and very overgrown. Further stone heaps also occur on the flats immediately adjacent to the disused road and pines. The slope between Kopikopiko Road and N18/101 is very steep.

The site can also be approached by traversing the steep slopes from Downriver or from N18/103.

It is an impressive site in native bush. Stone features noted included elongated heaps which run up and down the slopes(rather than across them), terraces with large stone facings, and a large number of heaps some of which retain their constructed form. Between the stonework and the river (north) and down river from the stonework(northwest) the flats are crossed by a number of channels which may be drains.

A stand of large kowhai is a feature of the present native vegetation.

The site was visited on 23 June 1985.

Michael Taylor

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		SITE NUMBER N18/103
Map Number N18	Map Name Waipoua	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
Map Edition 3rd, 1975	Grid Reference 036-056	SITE TYPE Pits, terraces, stonework
<p><i>(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)</i></p> <p>This site is more complex than originally recorded. The recorded earthworks cover an area of approximately 53m N-S and 33m E-W.</p> <p>Upriver from the earthworks is an unrecorded area of outcropping stone much of which has been modified into stone heaps. The stonework covers an area of 50m NW-SE and 62m N-S(top to bottom).</p> <p>The site is planted in <u>Pinus echinata</u>.</p>		

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 035-0585

SITE NUMBER N18/104

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This site was located in the wrong position in the previous survey and a grid reference correction is required. The heaps are located at the base of a steep slope at the top of which is Te Kopae, the stonework site at grid reference 034-058, N18/127.

The stone heaps are located on the lower river terrace beside a deep river pool. A rock ledge where a stream has cut down to the river pool would make an ideal canoe landing.

Notable on this river terrace are a small number of very large native trees, including one huge rata, adjacent to the stone heaps.

Michael Taylor

6 July 1985

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM	SITE NUMBER N18/106
Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 084-057	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE Terraces

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

The grid reference for this site requires correction to that given above. The site is planted with Pinus radiata and the area has a thick native understorey.

The site consists of four terraces, the two recorded on the site record form, and two smaller terraces immediately south of those recorded. The lower of these additional two terraces is well defined, but the upper terrace (the furthest south) is not well defined.

This site and the adjacent stonework at N18/187 were cleared of most undergrowth and the features were cleaned. The sites were mapped in detail by Ian Smith, Anthropology Dept., University of Auckland, who will present a detailed plan and report.

The terraces are 25m NNW-SSE and 16m NE-SW.

Michael Taylor

15 June 1985

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 038-056

SITE NUMBER N18/108

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE PIT

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This pit was located in the wrong position in the previous survey. The original site record description ^{is correct} but the site was mislocated on maps. N18/108 is located in Pinus radiata 35m southeast of the head of the stone channel mapped in the southeast of site N18/109.

Site N18/179, recorded as three pits and a modified knoll is located in the position previously given for N18/108.

Michael Taylor

3 July 1985

Released under the Official Information Act

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION		SITE NUMBER N18/109
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		
Map Number	N18	SITE NAME: MAORI
Map Name	Waipoua	OTHER
Map Edition	3rd, 1975	
Grid Reference	031-052	SITE TYPE Stone structures, pits, terraces, spring

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.) see plans & photographs.

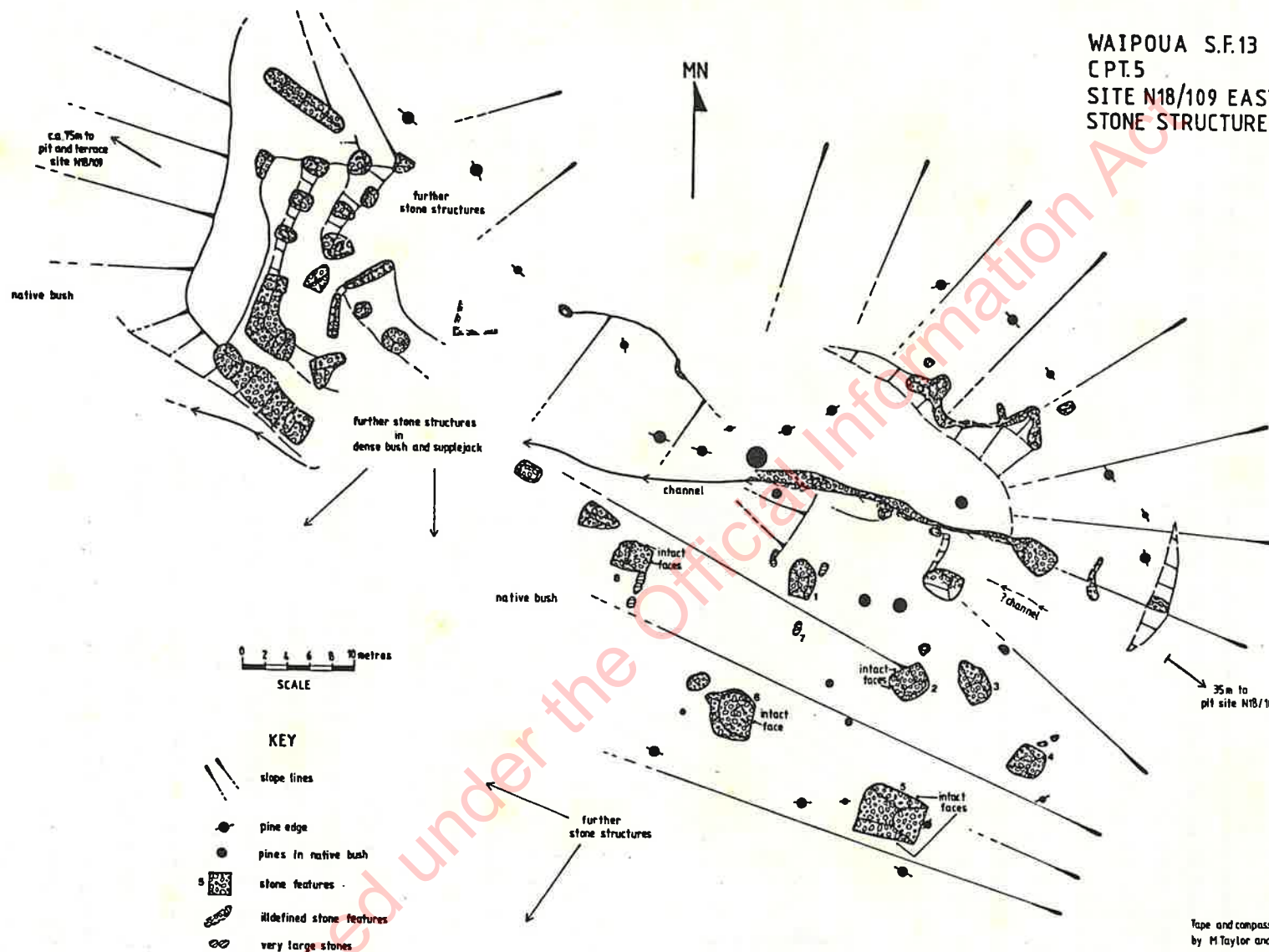
This site is extensive and occupies three old river terrace levels. It includes a number of important features both in native bush and pine(P. taeda & P. radiata).

On the upper terrace, west of the pit and terrace described on the site record form(27-3-80), is an impressive complex of large stone structures which were planned. A stone channel,

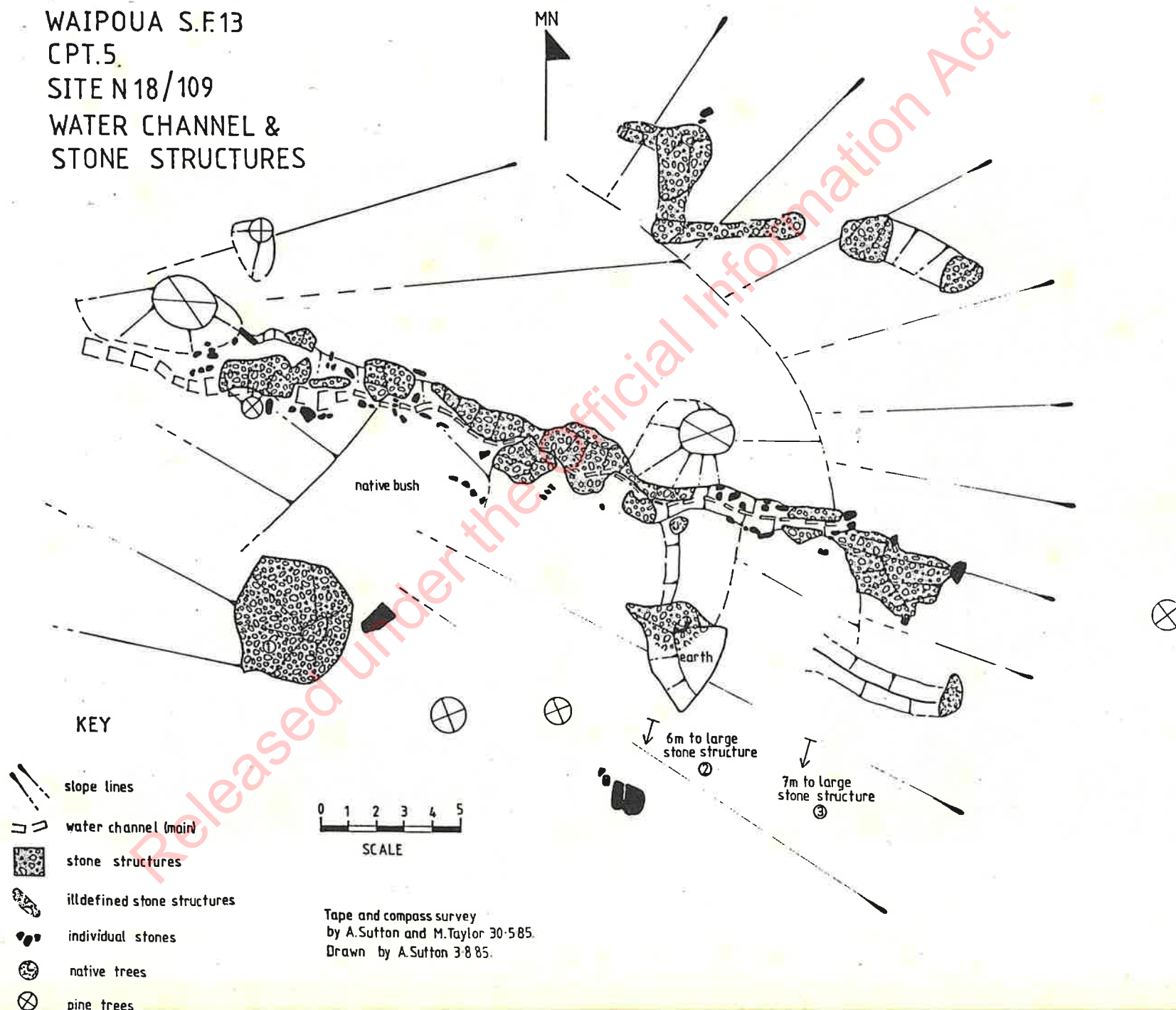
one of the features in the area mapped, was also planned separately. Photographs were taken of these features. Most of these large platforms are situated in native bush with some scattered pine, but features also are numerous in the pine. Lines were cut using a chainsaw along the bush-pine edge to raise the visibility of the main features and to enable the area to be mapped. Native trees were cut off the main features, most of which retain some intact facing. Time did not allow detailed descriptions to be made. In a grove of totara trees on the middle terrace level(below and north of the complex described above) are more heaps(or platforms) some of which remain largely intact and thus show the original mode of construction and shape. On the edge of this middle level, next to a steep drop to the bottom level, is a large pit.

M. Taylor
August 1985

WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT.5
SITE N18/109 EAST EDGE
STONE STRUCTURES



WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT.5
SITE N 18/109
WATER CHANNEL &
STONE STRUCTURES



Tape and compass survey
by A.Sutton and M.Taylor 30.5.85.
Drawn by A.Sutton 3.8.85.



Plate 1: Heap 1 viewed from southwest, eastern edge N18/109, Waipoua SF 13 [See plan].



Plate 2: Heap 4 viewed from west, eastern edge N18/109, Waipoua SF 13 [See plan].



Plate 3: Heap 5 viewed from west, eastern
edge N18/109, Waipoua SF 13 [See plan].



Plate 4: Heap 7 viewed from north, eastern
edge N18/109, Waipoua SF 13 [See plan].

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 032-059

SITE NUMBER N18/110

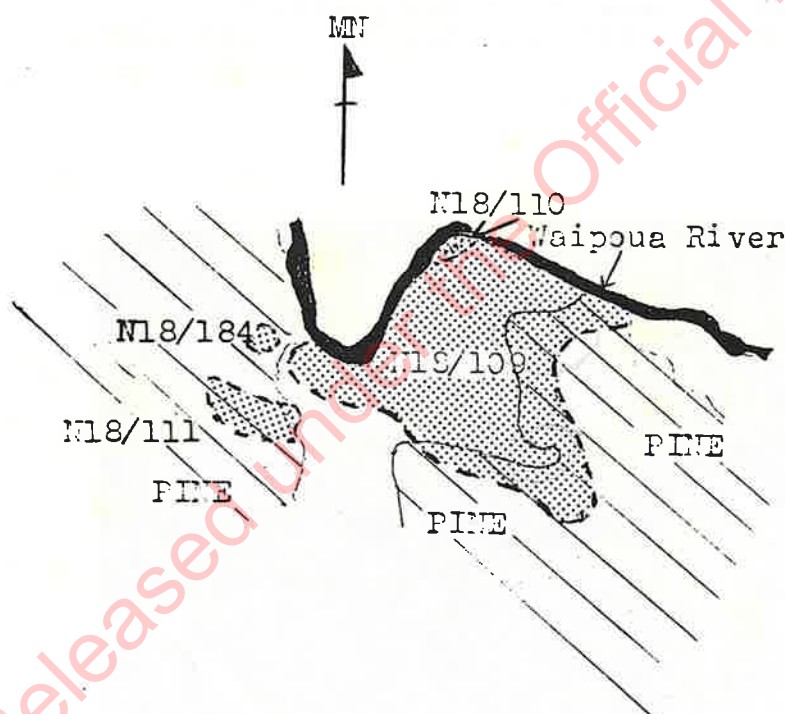
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE PIT

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This pit was located in the wrong position in the previous survey. The original site record location description is accurate but the site was mislocated on maps. N18/110 is located on the northern perimeter of N18/109 at the rivers' edge in native bush.

A two terrace site in Pinus patula is located on the ridge at Grid reference 029-058, the position previously given for N18/110. Its site number is N18/184.



Michael Taylor
25 June 1985

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM Map Number M18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 029-057	SITE NUMBER M18/111
	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE Pits & terraces

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This site is planted in Pinus patula with a small number of Pinus radiata on the western site perimeter. Native vegetation on the site was dense and this was thinned to raise the visibility of the features.

There are a number of obvious terraces, drains, and pit rims not included on the original site plan(12-4-80). One additional terrace associated with M18/111 was planned (see attached plan of terrace). The terrace is situated on a north

facing slope 30.8m below the western most pit at M18/111. It lies about 10m west of the main north spur that runs from M18/111 to the river. The terrace is crescent shaped and well defined. Pines on the feature are P. radiata and there are three large(70cm-1m) pines beside the feature. There is also one lusi-tanica pine and some equally large native trees growing on the terrace surface. These include some 1m high karaka seedlings.

Michael Taylor
22 May 1985

308 m to N18 /111
pits from * point
on terrace edge

MN

WAIPOUA S.F 13
CPT.5
TERRACE
SITE N18/111

0 1 2 3 metres
SCALE

KEY

⊗ large Pinus radiata

// slope lines

Survey tape and compass
and drawing by A.Sutton 24.5.85

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number M18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 080-057

SITE NUMBER M18/178

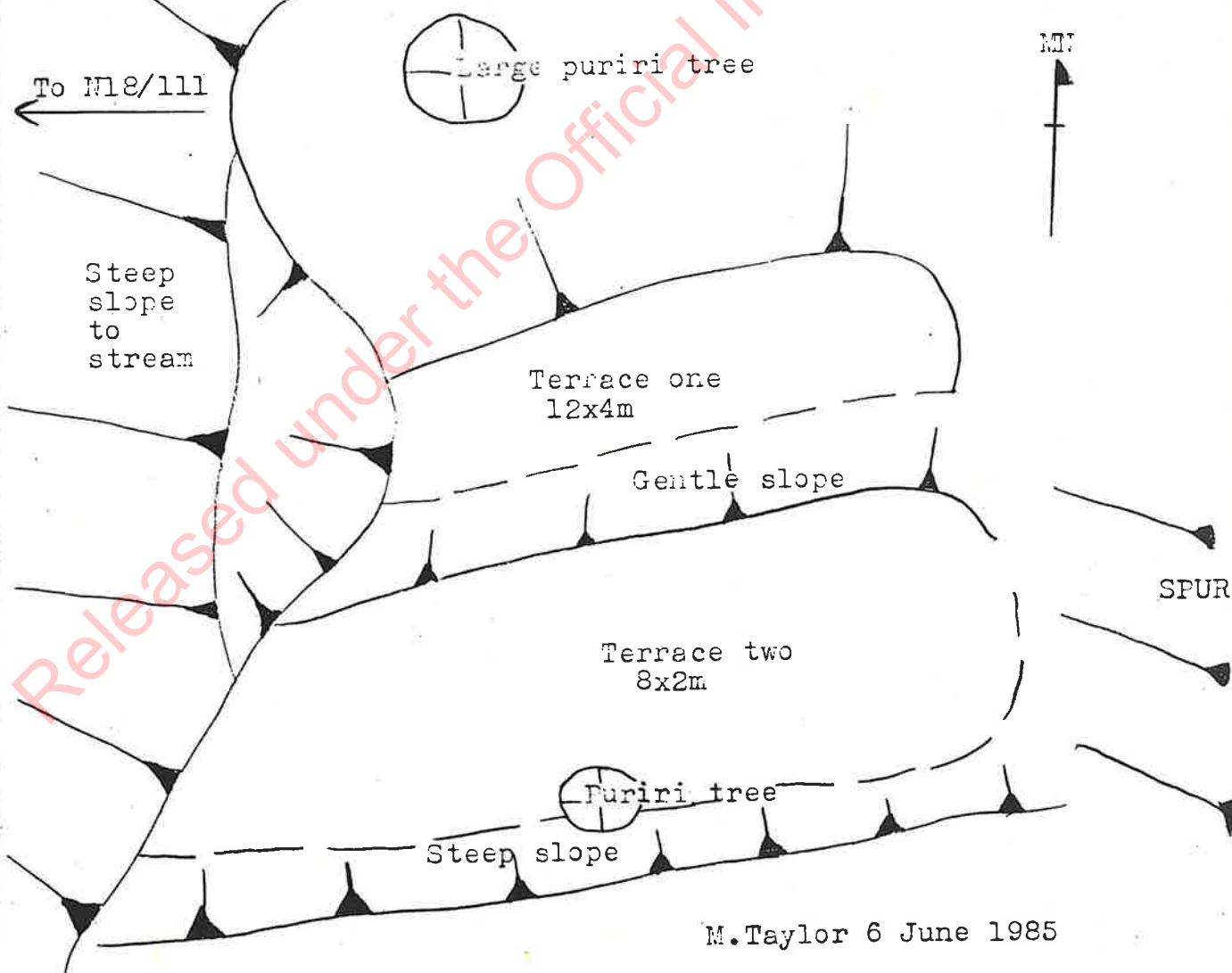
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Terraces

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.) Note grid reference correction.

The terraces are located in the south west section of Compartment 5 in native bush and have a deep gully immediately to their northwest. Across this gully is site M18/111. The terraces are about 150m SW and above M18/109 and are below the stone structure site M18/186 (Grid ref 081-056) which extends to the native bush.

Sketch plan 1:100



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 030-056

SITE NUMBER N18/179

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

See plan

This pit site was mislocated in the previous survey and requires a grid reference correction. The site is located in Pinus patula in the southwest portion of Compartment 5 on the western edge of an area of stone work (N18/186 GR-031-056).

The site boundary has been extended to include all of the knoll on which the pits are located as it may have all been modified. Features are not well defined as the duff layer is extremely thick and the entire ground surface is concealed. The knoll appears to have no stone features.

An area of spongy ground between the knoll and the pond (see plan) was identified by A. Wilson, Soil scientist, DSIR, Kaikohe as probable taro gardens.

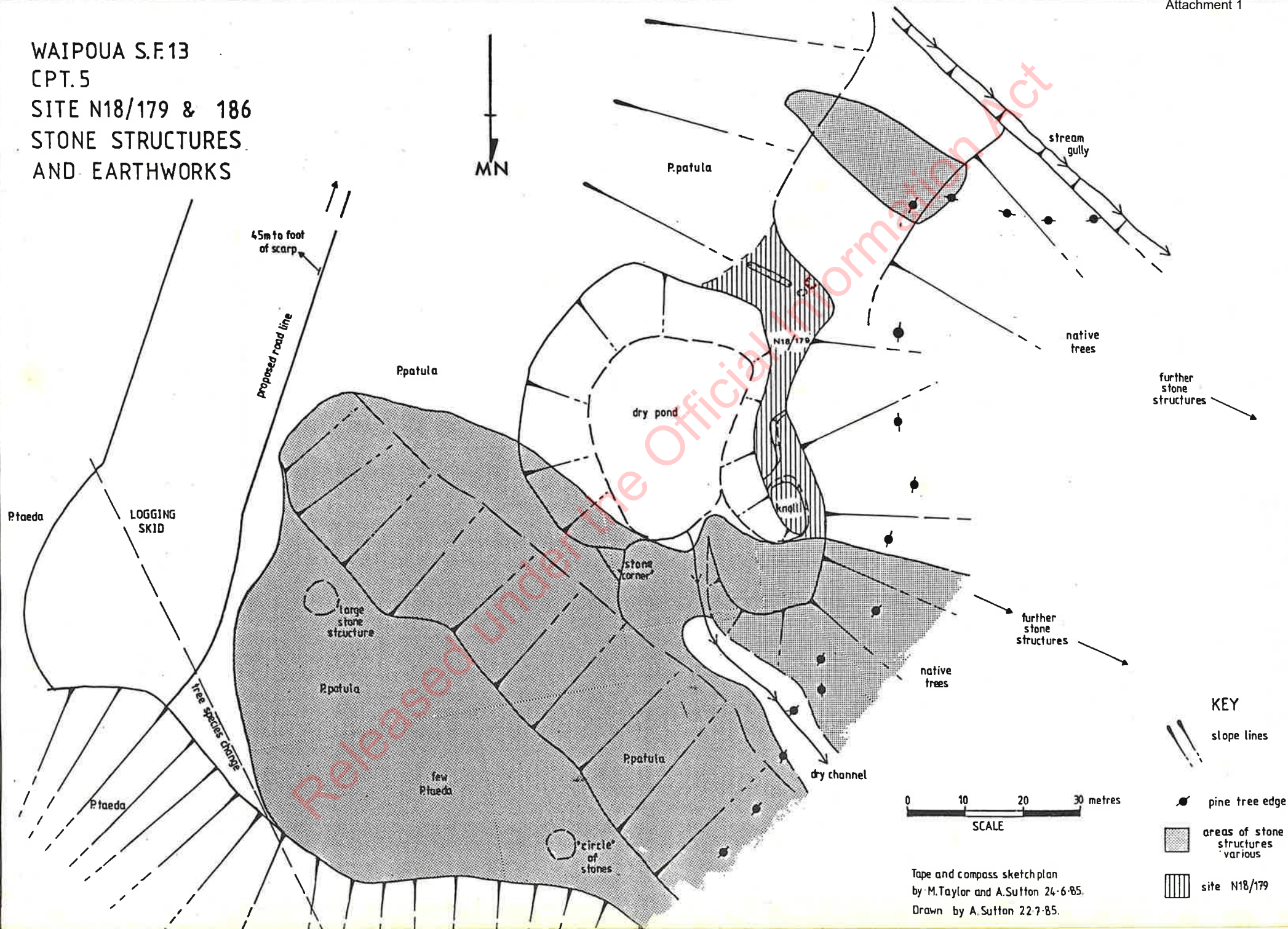
The pond recorded as dry when the site was sketch mapped had water lying in it in late winter

M. Taylor

WAIPOUA S.F.13

CPT. 5

SITE N18/179 & 186

STONE STRUCTURES
AND EARTHWORKS

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/181

Attachment 1

DATE VISITED 11 March 1985

SITE TYPE Stone structures

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHERNZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 7

Northing

0 5 9

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13, Compartment 5. Access via present skid on west Opotonga Rd. Site is on a steep slope extending south from rivers edge, north of the skid. It is located immediately west of where the river terrace widens & riverside native vegetation begins.

2. State of site and possible future damage Site is planted in mature *P. radiata* due for clear felling in 1985/6. Some damage will result.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

See plan. Series of low stone heaps and elongated heaps on a steep NW slope. The largest heap is at the foot of the slope, on the back of a narrow river terrace. Up the slope to the SE and south the stonework merges with apparently naturally distributed stone.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
Address Waipoua Forest
Private Bag
Dargaville

Deputy Manager Rod Young
Address O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Tape & offset plan by M. Taylor & J. Treadwell during extended visits.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Not visible under thick pine.

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
Address P.O.Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper
Date

7. Key words Waipoua, stone heaps

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

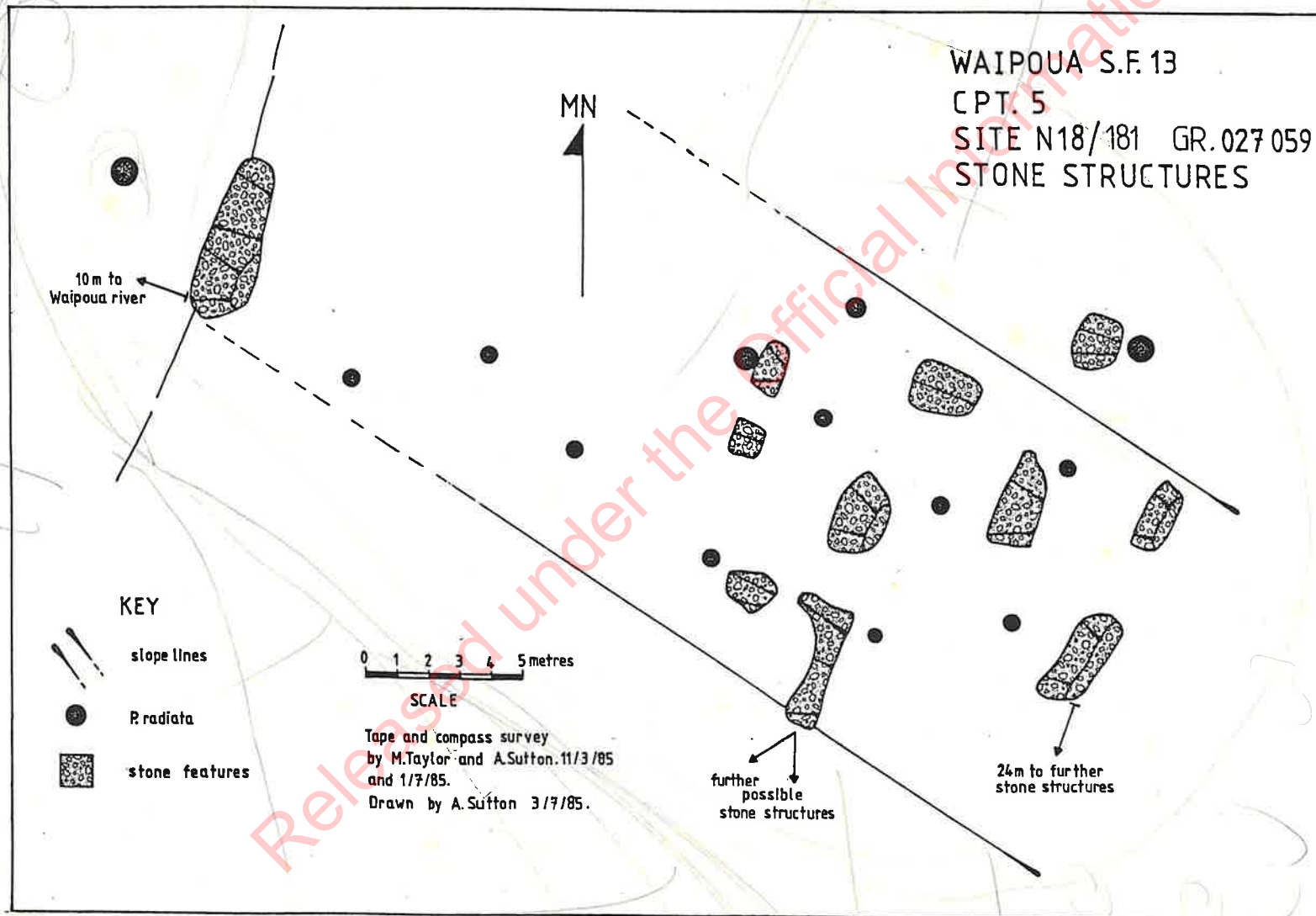
Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/182 Attachment 1DATE VISITED 24 April & 1 July 1985SITE TYPE Stone structures

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 8

Northing

0 5 6

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13, Compartment 5. Access via western Opotonga Road. Planted in P. patula. Structures are just west of the main stream gully which contains native trees at the western end of the compartment. Heaps occur 20m west of the stream and are 45m at 315° to the single pit at Grid Ref. 028-057.
(N18/183)

2. State of site and possible future damage Planted in P. patula and concealed under dense undergrowth and ground litter. Damage during logging in 1986-87 is likely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Site consists of two groups of stone work. 2 or 3 heaps occur on the pine edge about 20m west of the stream on fairly level ground. Further deeply buried stone structures occur 17m away at 335° on a small knoll and on the slope to the south of the knoll. These cover about 20 sq.m.

The structures are poorly defined because of the dense forest floor litter.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua Forest
Private Bag
Dargaville

Tenant/Manager Rod Young
 Address O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by Michael Taylor and Annetta Sutton
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)
Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)
Not visible under pine cover

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O. Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words
Waipoua, stone structures, stone heaps

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/183

DATE VISITED 24 April 1985

SITE TYPE Pit

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 8

Northing

0 5 7

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13, Compartment 5, western end. Access via Opotonga Rd. On small knoll with steep slopes to N & E. In P. patula. From the pit to eastern end of N18/111 is 60m at 25°.

2. State of site and possible future damage Located in mature P. patula ready for clear-felling in 1986-87. Concealed under heavy undergrowth and pine floor litter.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Single pit, small, well defined. Orientated N-S.

Pit top dimensions N-S 3.80m long Depth 0.45m
 E-W 2.00m wide

Bottom dimensions 2.4x1.1m

Located on level ground with steep drop to N and E.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

~~Owner~~/Manager
 Address

Rod Young
 O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Two brief visits by Michael Taylor & Annetta Sutton.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Under heavy pine cover

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O.Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words

Waipoua, pit

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name WAIPOUA
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd.1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/184 Attachment 1

DATE VISITED 13 May 1985

SITE TYPE Terraces

SITE NAME: MAORI —
 OTHER —

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 9

Northing

0 5 8

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF13, Compartment 5. Access via western Opotonga Road. On North facing ridge, west of native bush and N18/109. Located 66m from western end of N18/111 on a bearing 10°.

2. State of site and possible future damage Terraces well preserved. Planted in mature *F.patula* due for felling in 1986-87. Some damage may result. Adjacent *F.radiata* to be felled 1985.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See Plan.

Two small terraces cut well into ridge below N18/111

Dimensions

EW

NS

1/

9.6

x

2.1 m

2/

5.2

x

1.9 m

4. Owner N.Z.F.S.
 Address Waipoua Forest,
 Private Bag,
 DARGAVILLE.

Tenant/Manager
 Address

O/C Rod Young,
 Waipoua HQ.

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Extended visits by Michael Taylor and A. Sutton. Base line and offset plan made.
Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held)

Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site)

6. Reported by Michael Taylor,
 Address Box 3931,
 AUCKLAND.

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words
 Terraces, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

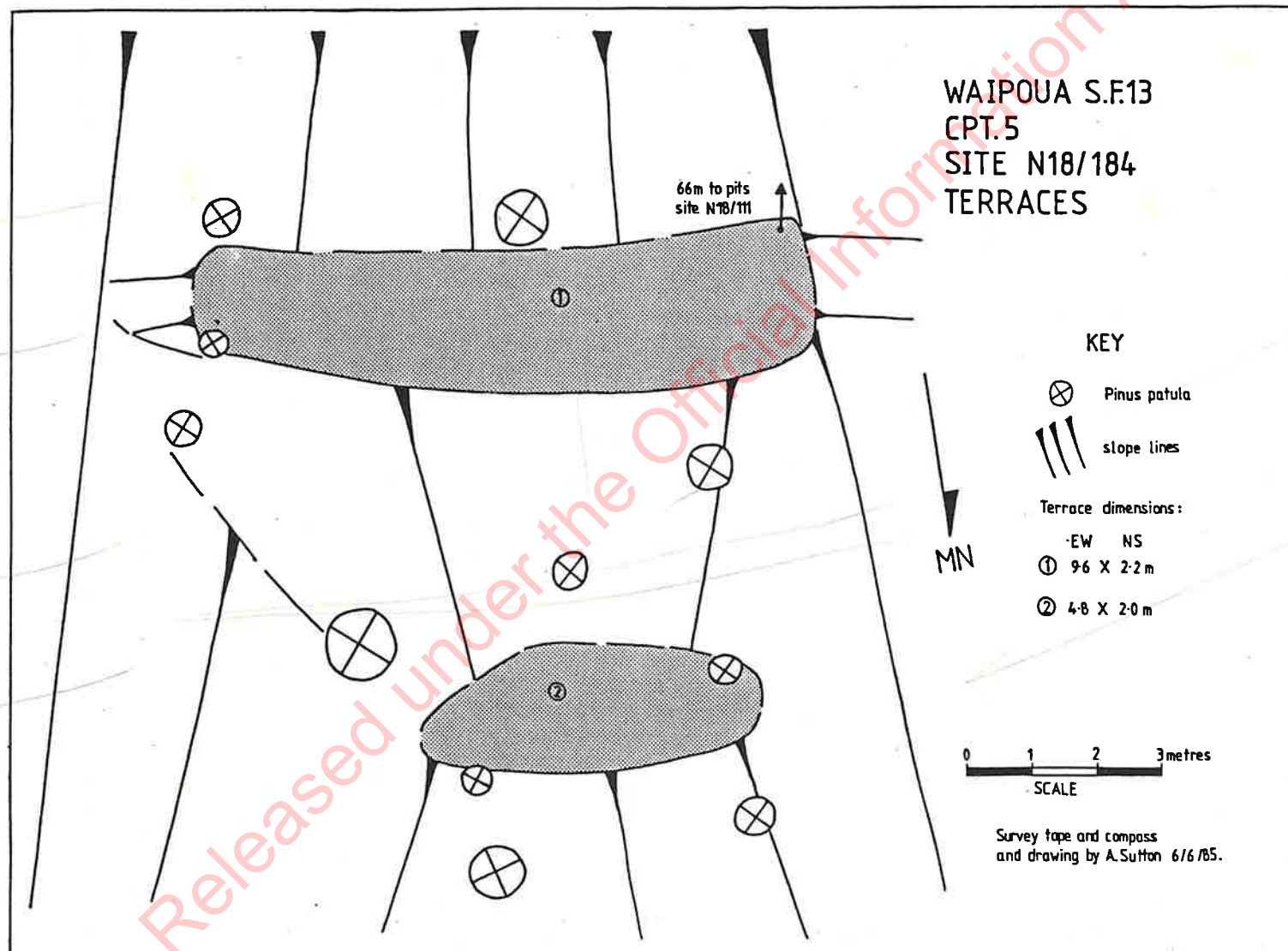
Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/185

DATE VISITED 9 March 1985

Attachment 1

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 9

Northing

0 5 9

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest, Compartment 5, western end. Access via Opotonga Road, No. 15 (forest road), from logging skid at western end of compartment. The heaps are situated at the back of the lowest river terrace, below the skid and north of N18/111.

2. State of site and possible future damage The heaps are covered in light scrub and forest litter in a block of mature Pinus radiata. Future damage is likely during logging expected to take place in 1985/86.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) Five stone heaps located at the back of a small level river terrace at the foot of a slope. See attached plan.
 Heap 1- poorly defined & broken up by pine roots. Height 50cm.
 Heap 2- built against hill slope & thus higher on river side. Height is c 70cm. Mainly larger stones 20-40cm.
 Heap 3- built against slope but very collapsed & rounded. Height 60cm.
 Heap 4- built against slope. Height 70cm on river side. Rounded & collapsed. Large rocks 20-40cm.
 Heap 5- separated from other heaps by 26 paces. On level ground. Poorly defined on surface. Height c15cm.
 All heaps are round-oval in shape but no formal shape was apparent.

4. Owner N.Z.F.S.
 Address Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Tenant/Manager
 Address

Rod Young
 O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Visted twice by Michael Taylor & Julian Treadwell. Mapped with compass & tape.
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)
 N.Z.F.S. Auckland 13/20/4-6
 Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)
 Not visible

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words Stone heaps, Waipoua, Pinus radiata

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

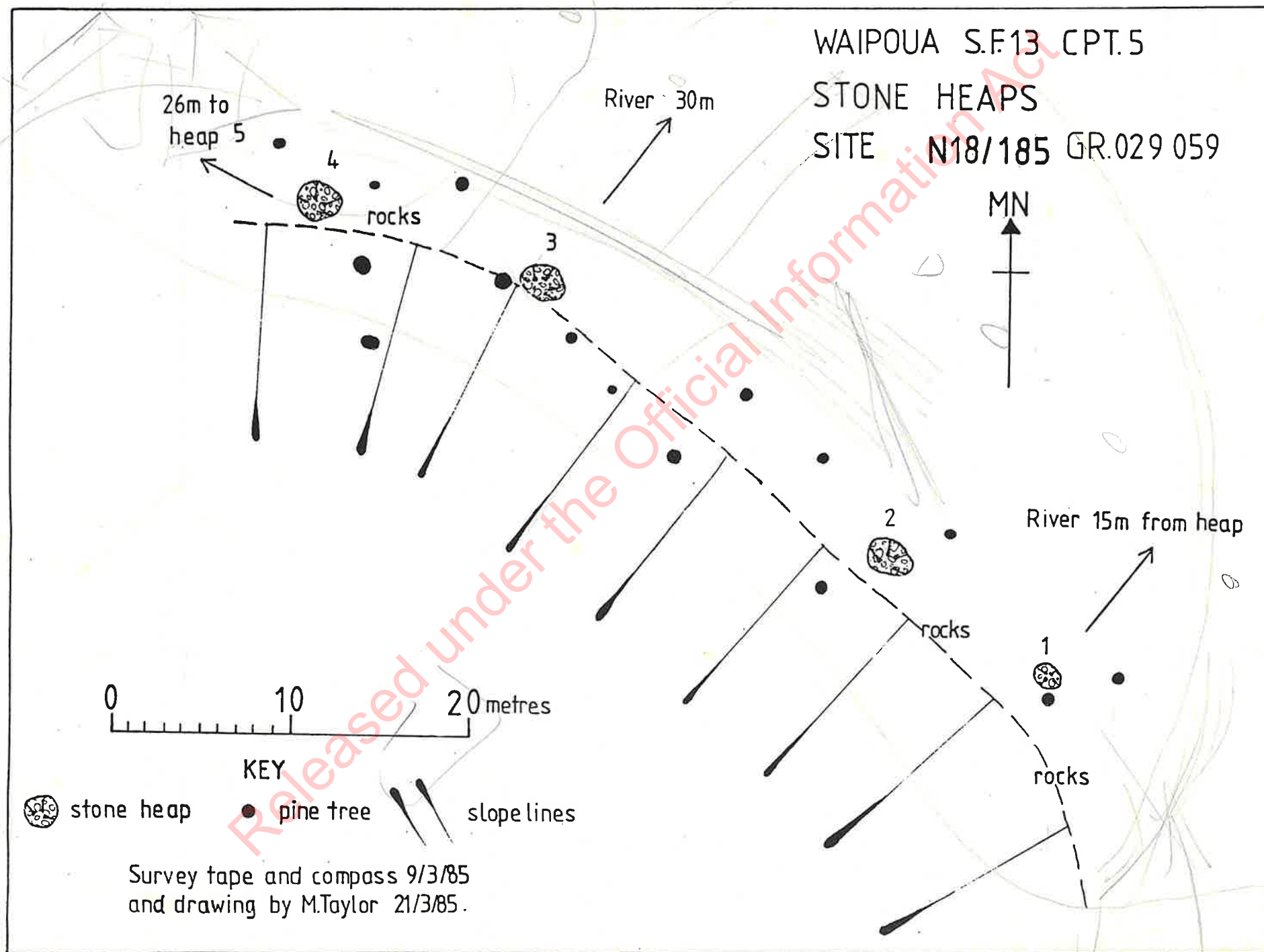
Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number M18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER M18/186 Attachment 1

DATE VISITED 4&9 April 1985

SITE TYPE Stone structures

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 1

Northing

0 5 6

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*)

Waipoua SF 13, Cpt 5, western end.

At present access is via skid on eastern Opotonga Rd. A new road & skid planned for 1985/86 will be immediately adjacent to the site to the south. Access will be then from west Opotonga Road.

2. State of site and possible future damage

The NW portion of this site is in dense native bush with some large trees & will not be disturbed. The SE portion (see plan) is planted in mature P.patula & some P.taeda and will be damaged by roading and logging.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

See attached sketch plan. Site is a large area of concealed stone structures, mainly heaps and facings, buried under dense pine needles, and obscured by undergrowth. Prominent features are indicated on the plan although the actual nature of these is far from clear. Adjacent earthworks are recorded as separate sites, M18/178, M18/179, & M18/111.

The site will be mapped and investigated in detail by Ian Smith, Anthropology Dept., University of Auckland.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Tenant/Manager Rod Young
 Address O/C Waipoua Forest

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*)

Extended visit by Michael Taylor & Annetta Sutton. Tape & offset plan.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

N.Z.F.S. Auckland. Colour slides 13/20/7-22

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Not visible.

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words

Waipoua, stone structures, stone heaps, stone facing.

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

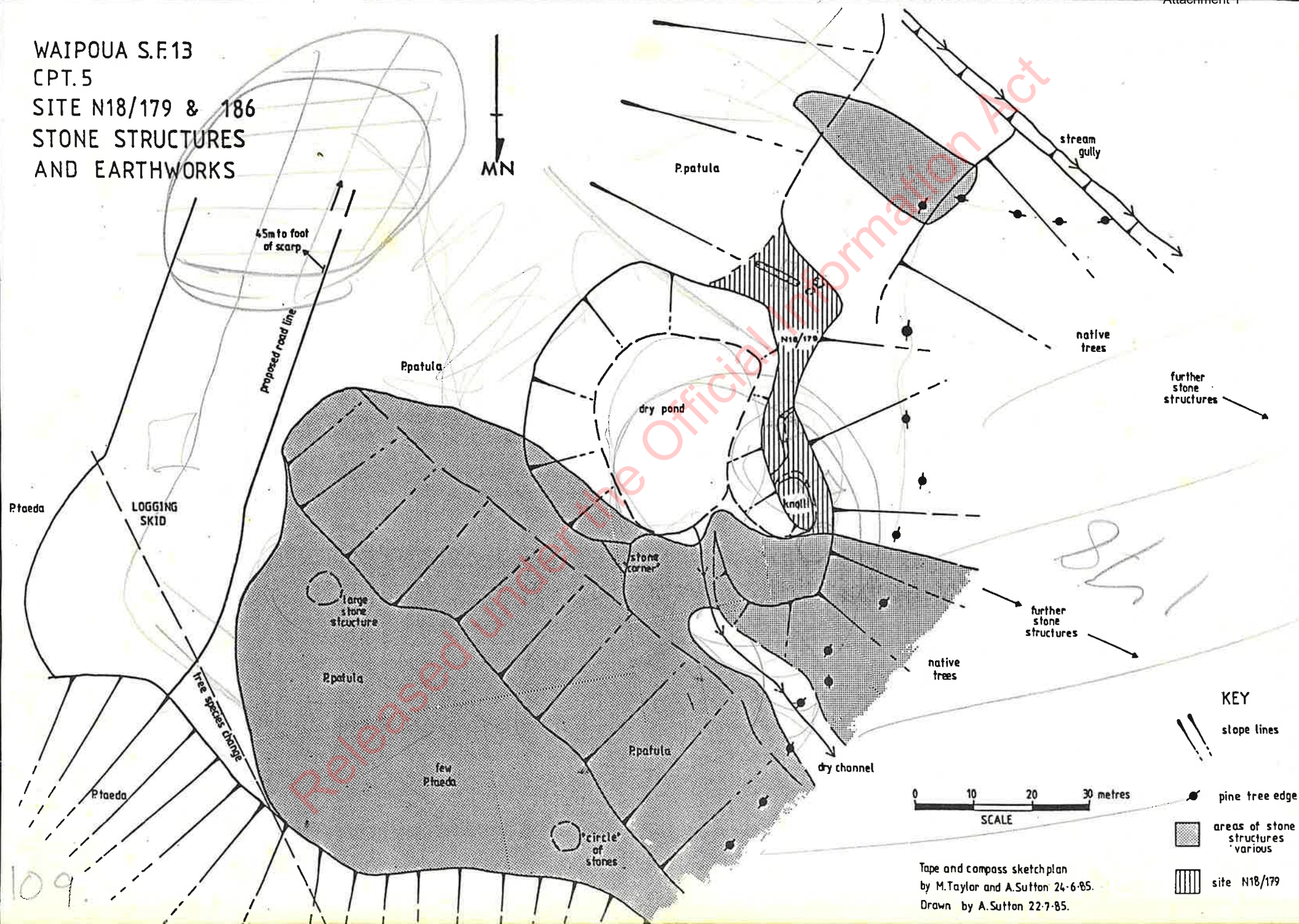
Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT.5
SITE N18/179 & 186
STONE STRUCTURES
AND EARTHWORKS



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number M18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER M18/187 Attachment 1

DATE VISITED 14 March 1985

SITE TYPE Stone structures

SITE NAME: MAORI Te Kopae
~~OTHER~~

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 4

Northing

0 5 8

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 5. Access via Opotonga Road. Located on a steep slope upriver from a major ridge running to the Waipoua River. East of site M18/109.

2. State of site and possible future damage Clearly defined collapsed stone structures planted in mature *P.radiata*, due for clear felling in 1986-87. Extensive damage will result from logging.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) Site consists of a series of stone faced terraces on a very steep north facing slope. Between the terraces collapsed stone heaps are aligned across the slopes. Features were concealed under heavy vegetation. Areas of modified stone distribution merge on the upper slopes into areas of more naturally distributed stone. The site area is 70m N-Sx55m E-W. Most undergrowth is being cleared from the site and it will be studied in detail by Ian Smith, Anthropology Dept., University of Auckland.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Tenant/Manager Rod Young
 Address O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Extended visits by Micheel Taylor, Annetta Sutton, Ian Lawlor & Ian Smith
Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held)
 N.Z.F.S. Auckland 13/21/1-36 & 13/22/1-8
Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site)
 Not visible through heavy pine growth

6. Reported by M. Taylor
 Address P.O.Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words Waipoua, stone structures, terraces, stone heaps, stone facing.

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number M18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER M18/188

DATE VISITED 22 April 1985

SITE TYPE Pits & terraces

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 8

Northing

0 5 6

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 18. Eastern Cpt 5. Access via ridge running from the highest point on Opotonga Road. The site is situated on a pine-planted spur above a steep drop into native bush to the N & E. Gully to west contains native bush. The site is approx. 50m NW of M18/93 and 70m NE of M18/102.

2. State of site and possible future damage Pits are very well preserved. Planted in P.echinata due for logging in 1986-87. Some damage will result.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See plan.

This site has six pits and three terraces, all transverse to the spur and stepped singly down the slope. The pits are deep and well defined.

4. Owner

Address

M.Z.F.S.

Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

~~Owner~~/Manager
 Address

Rod Young
 O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Extended visit by Michael Taylor & Annetta Sutton. Tape & offset plan by I. Lawlor & R. Brassey.
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)
 N.Z.F.S. Auckland Colour slides 13/20/1-3.
 Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by

Address

Michael Taylor
 P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words

Waipoua, pits, terraces

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

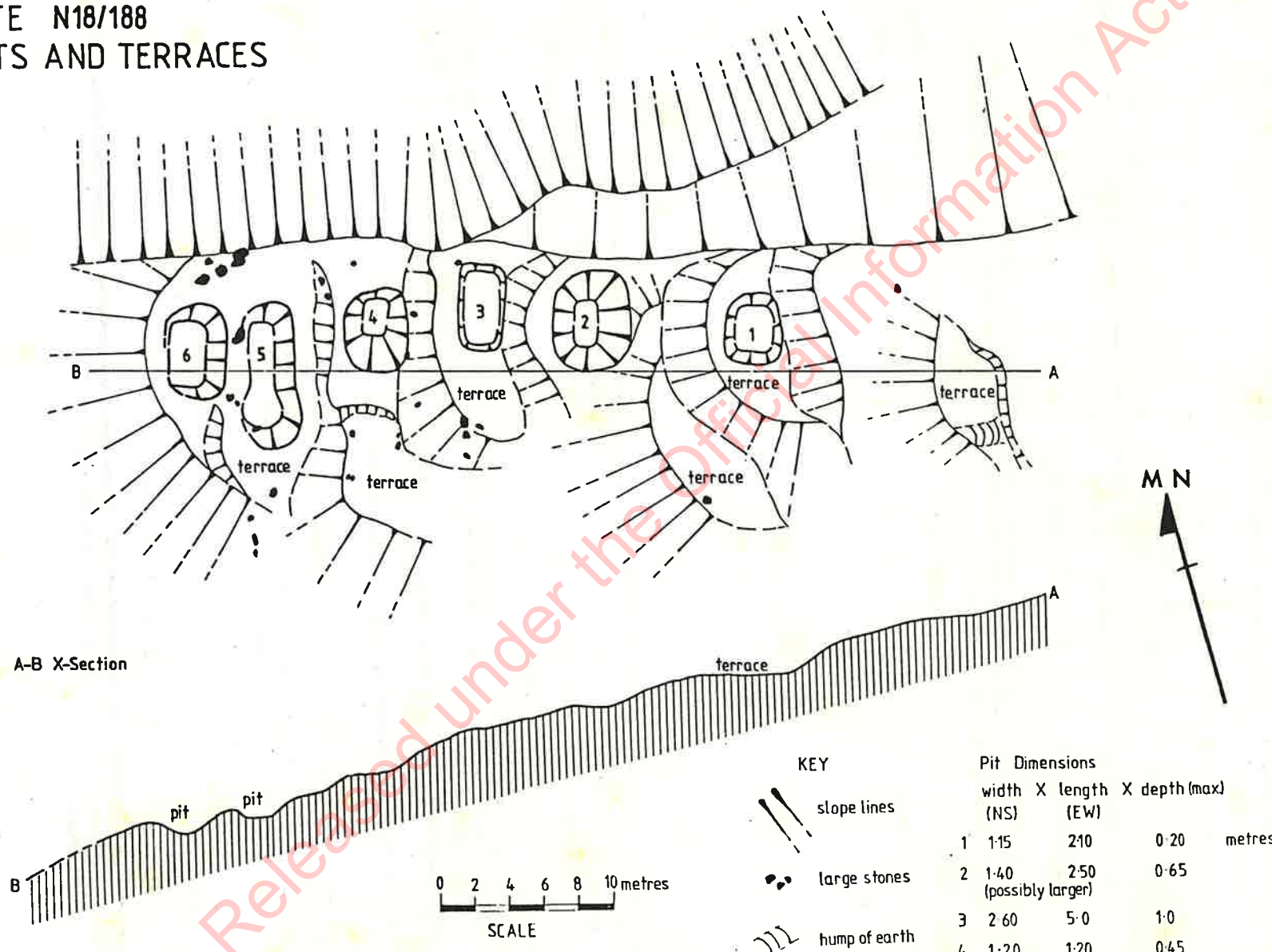
Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

WAIPOUA S.F. 13
CPT. 5
SITE N18/188
PITS AND TERRACES



A-B X-Section

0 2 4 6 8 10 metres
SCALE

KEY

- slope lines
 large stones
 hump of earth

Pit Dimensions

	width (NS)	length (EW)	depth (max)	
1	1.15	2.10	0.20	metres
2	1.40	2.50 (possibly larger)	0.65	
3	2.60	5.0	1.0	
4	1.20	1.20	0.45	
5	1.20 aver.	5.80	0.65	
6	2.0	3.70	0.75	

Tape survey by I. Lawlor
and R. Brassey 3.7.85.
Drawn by A. Sutton 1.8.85.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number M18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER M18/189

DATE VISITED 4 July 1985

SITE TYPE Pits

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 4 2

Northing

0 6 1

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 5. Eastern end. Access via Kopikopiko Road. Site is located right on the rivers edge on level ground on the western bank of the northward projecting "peninsula".

2. State of site and possible future damage Well defined pits on the river bank in native bush. No threat.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) Three well defined pits on river bank and one

adjacent possible pit.

Top dimensions

1. 4.10(length)x2.50(width)x0.75m(depth)

2. 4.00x2.10x0.80m

3. 4.60x3.00x0.73m

4. 8.30x2.20x0.20m

The pit ends face the river edge.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

~~Tenant~~/Manager
 Address

Rod Young
 O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*)
 & R. Brasley.

Brief visit by I. Lawlor

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O.Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words

Waipoua, pits

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX III

Compartment 15

Additional Information Sheets for

Site Record Forms

N18/85

N18/92

N18/137

N18/138

N18/140

N18/141

N18/142

N18/180

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 024-059

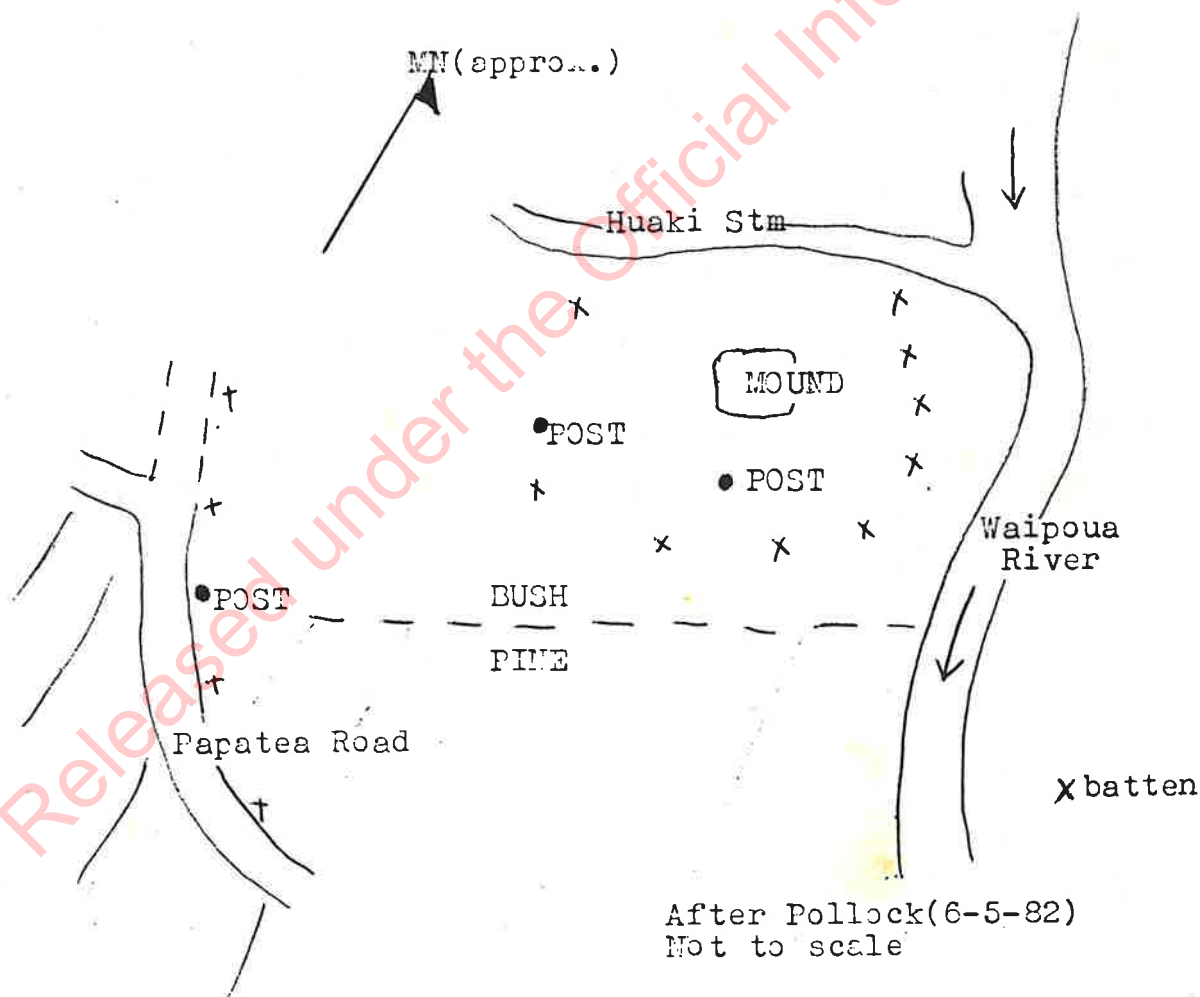
SITE NUMBER N18/85

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone structures

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

The number of posts and battens permanently marking ^{this site} was increased by 2 posts and 4 battens. One of the battens already marking the earth mound was replaced by a post and the tagged batten beside Papatea Road was also replaced by a post. Other battens were placed at 10m intervals along the edge of Papatea Road.



M. Taylor 27-6-85

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 013-062

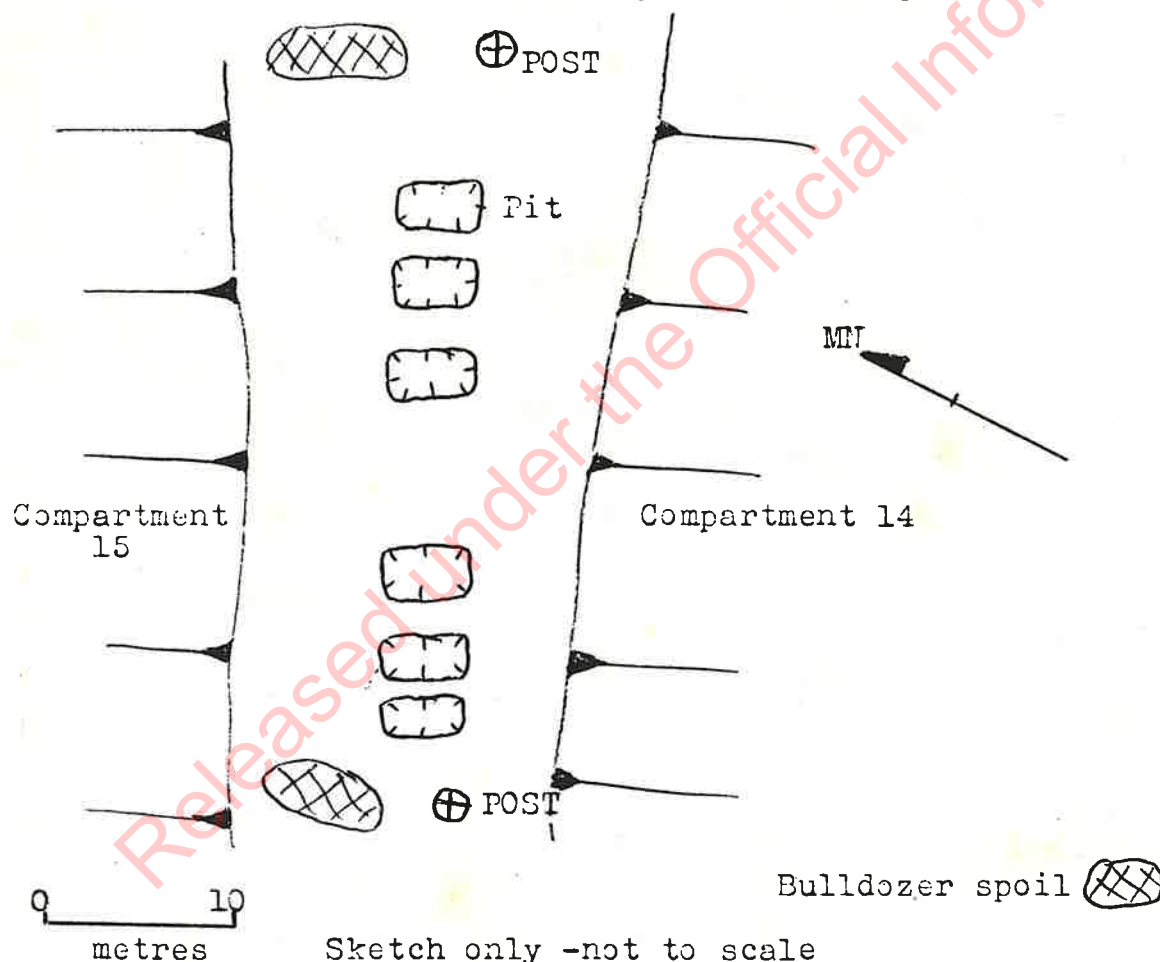
SITE NUMBER N18/92

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This site consists of 6 pits in two groups of 3 pits, not 5 as originally recorded. The site is situated in a fire break in thick scrub which obscures the features. The pits are dug into consolidated sand. Only the 3 northeast pits appear to have been disturbed by bulldozing. Two permanent posts were placed at either end of the pit row, as the site can be protected, by rerouting the firebreak on the southern side of the ridge.



M. Taylor

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		SITE NUMBER N18/ 137
Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 020-059	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER	
		SITE TYPE Pits

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This site was permanently marked with posts on 23 April 1985

BUSH

Compartment 14

Ridge in scrub, mainly bracken

To pa POST

MN

To N18/138, c45m down a steep slope

PINE

0 10 metres

To Papatea Road POST

M. Taylor

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 021-059	SITE NUMBER N18/138
	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This site was planned-see attached plan.

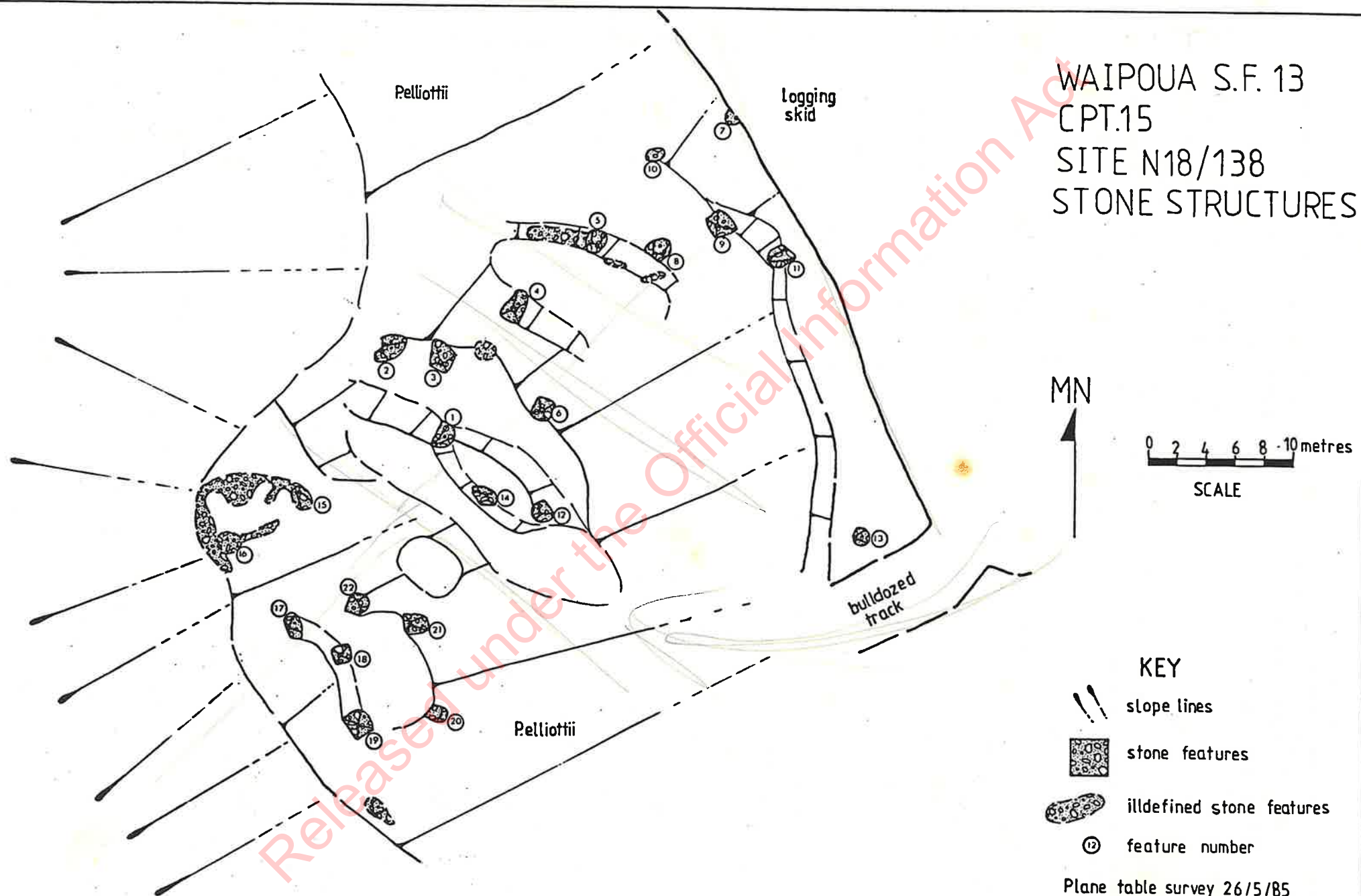
It is planted in mature Pinus elliottii.

One heap, number 7(see plan) was truncated during construction of an adjacent logging skid.

Maximum heights were recorded for each feature:-

- Feature 1. 79cm
- 2. 78cm
- 3. 68cm
- 4. 102cm
- 5. 72cm
- 6. 50cm
- 7. -
- 8. 49cm
- 9. 70cm
- 10. 27cm
- 11. 60cm
- 12. 41cm
- 13. -
- 14. 55cm
- 15. 25cm
- 16. 30cm
- 17. 42cm
- 18. 43cm
- 19. 52cm
- 20. 57cm
- 21. 64cm
- 22. 38cm

M. Taylor 4-7-85



Plane table survey 26/5/85
by M.Taylor and A.Sutton.

Drawn by A.Sutton 20/6/85.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 021-060

SITE NUMBER N18/140

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone structures

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

See attached plan.

Stone features in Pinus elliotii on this site were all cleared of light vegetation and fallen debris and then mapped and photographed. Features outside the pine perimeter in native bush were not cleared or mapped. Detailed descriptions of the features in pine follow. One feature, number 15, was excavated to determine whether it was natural or cultural and to obtain charcoal for carbon dating.

Feature 1: Height 38cm. Stone heap with two native trees growing from its highest point. The heap is constructed mainly of small(<10cm) rocks although there appear to be more medium(20-30cm) rocks around the base. These may be part of the original facing of the heap and the eastern end of the heap especially suggests this. One large rock (70x35cm) is lying on the south face of the heap and could have fallen from an erect position on top of the heap. Stone in the heap appears compact and includes a large number of very small(<1cm) metallic nodules. The heap is outside the pine line.

Feature 2: Height 82cm. This is a free standing heap attached to Feature 3 by a flat stone surface. It is constructed of medium(10-30cm) and small (5-10cm) rocks and these appear quite compact. There are some suggestions of an original faced construction. No trees are growing on this heap and it is located between the pines and the bush.

Feature 3: Height 86cm. This is a freestanding heap which retains some suggestion of an original faced construction especially on its steep southern side. Rocks on the perimeter of the heap appear larger than those on the interior but all stones used are medium(10-30cm) or small. It connects

WAIPOUA S.F. 13
CPT. 15
SITE N18/140
STONE STRUCTURES

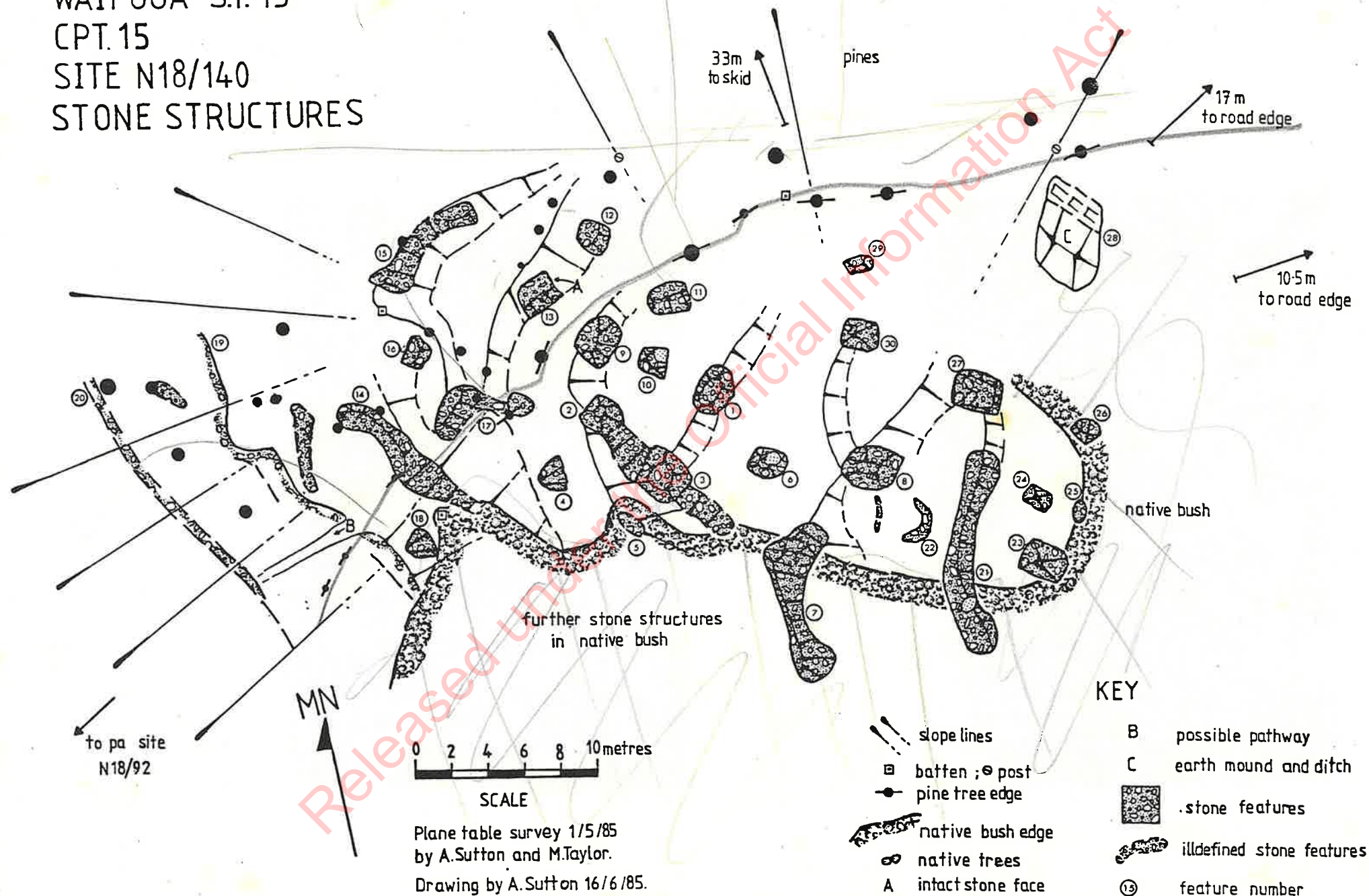




Plate 5: Intact stonework on Feature 13,
N18/140, Waipoua SF 13.



Plate 6: Feature 15, viewed from south-east,
N18/140, Waipoua SF 13.

N18/140 continued

Some traces of an original faced side can be seen. The heap is on the pine perimeter and has a small native tree growing from its centre.

Feature 10: Height 54cm. Small low heap constructed mainly of medium stones with some small. It includes one large rock.

Feature 11: Height 44cm. This stone heap shows a clear border of medium and large rocks placed to form a perimeter. The clarity of the outline is due to the lowness of the structure. The middle has mainly medium rocks but also large and small. The heap is on the pine perimeter and an old pine hole occurs on the southeast corner of the heap.

Feature 12: Height 45cm. A stone heap on a slope constructed of medium to large rocks. Some suggestion of an original facing remains. The heap is in the pine zone.

Feature 13: Height 57cm(south face), height intact face 40cm. This stone heap has intact stone facing on its eastern side(See plate). It is constructed of large and medium rocks on its perimeter with smaller rocks visible on top. The southeast corner is well constructed and slightly buttressed. The corner is four stones high and the second stone from the bottom appears to have been flaked to form a specified shape. It is in the pine zone.

Feature 14: Height 43cm. This is a confused area of possible stone facing, possibly the rocks to the south and west have moved down the slope. It is in the pine zone and pine roots snake amongst the rocks.

Feature 15: Height 63cm. This long strip of possible stone facing was excavated and planned in detail. The plan and excavation report follow after the description of feature 30.

Feature 16: Height 56cm. This is a rounded heap constructed mainly of small stones with 10cm as their maximum dimension. There are very few rocks over 20cm. There is a slight suggestion of facing on the southwest corner of the heap. The heap is in the pine zone and has pine roots growing through it. A native tree is growing in the top.

Feature 17: Height 58cm. This feature consists of stone facing with a heap stacked up against the slope constructed mainly of

to both Feature 1 and 2. It is in native bush and has two trees and supplejack growing out of the top. Tree roots appear to extent all through the heap.

Feature 4: Height 40cm. Possible low stone facing, constructed of medium(10-20cm) and large(20-40 cm) rocks with no small rocks visible. The feature is in native bush and is covered in numerous karaka seedlings. It was not cleared of undergrowth or debris and was poorly defined.

Feature 5: Height 32cm. Probable heap constructed mainly of medium rocks but also containing large and small rocks. It was not cleared and was poorly defined. It is in native bush and had several trees and supplejack growing from it.

Feature 6 : Height 72cm. A upright heap with some medium stones on its southern side but appearing to be mainly constructed of small(<5cm) stones. No metallic nodules were visible. Although it appears upright a large and a small tree grow out of the top and extensive root disruption is visible. In native bush.

Feature 7: Height 45cm(south end). This is a heap and extent of stone facing built of medium and large stones. It is covered in nikau trees and supplejack and the facing had three large trees growing from it. These trees had all fallen to the east ripping up and obscuring the stone work. The trunks were sawn up and removed. Vegetation on the remaining stone-work is dense and was not removed. Another parallel set of stone facing is located to the west in dense nikau but this was not mapped.

Feature 8: Height 88cm. This is the highest stone heap on the site. Rocks used in its construction appear to be mainly medium sized but also include large and small ones, and metallic nodules. Some soil is visible inside the heap where it has been disturbed by roots. No trace of any original facing on the sides can be seen. The heap is in native bush and has a large stump of a fallen tree in it, and the trees fallen from Feature 7 also lay across it. All logs were cut up and removed. Young nikau trees are growing on this feature.

Feature 9: Height 70cm. Rounded heap constructed mainly of medium rocks with some large. Small rocks are piled on top.

medium and large rocks with only a few small ones visible. It is in the pine zone and has been disturbed by pine tree roots. Three native trees are growing from the heap and the roots cover the heap surface.

Feature 18: Height 56cm. Stone heap constructed mainly from large rocks. It is situated where the bush and pine meet and some root disturbance has occurred. Above this feature the ground starts to rise steeply.

Feature 19: Height 53cm(northern end);40cm(southern end). Extended strip of possible light facing on steep slope. The rocks are rarely continuous and only the central portion northwest of the "path" feature has stacked stones. It is defined as much by the contour step as by the rock facing. It is in the pine zone and has numerous native shrubs growing from it.

Feature 20: Height 58cm(northern end). A line of rocks above feature 19 constructed of large rocks with the main stacking occurring at the northwest end. This feature and 19 are not well defined and may be natural in origin, or may be modified. Other stones extend above and beyond these two features but these are not well defined and efforts were best concentrated on those that seem to be modified.

Feature 21: Height 48cm(east end);57cm(west end). This is a well formed extended facing with a flat earth surface behind it. It is a major feature on the site(See plate). Visible stones are medium and small with a few large ones at the base of the construction. In native vegetation all of which was cleared from the stone work except for the large trees at the southwest end.

Feature 22: Height 25cm. This is a small "C" shaped facing forming a flat earth area behind. It is made from stones of all sizes with medium ones most common. It is in native bush and has nikau growing at the back of the feature.

Feature 23: Height 60cm. This is a rectangular shaped, flat topped heap made of rocks of all sizes. It is in native bush on the edge of thick supplejack and nikau and has a large native tree growing from its northwest end. It was not cleared.

Feature 24: Height 39cm. This is a rectangular flat topped heap constructed mainly from large stones. It is in native bush

N18/140 continued

but has no growth on it although damage has possibly occurred from trees which may have once been present.

Feature 25: Height 25cm. Formless heap containing medium and large rocks. Considerable damage by native trees and at present largely obscured by a large native tree.

Feature 26: Height 45cm. Stone heap constructed of small and medium stones with a flat top. The southwest corner is rectangular. Tall nikau grows to the east but no trees are present on the feature.

Feature 27: Height 71cm. This is a large rectangular flat topped stone structure constructed of medium rocks. In native bush and tree roots snake through the whole structure. One large tree was cut off the heap to increase visibility and lessen damage by roots.

Feature 28: Height 61cm. This was originally recorded as an earth mound and pit. However it looks exactly ^{like} a decayed example of the surface disturbance caused when a tree falls and the roots rip out of the ground creating a large hole and mound. It is in native bush.

Feature 29: Height 33cm. Small stone heap made of small stones. Possibly ring-bordered. On pine perimeter.

Feature 30: Height 56cm. Stone heap constructed mainly of medium stones with large ones forming the base. It has been disturbed by native trees with a large tree on its northern end. A small tree on the heap's southern edge was cut out.

M. Taylor

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 021-060	SITE NUMBER N18/140
	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE Stone structures

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Excavation of Feature 15 at N18/140

This description details the investigation by excavation of Feature 15 at site N18/140 in Waipoua SF 13. Feature 15 was a long stone facing on a slight slope on the northern perimeter of N18/140. N18/140 was chosen for intensive recording as it was anticipated that logging on the site would proceed in May 1985. Feature 15 was situated on the pine perimeter and would have suffered damage during logging. Feature 15 appeared to be a constructed or modified natural facing with two main concentrations of rock as indicated on the feature plan. In concentration A medium and large rocks were stacked one upon the other to form a low face.

Excavation

The excavation was carried out between 7-10 May 1985 by Annetta Sutton supervised by Michael Taylor, under the authority of N.Z. Historic Places Trust Permit 1985/5.

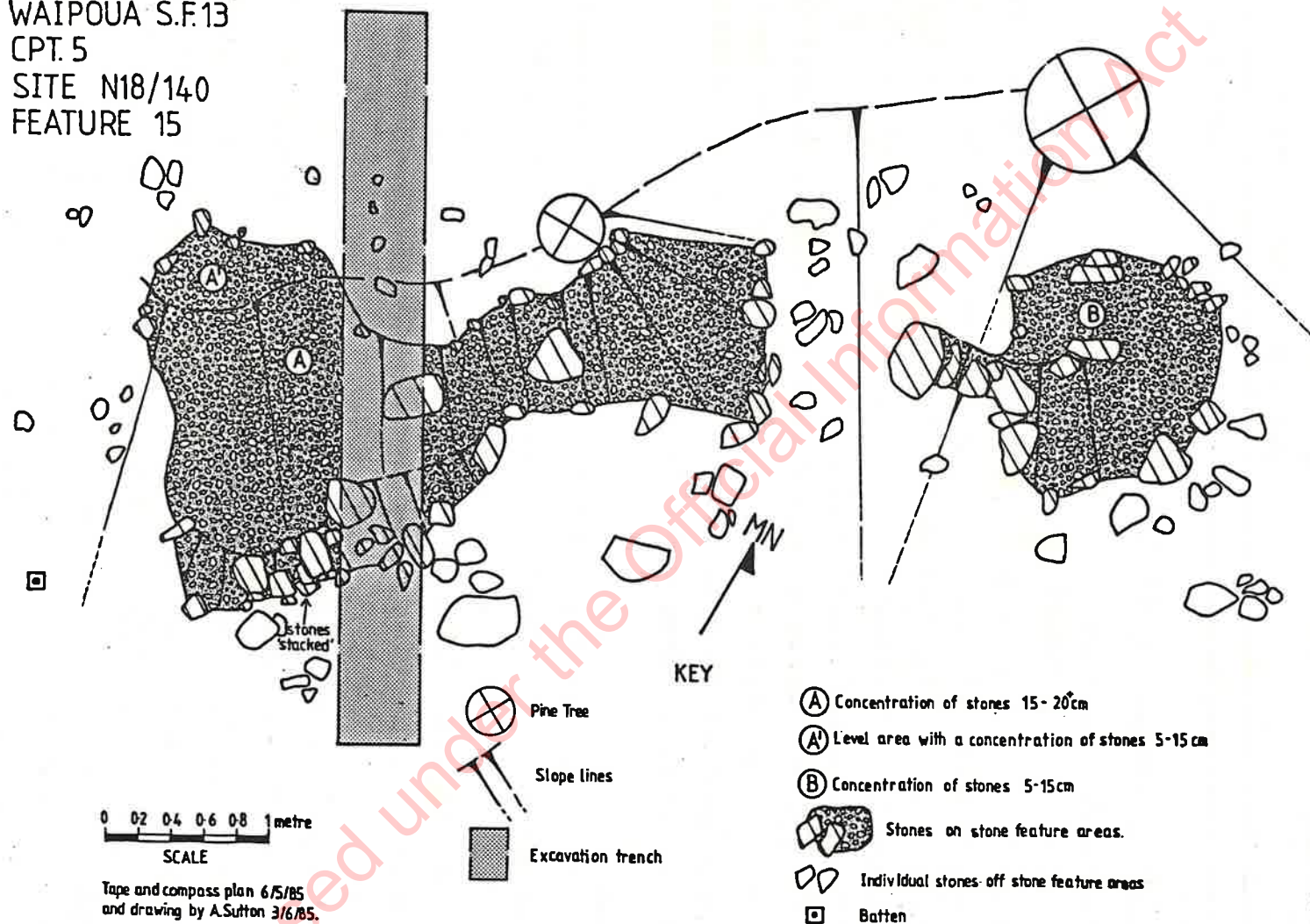
The aims of the excavation were-

- 1/ To clarify whether Feature 15 was a constructed feature.
- 2/ To establish through the mode of construction and soil profiles possible functions of Feature 15.
- 3/ To obtain charcoal samples for radio-carbon dating.

Prior to the excavation starting timber fallen on the feature was cut up and removed and the pine duff layer was removed so that the stones could be seen. The feature was then planned and photographed.

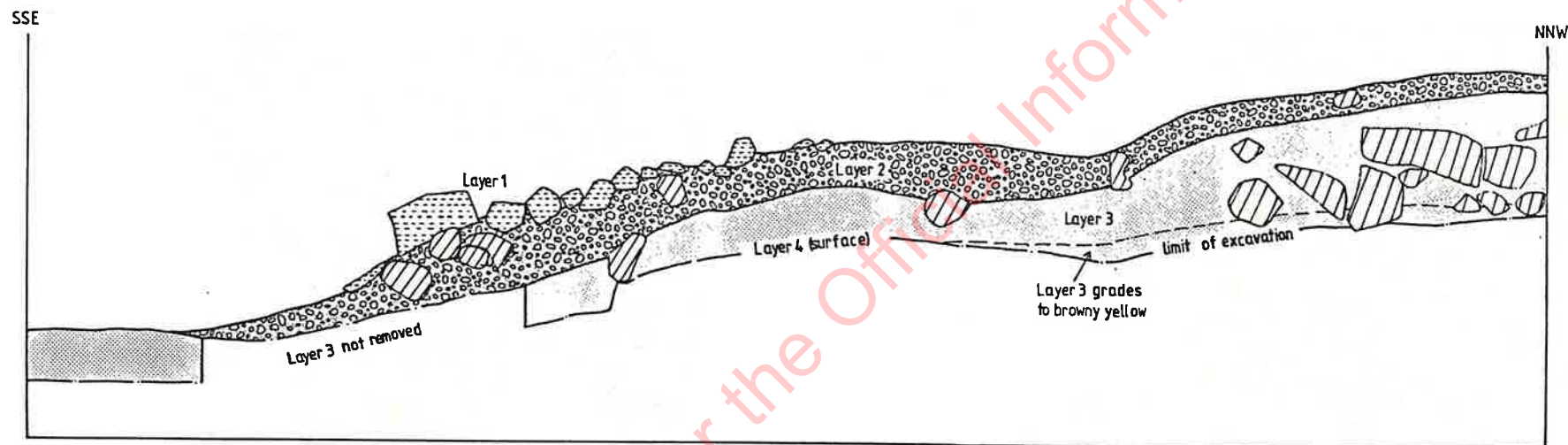
A 4.3x0.5m trench was then laid through concentration A of the feature and the soil and stones were excavated by stratigraphic layer using hand tools. The west side of the trench was drawn in section.

WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT. 5
SITE N18/140
FEATURE 15








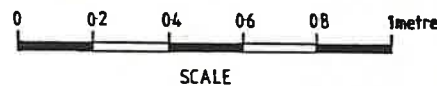
WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT.15
SITE N18/140
FEATURE 15, PART A
STONE STRUCTURE

X-SECTION



KEY

-  Layer 1 loose surface stones and humus.
-  Layer 2 black friable soil with stones 5-20cm.
-  Layer 3 brown greasy soil with nodules and small stones 5-10cm.
-  Layer 4 yellow compact soil with nodules and some small stones 5-8cm.
-  Individual large stones.



Tape and compass section
by A. Sutton 11-5-85.
Drawn by A. Sutton 4-8-85.

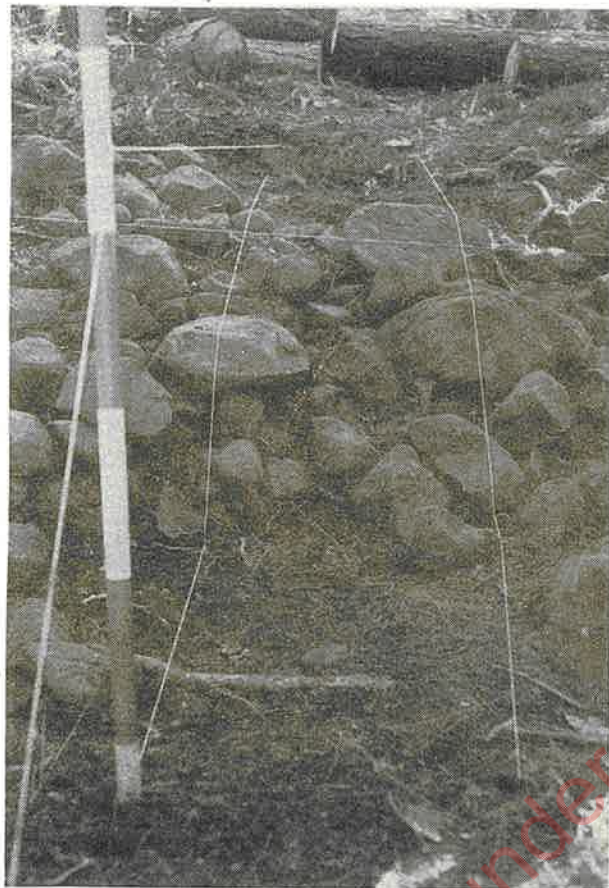


Plate 7: Surface, feature 15, layer 2 during excavation.
N18/140 Waipoua SF 13.

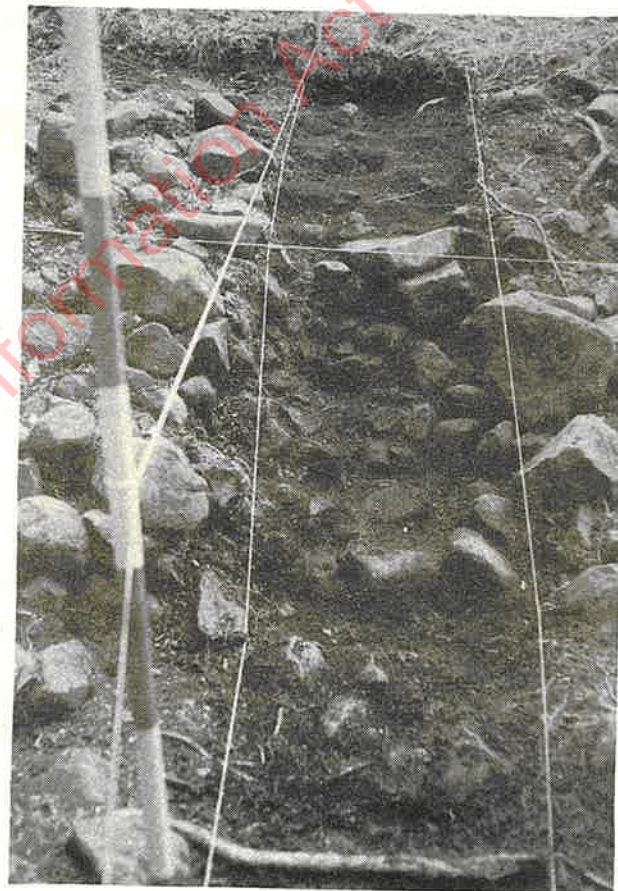


Plate 8: Feature 15, layer 2 partially excavated.
N18/140 Waipoua SF 13.

Excavation at M18/140 continued

Layer 1 consisted of the pine duff layer, loose humus, and loose surface stones. This was removed from the entire feature and is not therefore featured in the section drawing. The organic debris was clearly modern in origin.

Layer 2 was a very black friable soil with small to large stones set firmly in it. Worms and tree roots were plentiful. The greatest depth of layer 2 occurred on the sloping stone face. At the SSE end of the trench on the flat surface below the stone facing layer 2 was absent. Above the facing at the MTW end of the trench layer 2 varied between 5-15cms in depth and contained many stones smaller than 15cm. Once the loose rocks were removed from the trench surface the intact base of the facing became more definite and it appeared to follow along the line of the stones shown as "stacked" on the feature plan.

Layer 3 was a compact brown clay-loam with plentiful stones and manganese nodules. It was not fully excavated. There were many small(5-10cm) stones wedged tightly together in the stone facing, with a few stones up to 15cm. Below the facing at the SSE trench end layer 3 was compact and had numerous very small(3-5cm) rounded stones. Above the facing at the MTW trench end layer 3 contained many medium and large stones(15-50cm), more than are evident in the section drawing.

Layer 4 was a compact yellow clay which graded into layer 3. It contained many small(5-10cm) stones and manganese nodules. This layer was well defined and excavation was not extended into it.

Discussion

While the nature of the stone facing and stacked rocks suggested it may have been modified, the soil profile showed little evidence of cultural disturbance. In particular the stone concentrations A and B may have had stones stacked or added to a natural face. It was not possible to distinguish what may have been naturally positioned rock from that which may have been shifted onto the feature from nearby.

Layer 1 was clearly of modern origin and derived from the accumulation of pine litter. Layer 2 was more ambiguous, as it is probable that humus is trapped amongst the rocks and thus accumulates. It may in part also be derived from the weathering

of the rock. A third possible source of layer 2 could have been the dumping of organic rubbish from garden clearance on the facing which would decay into humus. However, it seems probable that the dark soil that constituted layer 2 has a natural origin as on other sites where the ground surface has been cleared black soil is also concentrated amongst the rocks.

Layers 3 and 4 appear unmodified and show a natural gradation from one to the other. The undisturbed profile and heavy clay soils suggest that layer 3 was not used for gardening in the vicinity of the trench. Only amongst the stones could crops have been planted.

Conclusion

Feature 15 showed little evidence of modification except for the possible addition and stacking of some stone. The small areas excavated on the flats immediately adjacent to the stone facing with heavy unmodified soils seems unlikely to have been used as a garden the function most often associated with stone work. The south east aspect of the site would also seem to argue against its use as a garden. Charcoal was not present in sufficient quantities to allow a sample to be taken.

Released under the Official Information Act

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		SITE NUMBER N18/141
Map Number	N18	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
Map Name	Waipoua	
Map Edition	3rd, 1975	SITE TYPE PIT
Grid Reference	014-065	
<p><i>(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)</i></p> <p>Several attempts were made to locate this single pit but it was unable to be found. It is likely to have been destroyed during logging of the area. A bulldozed track has been cut through the area where the site was probably located.</p> <p>Michael Taylor 2 May 1985</p>		

(Your record N^o N18/142 ABC) Z 3867/1-12

Artefact notification

23867

Stone flakes from near N18/142, Waipoua State Forest, Cpt 15.

A. 8 flakes all obsidian

23867/1

1. 2.5cm maximum dimension

" /2

2. 2.2

" /3

3. 2.2

" /4

4. 1.9

" /5

5. 1.3

" /6

6. 1.1

" /7

7. 1.0

" /8

8. 1.0

" /9

B. 1 flake of obsidian

9. 1.8

C.

" /10

10. 3.4 cm obsidian core

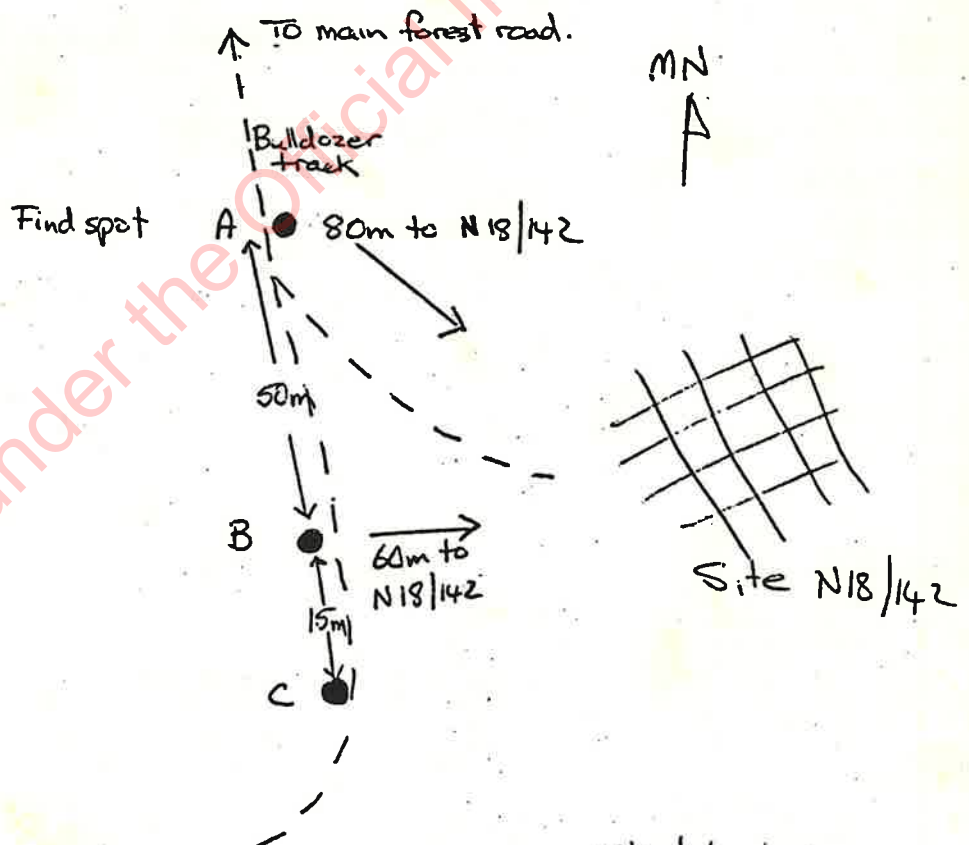
" /11

11. 3.0 cm obsidian flake

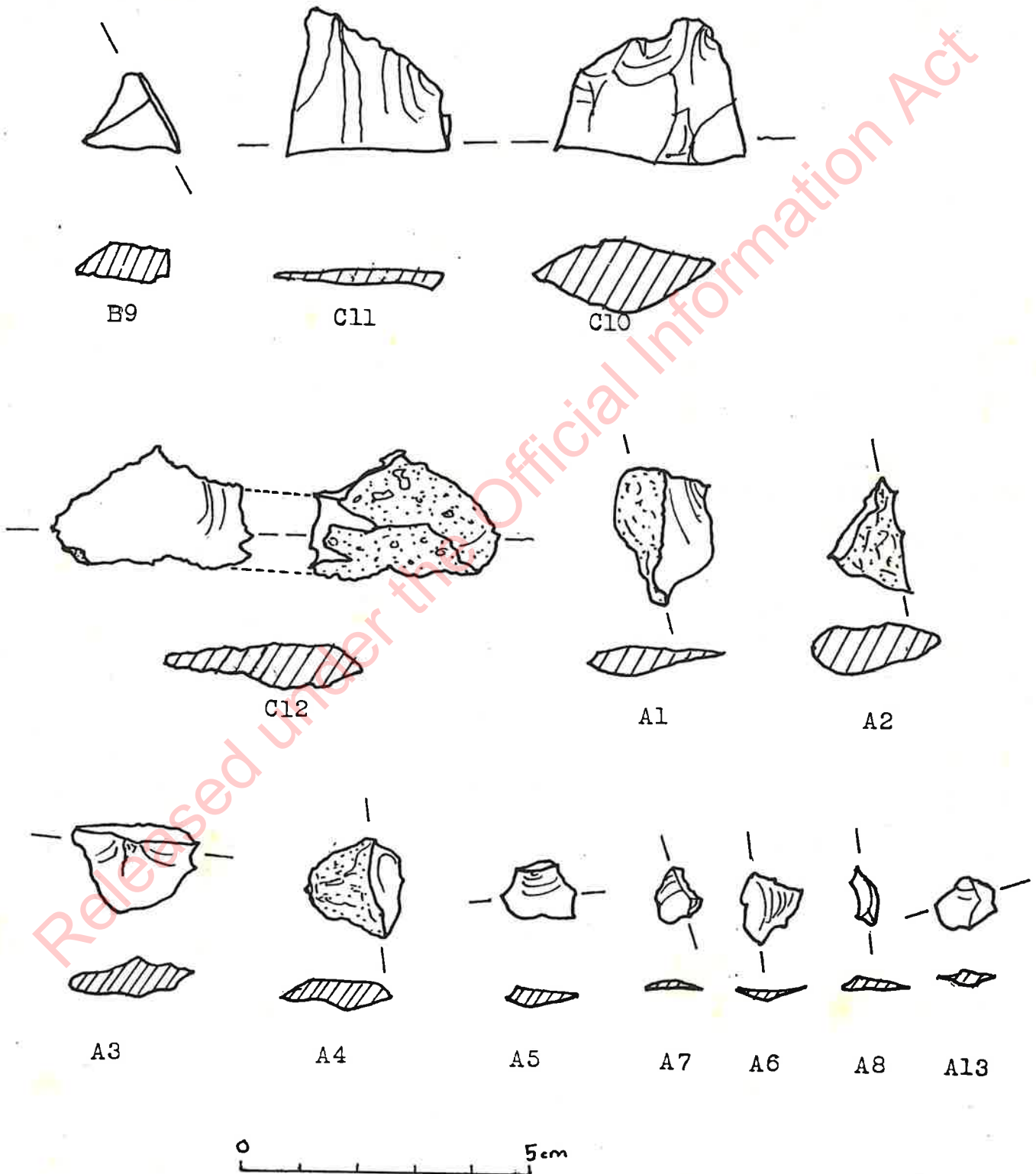
" /12

12. 3.5 cm grey basalt-like flake showing cortex

Individual flakes numbered
by M. Taylor 16/4/85.



Waipoua State Forest 13, stone flakes from N18/142
Z3867/1-13



CUL 7/4/2/45

**DEPARTMENT OF INTERNAL AFFAIRS**

Address Correspondence to
Secretary for Internal Affairs

Private Bag, Wellington, N.Z.

Telephone 738 699

Telegrams and Cables 'Internal'

Telex INTAFB NZ 31 134
INTAFL NZ 31 098

28 March 1985

Mr M Taylor
Box 3931
AUCKLAND

Dear Mr Taylor

Thank you for notifying me of the artifacts you found at
Waipoua State Forest, Compartment 15, on 13 March 1985.

Custody has been granted in favour of the NZ Forest Service
and the artifacts have been given Z number(s).

Z3867/1 to 12 (details shown on attached sheet). Your new
record number shown as N18/142 A, B and C.

Yours sincerely

(Ann Wells)
for Secretary for Internal Affairs

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 024-0615

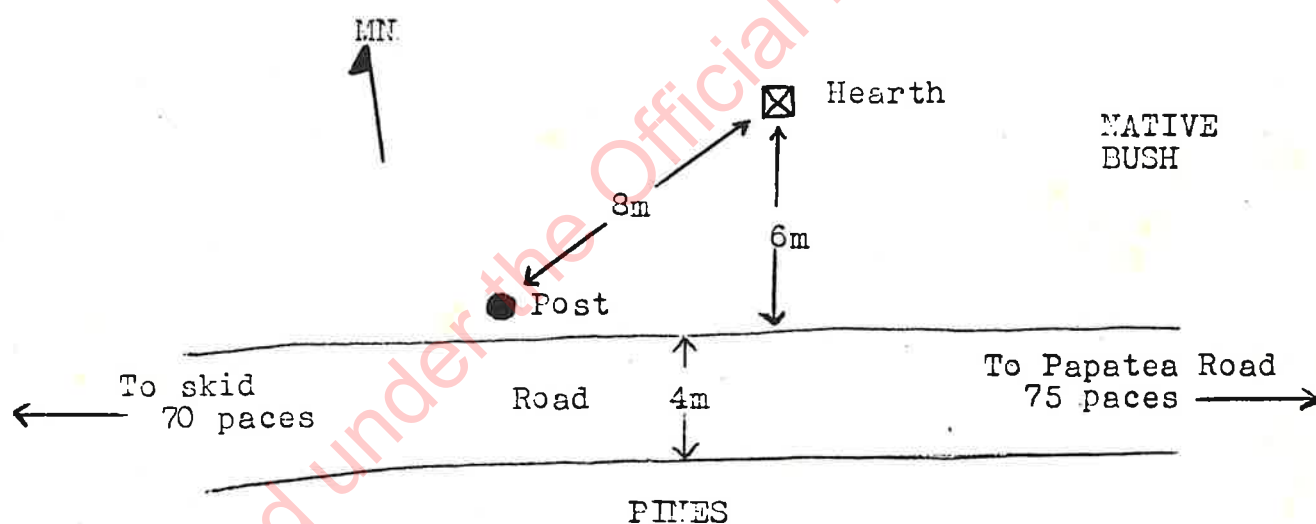
SITE NUMBER N18/180

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Terraces/stone hearth

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

A permanent post was placed in position to mark this site.



M.Taylor

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX IV

Compartments 20, 27 and 30

Site Record Forms

N18/190

N18/191

N18/192

N18/193

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18

NZMS 1 map name Waipoua

NZMS 1 map edition 1975 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/190

DATE VISITED May 1985

SITE TYPE Rock source

SITE NAME: MAORI
~~OTHER~~ Wairau

Grid Reference

Easting

9 4 2

Northing

0 9 4

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. Rocky foreshore just south of the Wairau River mouth. Similar rock can possibly be found as far south as Kawerua.

2. State of site and possible future damage Isolated rocky foreshore. No threat

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Water rounded, weathered, jasper-agate rocks up to 10cm long can be found along the rocky foreshore. The rock is dark yellow with white opaque veins which weather to a light blue-white. A core and flakes struck from this rock were found at site N18/Grid reference 965-053, 200m north of the Waiotane Stream.

The flakes & core and a sample of the rock have been lodged at the Waipoua Forest HQ.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
Address Waipoua State Forest
Private Bag
Dargaville

Tenant/Manager Rod Young
Address O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by Annetta Sutton & Michael Taylor

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
Address P.O. Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper
Date

7. Key words

Waipoua, rock source

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/191 Attachment 1

DATE VISITED 25 April 1985

SITE TYPE Find spot/stained sand

SITE NAME: MAORI horizon
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

9 6 5

Northing

0 5 3

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 27. Large sand blow-out behind foredunes, about 200m NW of Waiothane Stream. The site is crossed by a 4-wheel drive track.

2. State of site and possible future damage Eroding unconsolidated beach sand. Further erosion is likely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

1. Scatter of eroded rock about 150x75m in sand dune blow-out crossed by vehicle track. Stone flakes were scattered over the whole surface.
2. Stained sand horizon on the eastern margin of the dune blow-out, probably the source of the stone flakes.

See Waipoua Archaeological Project 1985: Stage One Report
by M. Taylor & A. Sutton for details of artefacts recovered.

National registration number of artefacts is z3926.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
Address Waipoua Forest
Private Bag
Dargaville

~~Terrace~~ Manager
Address

Rod Young
O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*)

Brief visit by M. Taylor & A. Sutton
Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

N.Z.F.S. Auckland. Colour slides 13/18/1&2.
Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
Address Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper
Date

7. Key words

Sand dune, Waipoua, stone flakes

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NOTIFICATION OF FINDING OF ARTIFACT
(Section 11 of the Antiquities Act 1975)

For artifacts found after 1 April 1976.

This copy - to be retained by notifying
museum or discarded if completed by finder

Note: Your local public museum will be happy
to help you complete this form.

Your Record No.

1. Type of artifact.... Stone flakes and cores.....
2. Where and when found..... 25 April 1985..... Site N18/191.....

Maximum length	Maximum depth	Maximum width	Weight
-	-	-	-

3. Description of artifact, including material..... See attached list.....
Obsidian flakes (63), chert flakes (25)
chert core (1).....

5. Has a photograph/sketch been taken of the artifact? YES/NO
If so, please attach a copy if possible for the National Register, or state where it is held: See Report to
N.Z.F.S. on Waipoua Site Management 1985 by M. Taylor and A. Sutton.
for details.

6. Give details of the circumstances of finding, including the precise location, how the artifact came to be found, and
any association with other identifiable signs of human occupation. Please enclose a sketch map of the site and where
the artifact was found and if possible, give the grid reference for the site.
In sand dune blow - out about 200m NW of Waiothane Strm. during
archaeological site management for N.Z.F.S. Grid reference 965-053

7. Name and address of:

(a) Finder

M. Taylor

Box 3931,

Auckland

and (b) Present holder of artifact

N.Z.F.S.

Waipoua Forest,

Private Bag, Dargaville

8. Form completed by:

Name: Michael Taylor,

Address: Box 3931, Auckland

Date: 10 June 1985

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

9. Recommendation for custody of artifact. N.Z. FOREST SERVICE, WAIOPOUA STATE FOREST,
PROVIDED THEY HAVE SUFFICIENT FACILITIES FOR SAFE DEPOSIT / STORAGE

Signature John H.P. Ross (E. H. Ross)
Date 15.10.85

10. Decision of Secretary for Internal Affairs as to custody to New Zealand Forest Service,
Waipoua State Forest

11. Date 18.10.85

12. National registration number Z 3926

Jane Kinnick
Secretary for Internal Affairs

Stone flakes from Grid
reference 965-053, Waipoua SF 13,
continued....

Site M18/191

Z3926/56-94

56. Obsidian- green. 1.8cm.
57. Obsidian- green. 1.8cm.
58. Obsidian- grey. 1.1cm.
59. Obsidian- grey. 1.4cm.
60. Obsidian- green. 1.3cm.
61. Obsidian- green. 1.4cm.
62. Obsidian- green. 1.3cm.
63. Obsidian- green. 1.6cm.
64. Obsidian- green. 1.0cm.
65. Obsidian- green. 0.9cm.
66. Obsidian- green. 0.4cm.
67. Obsidian- green. 0.9cm.
68. Jasper-agate core-yellow. 4.1cm.
69. Chert- banded yellow-white with cortex. 3.5cm.
70. Chert- light yellow chert point. 3.2cm. Drawn.
71. " " " flake. 2.6cm.
72. " " " flake. 3.0cm. Drawn.
73. " dark " " . 2.1cm. Drawn.
74. " light " " . 1.9cm.
75. " " " " . 2.4cm.
76. Chert- banded yellow-white. 1.7cm. Fits together with no.69.
77. Chert- light yellow . 2.6cm.
78. " " " . 1.5cm.
79. " " " 1.7cm.
80. " " " 1.5cm.
81. " " " 1.5cm.
82. " " " 1.7cm.
83. " " " 2.1cm.
84. " " " 1.4cm.
85. " " " 1.2cm.
86. " " " with cortex. 1.8cm.
87. " " " 2.4cm.
88. Chert- yellow-red. 1.4cm.
89. " " " 1.8cm.
90. Jasper-agate- yellow. 2.3cm. See no.68.
91. " " " 1.8cm. " " "
92. Chert- yellow-red. 1.5cm.
93. Chert?- coarse red. 2.6cm.
94. " " " 1.7cm.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/192
 DATE VISITED 19 May 1985
 SITE TYPE Midden
 SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

9 8 3

Northing

0 3 6

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 20. Access via Lake Road (No. 26). Situated on a ridge planted in Pinus pinaster (1948), south of Haohaonui Stream, in a new (1985) coastal shelter belt planting line. Approx. 30m from cliff edge and 300m from Lake Road.

2. State of site and possible future damage Site has been truncated by bulldozing. Further destruction is probable because of erosion and the planned planting of shelter belt trees.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Small intact shell cap set in dirty yellow sand (see sketch). The shell is fragile and crumbly. The most predominant shellfish are limpets. Also present are smaller numbers of green mussel, chiton plates, paua, cats eye operculum and shells, white rock shells & tuatua. Kina spines & plates and small fish scales and spines were also present. Most of the gastropods appear to have been broken up prior to deposition. No charcoal or stone was visible on the ground surface.

4. Owner
 Address

N.Z. Forest Service
 Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Tenant/Manager
 Address

Rod Young
 O/C Waipoua Forest

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by M. Taylor & A. Sutton. Tape & compass sketch plan.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)
 M.Z.F.S. Auckland Colour slides 13/18/3&4
 Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)
 Not visible

6. Reported by
 Address

Michael Taylor
 Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words

midden, Waipoua Forest

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

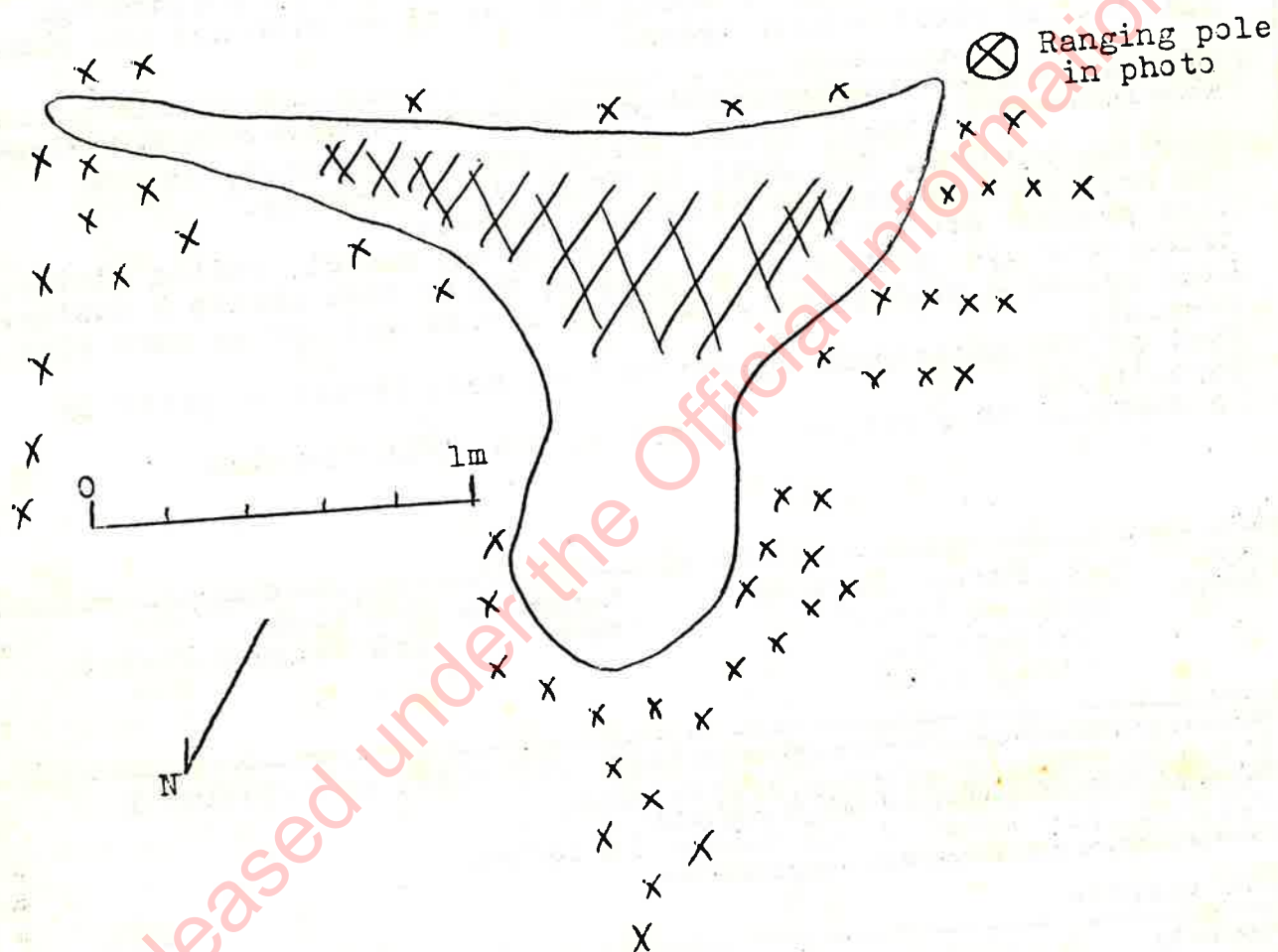
SITE NUMBER M18/192

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Midden

Map Number M18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 983-036

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



○ Midden deposit

XX Scattered shell

XXX Intact concentration of shell

Tape & compass sketch plan 19 May 1985 A.Sutton & M.Taylor

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd.1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/193
 DATE VISITED June 1985
 SITE TYPE Pits
 SITE NAME: MAORI—
 OTHER—

Grid Reference

Easting

0 1 2

Northing

0 8 4

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF13.cpt 30.0m on ridge cut through by and west of Pawakatutu Road, 200m NW of Radio Road. First set of pits less than 10m from road cutting.

2. State of site and possible future damage Pits well preserved. Planted in mature pine and young kauri.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See plan.

Two groups of two pits situated 59m apart amongst mature pine and regenerating kauri.

Pit dimensions (length x width)

Pit 1/ 4.1 x 2.8m Pit 3/ 5 x 3m

2/ 5.4 x 4.9m Pit 4/ 3.6 x 2.2m

Pits numbered from road.

Pit 4 appears to have a trench dug along the length of its bottom.

4. Owner N.Z.F.S.

Address Waipoua S.F.
 Private Bag,
 DARGAVILLE.

Tenant/Manager
 Address

O/c Rod Young,
 Waipoua HQ.

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Extended visit by M. Taylor and A. Sutton. Tape and offset plan.
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by
 Address

Michael Taylor,
 P.O. Box 3931,
 AUCKLAND.

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words

Pits, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

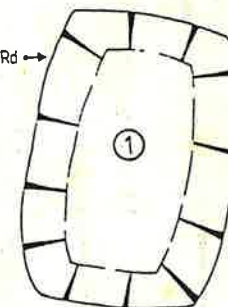
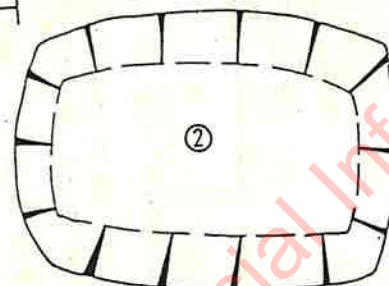
Local body

WAIPOUA SF 13
CPT. 30
SITE N18/193
PITS

59m Pit 2 to Pit 3

MN

7.5m to Pawakctutu Rd →



Pit bottom dimensions:
length width

① 2.8 x 1.2 m

② 4.1 x 1.9 m

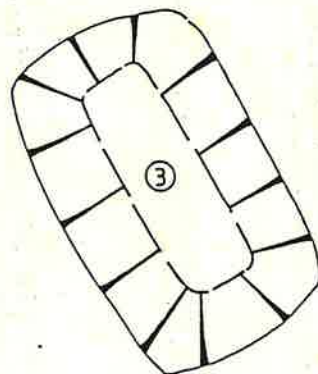
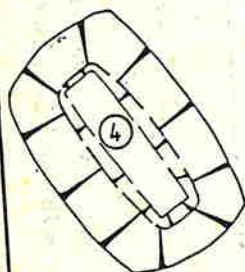
③ 3.1 x 0.9 m

④ 2.5 x 0.7 m, trench in bottom 2.3 x 0.5 m.

0 1 2 3 metres

SCALE

Tape and compass survey 6/6/85
by A. Sutton and M. Taylor.
Drawn by A. Sutton 13/6/85.



The cover design by Manos Nathan of the Te Roroa hapu is derived from the moko of Tuputupuwhenua on the pou aro carving of Matatina Marae, Waipoua; Tuputupuwhenua being the progenitor of Ngati Whatua. The three titi elements comprising the whole represent the Tangata Whenua, the N.Z. Forest Service, and the N.Z. Historic Places Trust. The encompassing circle represents a unity of purpose from the three groups. The cover layout was designed by Bill White, N.Z. Forest Service, Auckland.

This is an unpublished internal report, approved for restricted circulation only. It should not be cited in print without permission from the Director-General of Forests, Private Bag, Wellington.

Released under the Official Information Act

REPORT ON THE PROPOSED HISTORIC AND
TRADITIONAL (ARCHAEOLOGICAL) RESERVE IN
WAIPOUA STATE FOREST 13

October
1986

N.Z.F.S.
AUCKLAND CONSERVANCY

MICHAEL TAYLOR

Released under the Official Information Act

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Thanks to the people who carried out the fieldwork necessary to define the reserve. They were Peter Bristow, Michelle Horwood, Gordon Jackman, Wiki Karena, Helen Marshall, Richard Paniora, Robert Pollock and Annetta Sutton.

Drafts of this report were commented on by Ian Lawlor, Alex Nathan, Manos Nathan, Greg Russell, Ian Smith and Annetta Sutton. Their help was appreciated.

Annetta Sutton drew the maps.

Special thanks to members of the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee and tangata whenua for their support.

Considerable assistance was given by Waipoua Forest personnel, especially Rod Young.

The Forest Service were instrumental in proposing the creation of the archaeological reserve and have also funded and encouraged all the work undertaken to establish the reserve. Many thanks are due to all concerned.

Introduction

The purpose of this report is to provide a summary of the findings of the study conducted by the research team. The study was designed to investigate the relationship between the variables of interest and to determine the extent to which the findings are consistent with the existing literature.

The study was conducted using a quantitative research design, which allowed for the collection of numerical data and the use of statistical analysis to test the hypotheses.

The results of the study are presented in the following sections.

The first section of the report provides a detailed description of the study's methodology, including the selection of participants, the data collection procedures, and the statistical tests used to analyze the data.

The second section of the report presents the results of the study, including the mean scores for each variable and the results of the statistical tests.

The third section of the report discusses the implications of the findings for practice and research, and provides recommendations for future studies.

Released under the Official Information Act

CONTENTS

	Page
1.0 INTRODUCTION	1
1.1 <u>General Introduction</u>	1
1.2 <u>Background</u>	1
1.3 <u>Administration</u>	4
1.4 <u>Natural History</u>	5
1.5 <u>Cultural History</u>	6
2.0 DEFINITION OF THE RESERVE	7
2.1 <u>Definition of the Area</u>	7
2.2 <u>Summary of Sites in the Reserve</u>	7
2.3 <u>Discussion of Sites</u>	14
3.0 SIGNIFICANCE OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL RESERVE	16
3.1 <u>Archaeological Significance</u>	16
3.2 <u>Traditional Maori Significance</u>	16
3.3 <u>Landscape and Ecological Significance</u>	17
4.0 SITE MANAGEMENT	19
4.1 <u>Site Survey</u>	19
4.2 <u>Site Protection</u>	19
4.3 <u>Site Modification</u>	20
4.3.1 Logging of Archaeological Sites	20
4.3.2 Public Access	21
4.4 <u>Site Investigations</u>	22
5.0 SUMMARY	23
6.0 BIBLIOGRAPHY	24

APPENDICES

	<u>PAGE</u>
Appendix I: Waipoua Forest Sanctuary Leaflet	29
Appendix II: Description of the Proposed Boundaries of the Waipoua Historic and Traditional (Archaeological) Reserve	31
Appendix III: Checklist of Sites to be Included in the Reserve	33

TABLES

Table 1 : Archaeological Site Features Present in Waipoua River Valley and Proposed Reserve	13
---	----

FIGURES

Figure 1 : Waipoua Forest Map Showing Reserve Boundaries	2
General Key to Figures 2, 3, 4 and 5	8
Figure 2 : Compartment 5 Map " " "	9
Figure 3 : Compartment 14 Map " " "	10
Figure 4 : Compartment 15 Map " " "	11
Figure 5 : Compartment 58 Map " " "	12

PLATESPAGE

- Plate 1: N18/186 (see Smith 1986b; Taylor and Sutton 1985). Line cut through Pinus patula prior to preliminary mapping. There is a stone heap in the right foreground with the undergrowth cut off. 37
- Plate 2: University of Auckland Anthropology Department fieldschool at site N18/186 during a visit by the interim Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee in December 1985. 37
- Plate 3: Site N18/186. This is the same stone heap as in Plate 1 after clearance. The scale is 1m long with 10cm divisions. 38
- Plate 4: Site N18/87. Stone wall cleared for photographing. Planted in P. radiata. The scale is 50 cm. 38
- Plate 5: Felling of P. patula adjacent to N18/186. 39
- Plate 6: Site N18/87. Stone alignment cleared for recording in P. radiata. The scale is 50 cm long. 39
- Plate 7: Site N18/181. Stone hearth probably indicating a house site. Situated in light bush immediately adjacent to P. elliotii. 40
- Plated 8: Site N18/186. Small heap showing detail of construction. The stone in the foreground has dropped from the space above. The scale is divided into 10 cm divisions. 40
- Plate 9: Site N18/109. Stone heap showing an intact face and a collapsed face. Scale is 1 m. 41
- Plate 10: Site N18/103: Mapping and excavation of the site are underway. Small and dead P. echinata were cut and removed from the site before work commenced. 41
- Plate 11: Site N18/140. Low stone facing. The feature is in bush immediately adjacent to a stand of P. elliotii. 42
- Plate 12: Site N18/15. Stone platform in indigenous bush. 42

Released under the Official Information Act

- 1 -

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 General Introduction

This report describes the proposal to set aside about 645 hectares of land containing archaeological sites as an historic and traditional reserve in Waipoua State Forest No. 13, Northland (Fig. 1).

A large number and wide variety of archaeological sites, representing the ruins of pre-European Maori settlements are present in the Waipoua River valley. These ruins are of sufficient historical significance that they warrant preservation and the continuation of management and selected archaeological investigations. Significant factors include:

1. the traditional importance of the sites to the tangata whenua, Te Roroa hapu of Ngati Whatua.
2. the density and relatively intact nature of the archaeological evidence.
3. the unique location of the ruins in a small river valley with a largely undisturbed and forested landscape.

The sites are located both in protected indigenous bush and planted pines. Contracts for the removal of pines in forest Compartments 5 and 15 over the next three years have been let by the Forest Service (FS).

The proposed reserve borders the Waipoua Kauri Sanctuary (Appendix I) and Waipoua River. Thus as well as protecting the archaeological sites the reserve will make a valuable addition to the areas already protected for ecological reasons.

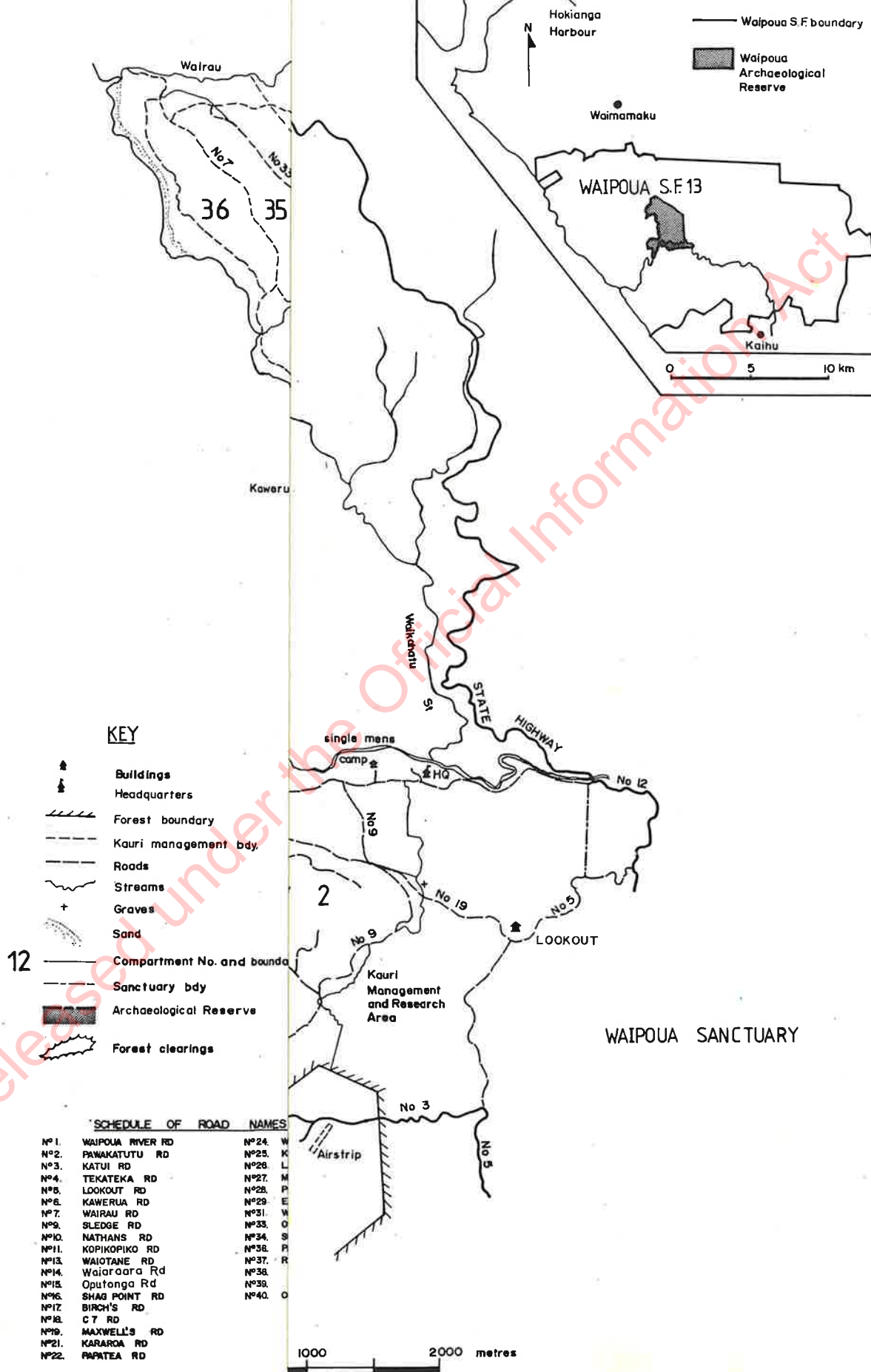
1.2 Background

Archaeological site surveys have identified over 175 pre-European Maori and historic sites in Waipoua Forest (Atwell, Puch, and Lawn 1973; Atwell

Released under the Official Information Act

FIG1: FOREST MAP
Pt. WAIPOUA S.F.

Attachment 2
INSET: WAIPOUA RIVER
VALLEY LOCATION MAP.



Tracing and additions by A. Sutton 25

Released under the Official Information Act

- 3 -

and Puch 1973; Collins 1953; Coster and Johnston 1980; Lawn 1970; Moore 1984; Papworth 1980; Pierce 1981; Pollock 1982; Taylor 1986a; Taylor and Sutton 1985, 1986; Tippet and Olsen 1980). Of these 126 are located on State Forest land in the Waipoua River valley.

The preservation of a proportion of these sites by creating an archaeological reserve was first suggested in May 1981 by Colin Sutherland (then Kaikohe District Ranger) at a meeting with representatives from the Forest Service and the Historic Places Trust (HPT). The intention of the early reserve proposals (Pierce 1981; Coster 1983) was to set aside an area within Forest Compartments 5, 14, 15, 58 and 66 containing 35 sites which at that time represented 40% of the sites known in those compartments. However, following further fieldwork in the forest (Charters 1982b; Moore 1984) it became clear that there were far more sites and that management problems were more complex than had been previously recognised. To deal with this situation an archaeological project involving both site management and research was proposed (Coster 1983; Lawlor 1984b; Moore 1984).

Stage I of the Waipoua Archaeological Project (Lawlor 1984b) was undertaken and completed in 1985 and involved site survey and recording, investigations, and the definition of strategies for the removal of pines from sites in forest Compartments 5 and 15 (Taylor and Sutton 1985).

Fieldwork for Stage II of the project also has been completed (Taylor 1986a). This included further site survey and recording to enable the reserve boundaries to be defined, management, and excavations of seven sites planted in pines (Smith 1986b; Taylor 1986a; Taylor and Sutton 1986).

The fieldwork has demonstrated the significance of the archaeological sites (Smith 1986a) and has allowed the definition of broader research objectives and priorities for the project (Smith 1985). A detailed proposal for the investigation of selected sites over the next three years is now in preparation (Smith n.d.).

Further, it is only through the first two stages of the project that the

Released under the Official Information Act

- 4 -

importance of these places to the tangata whenua has been recognised by the FS and HPT.

1.3 Administration

At present, the land which it is proposed to include in the archaeological reserve is all part of Waipoua State Forest and is managed by the FS. Consultations between the FS, HPT, and tangata whenua took place during 1985 to consider the future management of the sites and this led to the formation of an advisory committee made up of representatives from these three groups. An interim Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee has held four meetings to discuss the management of archaeological sites in the forest (Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee Minutes 1-4 1985, 1986). All work on sites has been carried out under the auspices of this committee. The future administration of the sites can best be achieved if this committee is formally constituted and continues to oversee the management, investigation, and development of the sites.

The position of the FS regarding the management of the sites (Anderson 1985; Black 1985) has been updated recently (Lawlor 1986). This includes support for the establishment of the reserve and the future protection of remaining sites outside the reserve. Over 48 hectares of productive land will be removed from pine production by the creation of the reserve.

The FS will provide the necessary personnel and funding to begin to remove pines from the sites during the summer of 1986-87. The primary objective of this work will be to remove the trees with minimum damage to archaeological features; strategies to achieve this are outlined elsewhere (Taylor and Sutton 1985). The FS also has provided all funding and considerable field support for the Waipoua Archaeological Project including work by both FS and University of Auckland Anthropology Department archaeologists and students.

Although the FS has accepted a continued responsibility for site management at Waipoua, in consultation with the Archaeological Advisory Committee, the policy of the new Forestry Corporation has yet to be

- 1 -

1. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

2. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

3. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

4. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

5. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

6. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

7. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

8. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

9. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

10. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

11. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

12. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

13. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

14. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

15. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

16. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

17. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

18. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

19. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

20. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

21. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

22. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

23. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

24. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

25. The purpose of this document is to provide information to the public regarding the

- 5 -

determined.

It is likely that control of the proposed reserve will be transferred from the FS to another body, probably the new Department of Conservation (DOC), when the Forestry Corporation is formed in 1987. The most appropriate means of setting aside the reserve is probably as an Historic and Traditional Reserve under the Historic Places Act (1980) but another possibility is under the Maori Affairs Act. A recommendation on this has yet to be made by the interim Advisory Committee. (See Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee minutes 1-4).

1.4 Natural History

The natural history of the Waipoua Forest, including information on geology, pedology, and vegetation has been discussed previously in numerous reports and is only outlined briefly here (see Appendix I also).

Within the Waipoua River valley the geological substratum is a Miocene basalt, which weathers into Waipoua clay, a moderately leached brown granular clay. This is overlaid in places by Pleistocene sand dunes with recent alluvium on the river terraces (Kermode 1981; MacFarlan 1974; Sutherland, Cox, Taylor and Wright 1980). The known distribution of archaeological sites in the Waipoua River valley coincides with that of Waipoua clay and alluvium.

The indigenous vegetation, and its history, have been described elsewhere (Bellingham, 1985; Cockayne 1908; Hayward 1978; Lloyd 1973; McGregor 1948). Much of the original vegetation in the proposed reserve has undergone modification in recent times with pine production, experimental kauri management and some agriculture. Fire induced scrub was the main vegetation in areas cleared by burning for pine planting from the 1920's on. Pines planted included a variety of species no longer cultivated for commercial production.

Kauri management trials were undertaken in the bush in Compartment 58 and involved clearfelling or felling only the under-storey (Forester 1985). However, remnants of the older broadleaf forest still survive on both

Released under the Official Information Act

- 6 -

sides of the river as groves or individual trees. These include taraire, kauri, kowhai, totara, kahikatea, karaka, puriri, northern rata, and many others.

No comprehensive description of the forest fauna has been produced but wildlife observed during survey work in the reserve included wood pigeons, tui, kiwi, a long tailed cuckoo and many other birds, kauri snails, a cave weta and other insects, and geckos.

1.5 Cultural History

Only a brief summary of the history of Waipoua is given here as a detailed account has been produced recently (Forester 1985) and much historic information has been compiled into a single volume (Lawlor 1984a) (See also Appendix I).

Waipoua was first settled, perhaps 1000 years ago by Maori whose descendants still live in the valley. Descent is claimed from Rongomai, through Manumanu. He came from Muriwhenua and settled in Waipoua at Whenuahou (part of the Maori land in the valley). The hapu name for the people from the valley and surrounding areas is Te Roroa. This derives from the occasion of the death of Manumanu's son also named Manumanu (Nathan 1985a and b).

Polack, perhaps the first European to visit the valley, has provided a vivid description of Maori life in the valley in the early 1830's (Lawlor 1984a; Polack 1838).

The original Waipoua Block, which included parts of the proposed reserve, was purchased in 1876 from Tiopira Kinaki of Ngati Whatua and Parore te Awha of Ngapuhi.

Forestry, gum digging and bleeding, and farming have been the principle occupations of the people living in the valley since 1876. Abundant evidence of these activities can be found in the valley.

Planting of pines commenced in the 1920's and is ongoing.

Released under the Official Information Act

- 7 -

2.0 DEFINITION OF THE RESERVE

2.1 Definition of the Area

The proposed reserve boundary is shown on a Waipoua Forest map (Fig. 1), on maps of Forest Compartments 5 (Fig. 2), 14 (Fig. 3), 15 (Fig. 4) and 58 (Fig. 5). A detailed description of the location of the boundaries is included in Appendix II. Precision is necessary because in some places the reserve boundary will be close to archaeological sites.

When defining the exact reserve boundaries several factors were considered. Foremost was the need to preserve a representative number and variety of significant archaeological and traditional Maori sites. It was also necessary to incorporate practical land management considerations, allow for surveying of the reserve boundaries, and future differentiation on the ground between reserve and forest development areas. For these reasons a contiguous land area, rather than separate blocks containing sites, has been recommended for reservation.


Most of the sites are concentrated on FS land close to the river. However, as occupation extended more widely throughout the forest, the higher ground in Compartment 58 extending up to Huaki and Pawakatutu Road has also been included in the reserve. This northern portion of Compartment 58 has not yet been surveyed for archaeological sites, but it does include the historic gum-diggers' settlement at Huaki, the nearby grave of a gum-digger's infant daughter, packhorse tracks, and a portion of the Kohuroa landing, known traditionally as a kiwi hunting area. (See Lawn 1970).


2.2 Summary of Sites in the Reserve

The proposed archaeological reserve contains 71 of the sites recorded in the Waipoua River valley and most site types are well represented (Table 1). As many sites contain more than one sort of archaeological feature the site feature totals in Table 1 are greater than the number of sites.

Released under the Official Information Act

General Key to Figures: 2,3,4 & 5.

 N18/102 archaeological sites.

 exotic plantings (mainly pines) with
age and species boundaries.

 roads / tracks

 logging skids

 streams

15  compartment No's and boundaries.

 archaeological reserve boundary

⑭ archaeological reserve description numbers

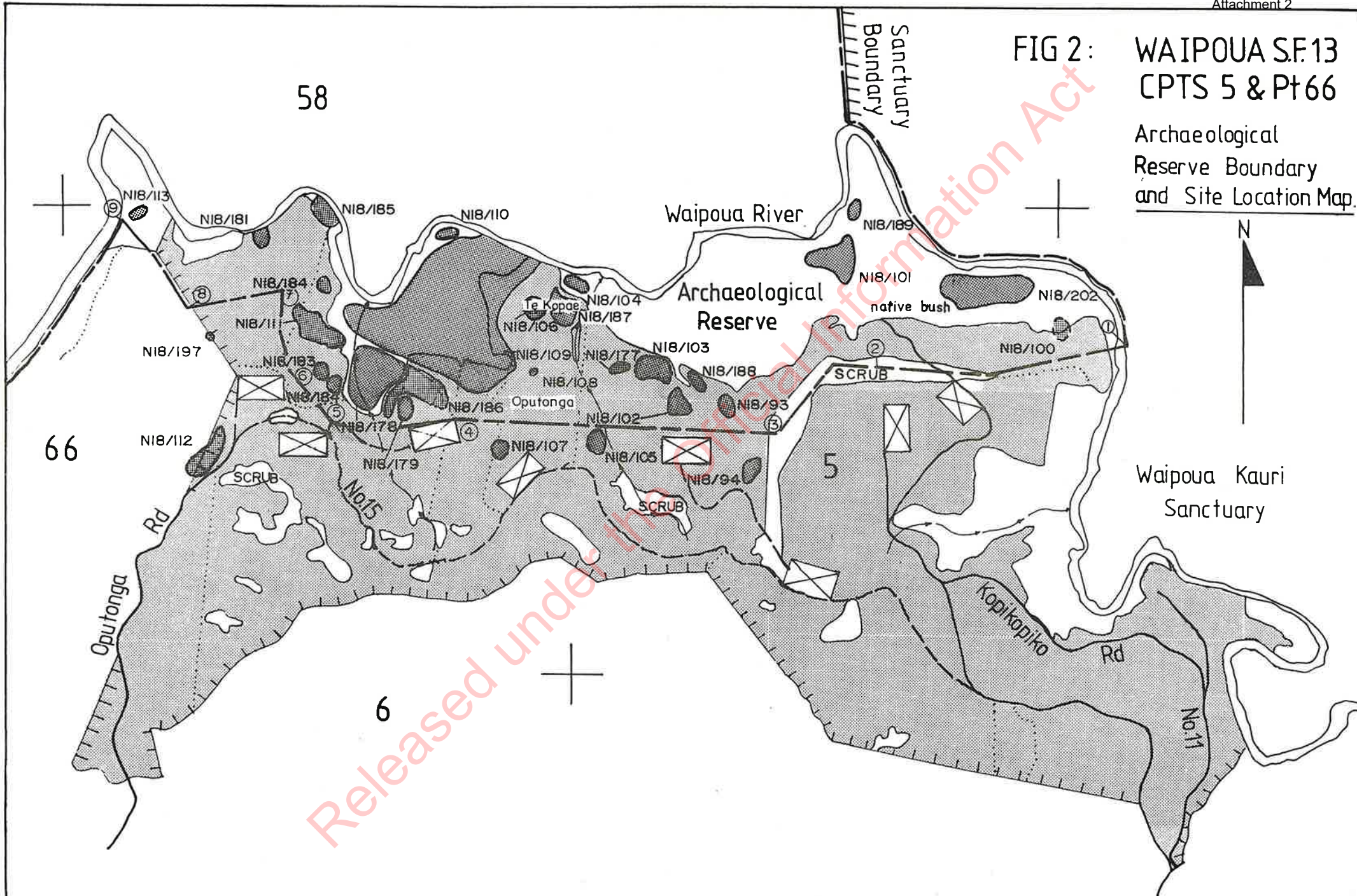
 0 200 400 600 800 1000 metres

Tracing and additions by A.Sutton 25/8/86.

Released under the Official Information Act

FIG 2: WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPTS 5 & Pt66

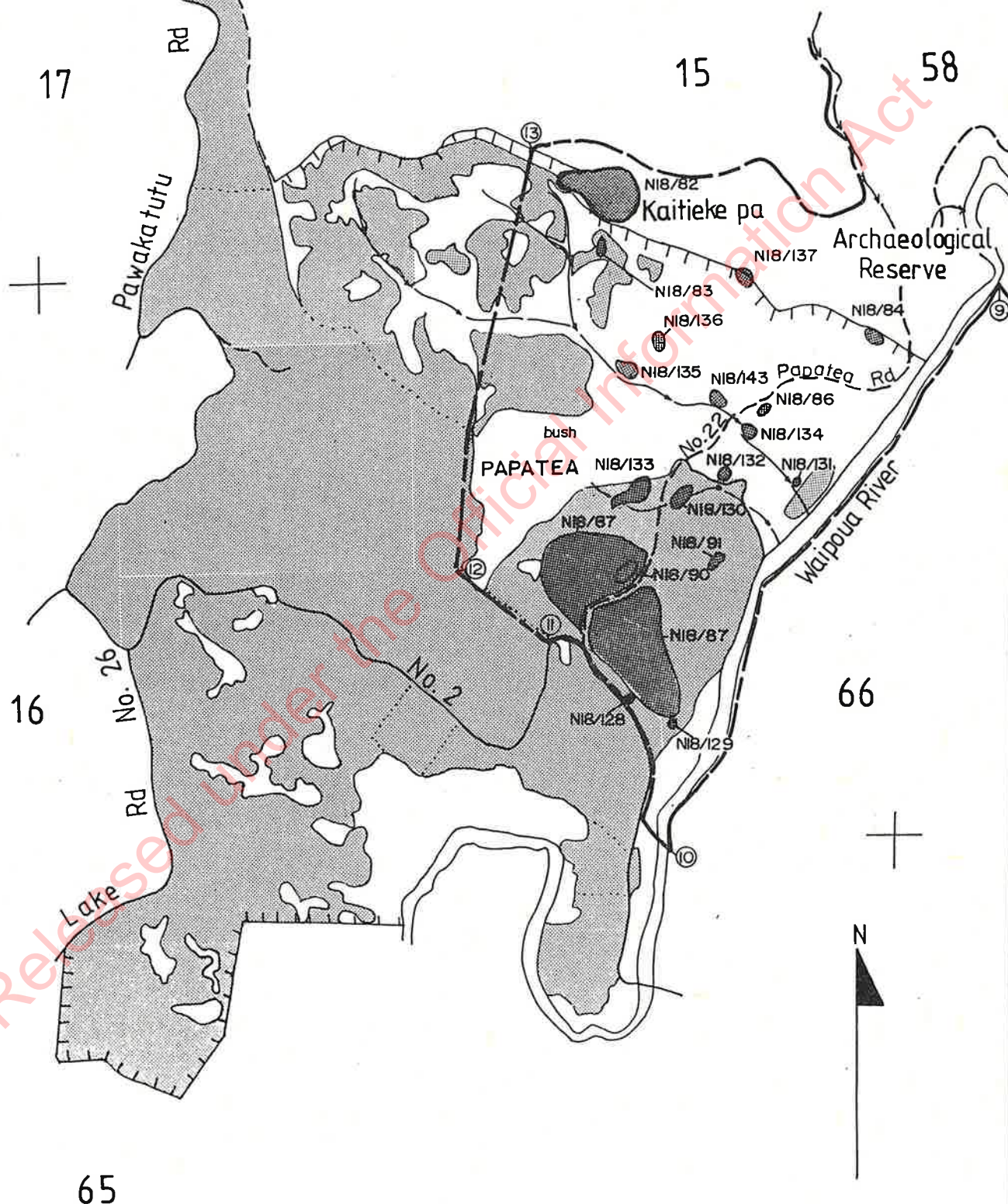
Archaeological
Reserve Boundary
and Site Location Map.



Released under the Official Information Act

FIG 3: WAIPOUAS.F.13 CPT. 14

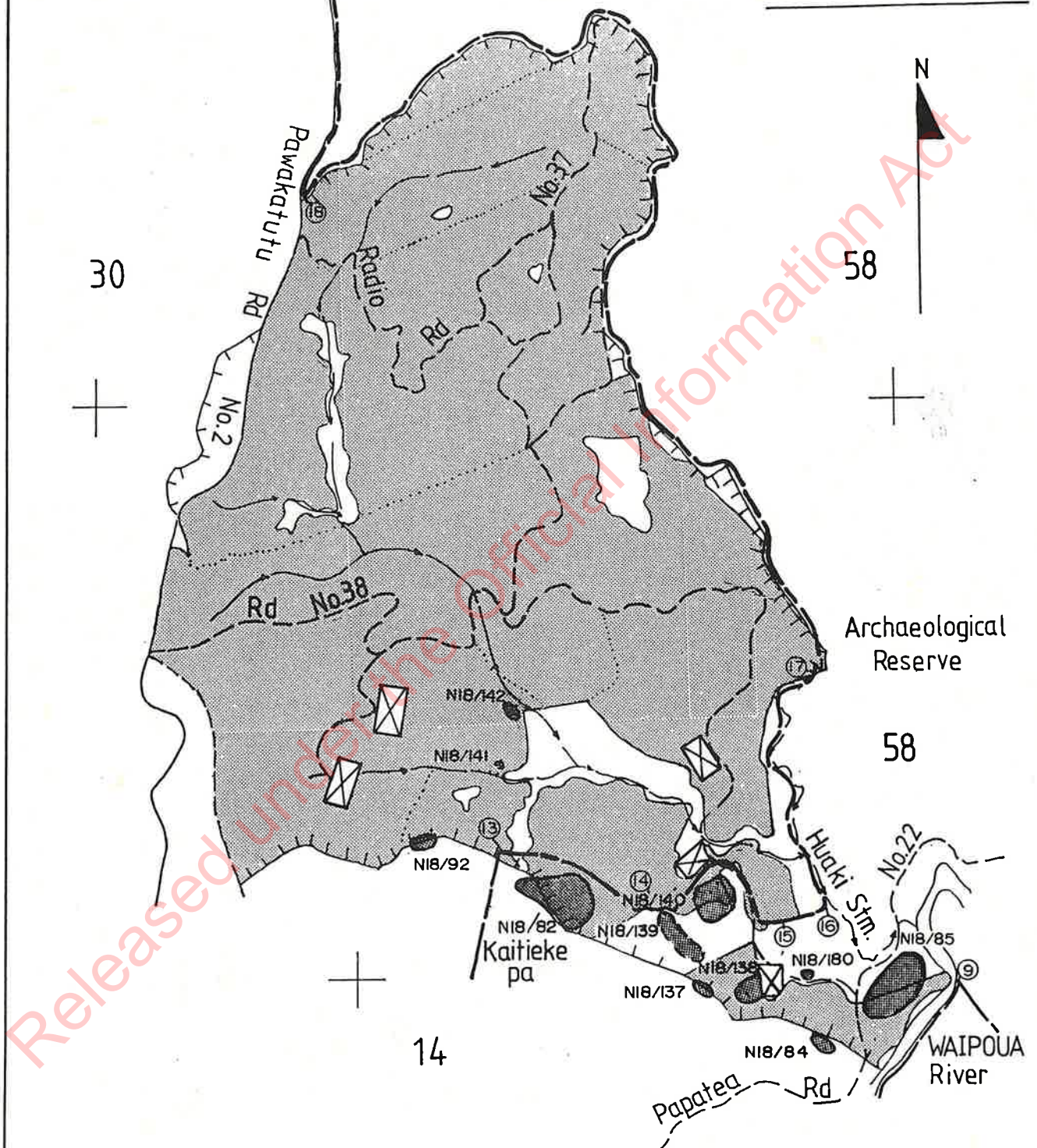
Archaeological
Reserve Boundary
and Site Location Map.



Released under the Official Information Act

FIG 4: WAIPOUA S.F. 13 CPT. 15

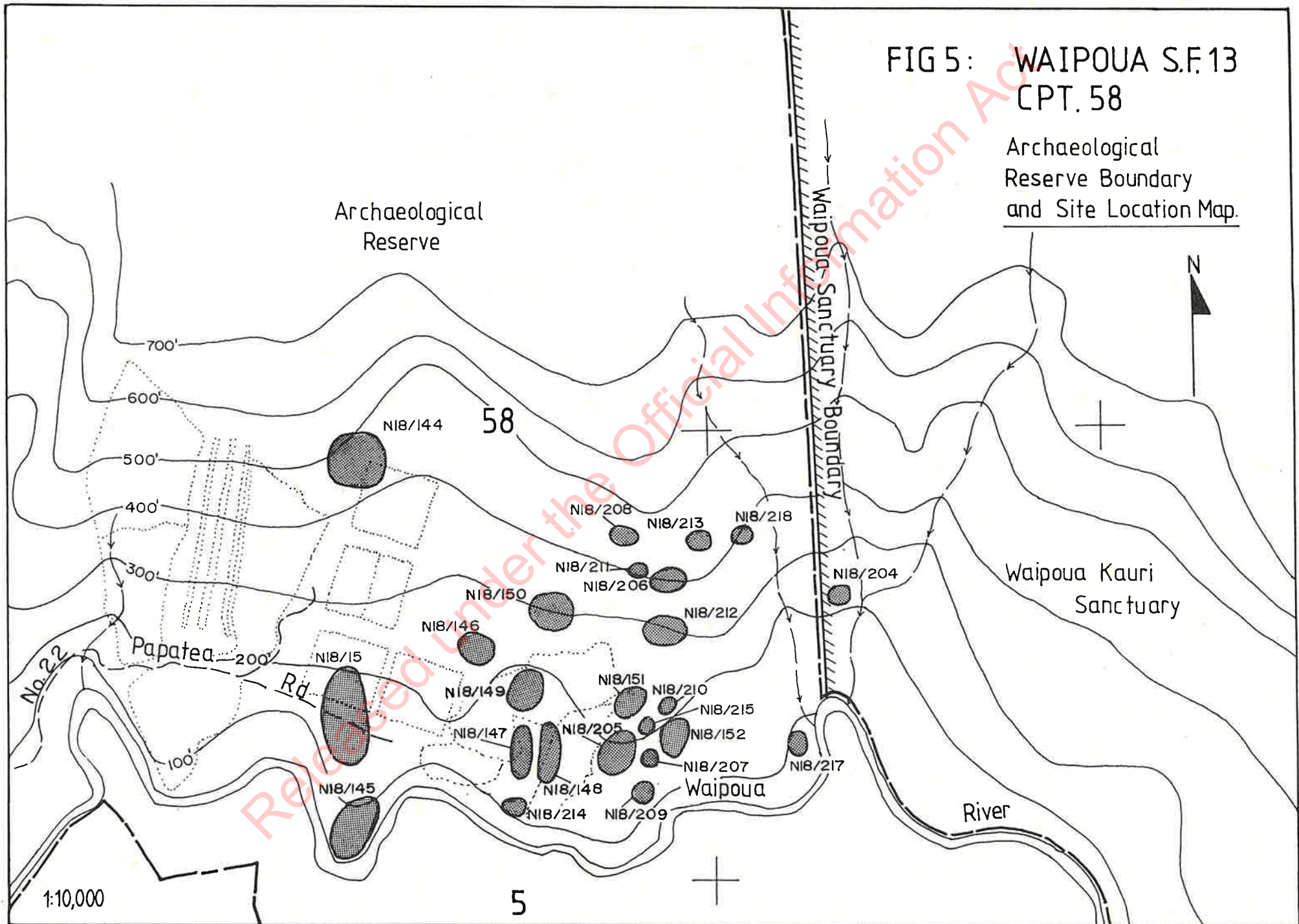
Archaeological
Reserve Boundary
and Site Location Map.



Released under the Official Information Act

FIG 5: WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT. 58

Archaeological
Reserve Boundary
and Site Location Map.



Released under the Official Information Act

TABLE 1: ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITE FEATURES PRESENT IN WAIPOUA RIVER VALLEY ⁽¹⁾ AND PROPOSED RESERVE

Site and feature types (2)	Forest Compartments	5	11	14	15	18	58	65	66	Kauri Sanctuary	Total	Total in Reserve	% in Reserve
PA		-	-	-	1	1	-	-	-	-	2	1	50.0%
TERRACES (only)		6	-	2	1	-	4	2	2	-	17	8	47.0%
PITS		14	-	20	4	-	12	12	6	2	70	37	52.8%
STONE HEAPS		10	-	8	4	-	1	-	4	-	36	31	86.1%
EXTRAORDINARY STONEWORK (3)		3	-	1	1	-	-	-	-	-	6	6	100.0%
POST - EUROPEAN		*(4)	-	2*	*	-	1*	2*	*	*	4	-	-
		33	-	33	11	1	19	16	12	2	135	83	61.5%

(1) Sites on private land are not included as no comprehensive surveys have been undertaken.

(2) Categories are not exclusive, therefore totals are greater than the number of sites.

(3) Includes stone walls, stone alignment, groups of large rectangular platforms, stone terraced slopes etc on sites N18 15, 85, 87, 109, 186 and 187.

(4) * Indicates more present but not recorded as archaeological sites - includes gum holes, horse tracks and roads.

- 14 -

A short summary description of each site is given in Appendix III. Full details of all sites can be found on the N.Z. Archaeological Association (NZAA) site record forms held by the NZAA in Whangarei, the HPT in Wellington, and by the FS in Waipoua and Auckland. Most site record forms are reproduced in various FS survey reports which also include further information and management details (see 6.0 Bibliography).

Remaining sites outside the reserve will be protected and managed individually in future. Where pines are present they will be cleared as logging progresses in the respective areas, and then sites will not be restocked with pines.

2.3 Discussion of Sites

Sites at Waipoua have been classified, for the purposes of management, as either earthwork or stonework sites (Taylor and Sutton, 1985, 1986). Both site types are well represented in the reserve (Table 1).

Thirty-one sites with stonework are present in the reserve. These contain over 1100 stone heaps and include sites with extraordinary stonework. Stonework sites occur in areas where the stone, a weathered basalt, naturally outcrops or survives as resistant remnants on or near the ground surface.

Although stone ruins are the most spectacular site type in the forest, archaeologists often have difficulty in ascribing particular functions to the stone structures (see Papworth 1980: 5-7). Stone may have been manipulated for a very wide variety of purposes including as lines marking garden plots or other land boundaries, rings around posts or trees, garden clearance heaps, facings for retaining soil on slopes, constructions for ceremonial use such as shrines or altars, or for foundations for wooden structures.

Uses of stone may not necessarily be exclusive. For example, rocks removed from gardens to prevent damage to digging sticks and to make cultivation easier may have been used themselves to construct a variety of structures. Also clearance of stone into heaps or facings may have

Released under the Official Information Act

- 15 -

aided in controlling soil erosion and in moisture retention as well as acting as heat traps fostering better crop growth.

Further research, involving both excavation and the experimental reconstruction and use of stone structures, will be necessary to gain a full understanding of the use of stone.

The main forms of earthwork sites in the reserve are pits and terraces. Most of the 193 pits on 37 sites in the reserve are rectangular and well preserved. They are believed to have been used mainly for the storage of kumara. When roofed, pits provide the controlled environment necessary for long term storage (Davidson 1984: 121-127) and they are usually found in well drained locations such as on the edges of steep drops on spurs or ridges.

The numerous pits in Waipoua suggest a large gardening population and/or a long period of land use. Only excavation and dating can distinguish these alternative possibilities.

Terraces are small flattened areas usually created by digging into a slope. There are over 42 in the reserve although only 8 of these occur as terrace sites only. On some of these (and on Kaitieke Pa, N18/82) rectangular stone hearths have been located indicating that houses were most probably once present there.

Gardened soils and drainage ditches are examples of other types of earthworks found in Waipoua.

Five fortified pa are located at strategic points along the Waipoua River valley and one other, Kiwinui, N18/88, is located on a tributary away from the river in Compartment 7. Only one of these pa, N18/82, Kaitieke pa, is located in the reserve. Three of the others are on private land in the lower valley. The remaining valley pa, N18/12, Tirikohu, is isolated on a high point in thick scrub near the Waipoua River mouth and is partially on both FS and private land. This pa is likely to be included in a coastal reserve under DOC control along with two coastal pa, N18/14 and 73.

Released under the Official Information Act

- 16 -

3.0 SIGNIFICANCE OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL RESERVE

3.1 Archaeological Significance

The archaeological sites in the Waipoua River valley are of both regional and national importance. The density, diversity, and the relatively intact condition of the ruins (particularly the stonework) offer considerable opportunities for the investigation of problems current in New Zealand archaeology (Coster 1983; Smith n.d.)

The unique setting of the sites, in a small river valley, has considerable potential for settlement pattern and land use studies. Their situation in a forested environment, adjacent to and in one of the few remaining areas of kauri forest, adds greatly to their value from both scientific and aesthetic viewpoints.

In both the bush and pine, stonework has survived particularly well and once cleared of undergrowth is recognisable and impressive even to non-specialists. Site types recognised in the valley include a variety of gardens, food storage sites, habitation and cooking areas, defensive locations, and ceremonial sites.

Comparison of studies in the valley with those described from elsewhere, in different settings, (e.g. Irwin 1985; Lawlor 1981; Leach and Leach 1979) should be particularly productive.

Finally the isolation of the valley, together with the willingness of the FS to set the sites aside from commercial use means that a wide variety of relatively intact sites can continue to be preserved with appropriate management.

3.2 Traditional Maori Significance

The archaeological sites at Waipoua are very important to the tangata whenua because of their spiritual and historic associations; (Nathan 1985a, b; Smith 1986a; Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee minutes 1985, 1986). Some sites have additional significance because of

Released under the Official Information Act

- 17 -

their links with particular ancestors, major past events, and because of their use in ritual activities. For example, sites in the reserve at Oputonga and Papatea (Figs. 2, 3, 4, and 5) were of importance in the ritual cycle in the valley and have strong associations with the descendants of the ancestor, Toa, from whom many of the present valley residents are descended (Nathan 1985a, b).

The traditional significance of the sites was recognised by the performing of whakanoa and blessing ceremonies in 1985 prior to work commencing on the sites (Taylor and Sutton 1985).

The local Maori community have been involved in the Archaeological Project both through the interim Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee, and as field workers and advisors. Through this involvement Te Roroa are becoming familiar with the work and methods of archaeologists and are developing the practical skills necessary for the future long term preservation and maintenance of the sites.

3.3 Landscape and Ecological Significance

The forested landscape dramatically influences the impression the archaeological sites make on the viewer. Because of this and the intact condition of the archaeological ruins found in the forest the sites are particularly suited to development for public presentation and interpretation, although there are various constraints on this (see section 4.3). The forest itself is also of considerable scientific interest.

The association of sites with the forest provides a perspective on the past that is not available elsewhere in Northland, nor probably New Zealand. Opportunities exist for investigating past Maori land-use, in a forested landscape closely resembling that which existed during or before the period of use. For example, the karaka tree provided food with its berries, and later for draught and farm animals with felled branches and leaves. Large karaka trees, groves, and coppiced trees are abundant in both the archaeological reserve and adjacent Kauri Sanctuary. A study of the distribution, age, form and productivity of these karaka may provide insights into their past use. Similar studies of other forest trees may

Released under the Official Information Act

- 18 -

produce interesting results.

The ecological value of much of the historic reserve was recognised in the recent proposal to include most of the area as part of a larger ecological reserve (Forester 1985). Although archaeological values will have priority in the historic reserve, ecological values also will be protected. Conflicts are unlikely to occur as archaeological management proposed is minimal (see section 4).

The historic reserve will add significantly to areas preserved for ecological reasons as it borders both the Waipoua River and Kauri Sanctuary. Over 8 km of river edge bush, on both sides of the Waipoua River, will be added to areas protected.

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

- 19 -

4.0 SITE MANAGEMENT

4.1 Site Survey

Reconnaissance and intensive archaeological surveys have been completed by FS archaeologists in Compartments 5, 14, 15, 65, and 66 (Moore 1984; Papworth 1980; Pierce 1981; Taylor 1986a; Taylor and Sutton 1985, 1986). These surveys involved walking the compartments at close intervals until the whole landscape was thoroughly covered. Although the thickness of the undergrowth and pine thinning debris made survey work difficult at times, it is unlikely that major sites remain unlocated in these compartments. Additional small sites can be expected to be discovered during any development work in the vicinity of known sites.

Surveys in areas planted with pine have had priority over areas in bush. Work in Compartments 58 and the Waipoua Kauri Sanctuary therefore has been limited as both are remote, and in dense bush, making site location and relocation difficult and time consuming. However, more time was spent in the bush during stage II of the archaeological project than the total time spent there during previous years. This was necessary to help define the reserve boundaries and to assess the archaeological importance of these areas.

Sites extend into the Kauri Sanctuary but few additional sites are expected to be found there. The number and density of sites in Compartment 58 made full survey and detailed recording impossible in the time available and many sites remain unrecorded. Archaeological evidence may extend as far north as the kiwi hunting landings and gum-diggers settlements at Huaki and Kohuroa (Fig. 1) (Taylor and Sutton 1986).

4.2 Site Protection

At present 41 archaeological sites or 57.7% of those in the proposed reserve are in bush and are already protected. In this context "protected" means free from human modification and, in particular, forest development work (Coster 1979). However, controlled human intervention is essential if these sites are to be protected in their present state

Released under the Official Information Act

- 20 -

from the eroding effects of time, weather, plants, and animals. Stabilisation, investigation, reconstruction, and/or restoration of sites may be necessary.

Once sites planted in pines are cleared they will not be replanted with commercial tree species. The sites should be allowed to revegetate naturally, while ensuring that new plant growth does not damage archaeological features. However, replanting with appropriate local indigenous species should be undertaken, if necessary, for site stabilisation and the control of erosion.

When sites have been cleared of pines or are in indigenous bush they are marked by tanalised fence posts with aluminium tags bearing the NZAA site number. Twenty-nine (40.8%) of the sites in the reserve are marked with tagged posts.

Management to protect the indigenous bush and wildlife from damage by pigs, possums, and goats will continue to be necessary.

Most intact archaeological sites remaining outside of the reserve will also be protected in future forest management.

4.3 Site Modification

The two main forms of modifications proposed for the sites in the reserve - the logging of planted pines and opening of sites to the public, are discussed below.

4.3.1 Logging of Archaeological Sites

Thirty (42.2%) sites in the reserve are at present planted wholly or partly in pines. A number of approaches necessary to protect sites during the logging of timber on or near archaeological sites are detailed elsewhere (Taylor and Sutton 1985). Protection of the sites will be the primary objective when logging proceeds rather than normal commercial considerations.

Released under the Official Information Act

- 21 -

To ensure that accidental damage does not occur during logging or other development work, all site boundaries are marked temporarily with red paint and plastic tape.

In Compartments 5 and 15 pines are scheduled to be removed before 1989. Roding and skid construction in these compartments is complete and no major earthmoving work will be necessary.

No logging of indigenous timbers will occur.

HPT authorities to modify 19 sites within the reserve by the removal of pines have been issued (Taylor 1986a, Taylor and Sutton 1986).

4.3.2 Public Access

At present, all public access is restricted by resolution of the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee, to visits by tangata whenua, FS staff, archaeologists, and other necessary scientists. This is considered essential to protect the dignity of the sites and because of the demands on time that taking visitors to the sites would make on FS staff.

However, information concerning the sites and work being undertaken has been made widely available through the news media and distribution of FS archaeological reports.

Decisions to open sites to visitors or to develop walking tracks through areas containing sites (Forester 1985) should be made only after consulting with the Archaeological Advisory Committee.

Any decisions to open sites to the public in future will require careful planning and preparation. Visitor pressure is likely to increase. Both the physical and intellectual needs of potential visitors must be met while ensuring that sites remain protected from damage. Development of formed tracks, raised walkways (through sensitive areas), road access, and associated amenity facilities including parking, toilets, picnic areas, and water reticulation may all be necessary. In addition, the

- 22 -

sites must be made intelligible to visitors by the use of printed information, sign posting, guides versed in local traditions, and through the restoration of sites and features.

4.4 Site Investigations

Detailed recording, including planning and photography, has been undertaken on 16 sites, extensive excavations on four sites, and test excavations on seven sites (Charters 1982a; Smith 1986b; Taylor 1986, n.d; Taylor and Sutton 1985, 1986). All sites excavated were in pines scheduled for felling. The sites excavated have revealed a wide variety of gardens, storage pit complexes and associated areas, a pre-European Maori whare, and a Maori gum-diggers camp from the 1870's.

Any future investigations should remain focused on sites planted in pines prior to logging.

A revised program for research in the valley is under preparation currently (Smith n.d.). This incorporates previous proposals (Coster 1983; Lawlor 1984b; Moore 1984; Smith 1985) and information derived from work undertaken during the first two stages of the project (see references Section 1.2).

Stage III of the Waipoua Archaeological Project (Taylor 1986b) and any further stages should proceed under the supervision of the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee and with the support of the FS and/or from April 1987 any other body responsible for areas containing archaeological sites at Waipoua.

Released under the Official Information Act

- 23 -

5.0 SUMMARY

- 5.1 Reservation is proposed of about 645 hectares of riverside land in Waipoua State Forest 13 for its archaeological and traditional Maori significance.
- 5.2 The historic and traditional reserve will permanently protect 71 recorded archaeological sites on a contiguous landscape, adjacent to both the Waipoua River and Kauri Sanctuary.
- 5.3 The reserve will make a significant addition to the areas that are protected for ecological reasons. Conflicts between archaeological and ecological values are unlikely to occur.
- 5.4 Logging of pines should proceed in areas that are to be included in the reserve. Protection of sites will have priority over commercial considerations.
- 5.5 The Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee should continue to advise on the reserve and on other sites in the forest but outside the reserve.
- 5.6 The creation of the reserve and the management of the sites at Waipoua has been undertaken at considerable expense to the FS, involving the loss of 48 hectares of productive land, extra costs of special logging, survey costs, and the costs of archaeological work.
- 5.7 The establishment of the Reserve and Advisory Committee should proceed with the least delay possible.

Released under the Official Information Act

6.0 BIBLIOGRAPHY

Anderson, A. 1985

Letter to D. Black, Assistant Conservator, F.S. Auckland. 30-6-85. File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S. Auckland.

Atwell, E.G. and G.F. Puch 1973

Archaeology in the Waipoua Region; Northland. Part II. Description of Pa from Waimamaku Valley and Kawerua
Tane 19: 111-118

Atwell, E.G., G.F. Puch and R. Lawn 1973

Archaeology in the Waipoua Region; Northland, Part I: List of Sites from Hokianga South Head to Maunganui Bluff
Tane 19: 103-110

Bellingham, M. 1985

Proposed Western Extension to the Waipoua Forest Sanctuary, Northland.
Unpublished Report.

Black, D. 1985

Letter to A. Anderson, Chairman of HPT Archaeology Committee. 12-7-85. FS File 6/13, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Charters, H.E. 1982a

Archaeological Investigations in Waipoua SF13, Compartment 5. Interim Report to NZFS and HPT.

Charters, H.E. 1982b

Site Management in Waipoua SF13.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Cockayne, L. 1908

Report on a Botanical Survey of the Waipoua Kauri Forest. Report to the House of Representatives C14
Government Printer, Wellington.

Collins, R. 1953

Waipoua Booklet (list of old Maori pa in Waipoua)
Memo 14 April 1953 File 6/13 (Vol 1X). NZFS, Auckland.

Released under the Official Information Act

Coster, J. 1979

Exotic Forestry and Site Management in the Auckland Region.
From McKinlay, J.R. and K.L. Jones (editors).

Coster, J.

Archaeological Site Management in the Waipoua River Valley: A Review and Proposals.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S. Auckland.

Coster, J and G Johnston 1980

Waipoua State Forest 13: Kawerua Coast 1977-1980.
Unpublished Report A478/8, N.Z.F.S. Auckland.

Davidson, J. 1984

The Prehistory of New Zealand Longman Paul, Auckland.

Forester, L. 1985

Report on Proposed Waipoua Ecological Reserve
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Kaikohe.

Hayward, B.W. 1978

A note on the Former Extent of Waipoua Kauri Forest around Kawerua.
Tane 24: 185-186.

Irwin, G. 1985

Land, Pa and Polity N.Z. Archaeological Association Monograph 15.

Kermode, L.O. 1981

Rock type map of Waipoua-Aranga (Sheets 006/07) NZMS 290.
Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington.

Lawlor, I. 1981

Puhinui (N42/17) excavation report.
Department of Anthropology, University of Auckland.

Lawlor, I. (Compiler) 1984a

Waipoua State Forest: Archaeological Resource Book.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Lawlor, I. 1984b

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage one information sheet.
Unpublished information sheet, File 6/13/21/1 N.Z.F.S. Auckland.

Lawlor, I. 1985

File Note: Recent Management of Archaeological sites in Waipoua S.F.13
Waipoua Archaeological Project: Stage 1.
File 6/13/21/1 N.Z.F.S. Auckland.

Released under the Official Information Act

Lawlor, I. 1986

Report to the HPT Archaeology Committee, Concerning the Survey Management and Investigation of Historic Places in the Waipoua River Valley.
Unpublished Report, NZFS Auckland.

Lawn, R. 1970

Early Maori Occupation, Waipoua Forest
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Leach, B.F. and H.M. Leach 1979

Prehistoric Man in Palliser Bay
National Museum of New Zealand Bulletin 21.

Lloyd, R.C. 1973

Report on Waipoua Scrubland
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

MacFarlan, D.A.B. 1974

Preliminary Report on the Inland Geology of the Kawerua Area.
Tane 20: 111-114.

McGregor, W.R. 1948

The Waipoua Kauri Forest of Northern New Zealand
Auckland.

McKinlay, J.R. and K.L. Jones 1978 (editors)

Archaeological Resource Management in Australia and Oceania.
N.Z. Historic Places Trust, Wellington.

Moore, A. 1984

Waipoua State Forest: Reconnaissance Survey and Site Management 1984
Planting Season.
Unpublished Report A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Nathan, E. 1985a

Waipoua and the Hapu Te Roroa. In Taylor and Sutton 1985.

Nathan, E. 1985b

Waipoua and Te Rora Hapu (Outline for a proposed information leaflet)
In Taylor and Sutton 1985.

Papworth, M. 1980

Waipoua River Valley, March-April 1980
Unpublished Report A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Released under the Official Information Act

Pierce, J. 1981

Waipoua SF13 (Waipoua River Valley) Cpts 2,4,7,10,12 and 65. Survey and Site Management Proposals for Waipoua Forest, August 1981.
Unpublished Report A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Polack, J.S. 1838

New Zealand Being a Narrative of Travels and Adventures.
Caper Press, Christchurch.

Pollack, R. 1982

Waipoua SF13. A Survey of Burn Areas in Compartments 2,3,4,13,15 and 16, April, 1982.
Unpublished Report A478/8. N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Smith, I.W.G. 1985

Waipoua Archaeology: Research Objectives, Priorities and Proposals.
Unpublished Report to NZHPT Archaeology Committee.

Smith, I.W.G. 1986a

Archaeological Sites of the Waipoua Region: an assessment of their significance and recommendations for future action.
Unpublished Report to NZHPT.

Smith, I.W.G. 1986b

Gardening, Gum Digging and Silviculture in the Waipoua River Valley: preliminary report on excavations at N18/186 and N18/179.
Unpublished Report to NZHPT.

Smith, I.W.G. n.d.

Waipoua Archaeology: The Research Design.
In preparation.

Sutherland, G.F., J.E. Cox, N.H. Taylor and A.C.S. Wright 1980

Soil map of Waipoua-Aranga. (sheets 006/07) NZMS 290.
Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington.

Taylor, M. 1985

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage 2 Information Sheet.
Unpublished Report, File 6/13/21/1, NZFS, Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1986a

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project Stage II: Summary of Work Undertaken for Contract 16.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland

Released under the Official Information Act

Taylor, M. 1986b

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project Information Sheet 1986.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. n.d.

Waipoua Archaeological Project: Interim Report on Excavations undertaken during 1985-86.
Report in preparation.

Taylor, M. and A. Sutton 1985

Waipoua State Forest 13 Archaeological Project: Stage I Report Submitted at the Completion of Archaeological Contract No.13.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. and A. Sutton 1986

Waipoua Archaeological Project: Management undertaken 1985-86.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

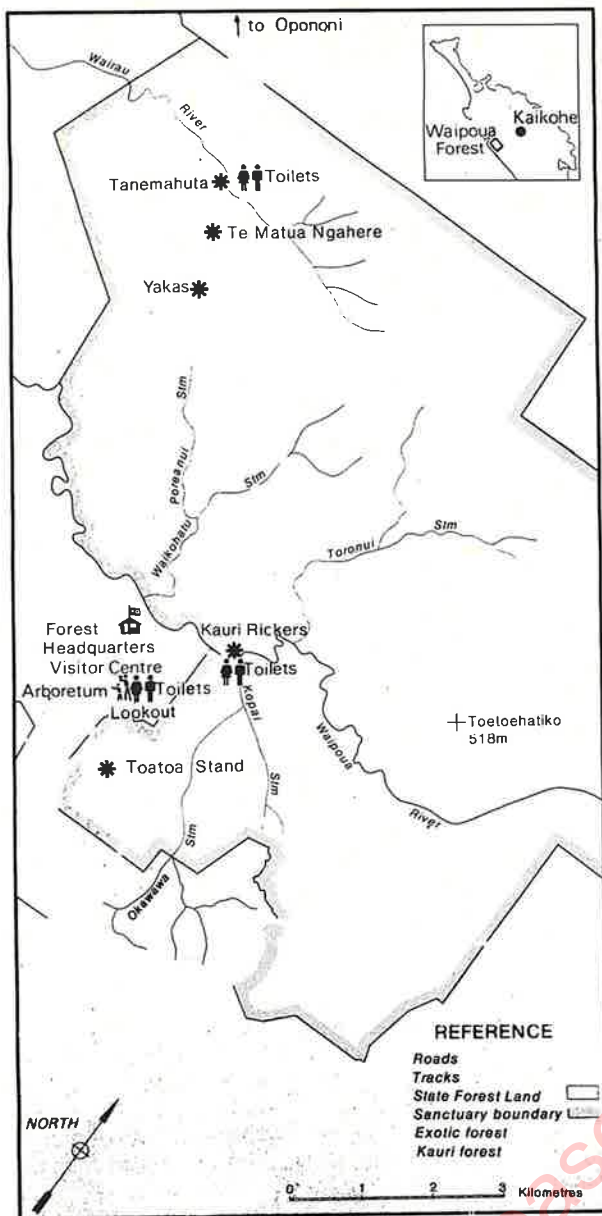
Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee. 1985-86

Minutes of meetings held at Waipoua Forest, 15 October 1985, 11 December 1985, 20 February 1986 and 11 June 1986. Transcribed by Ian Lawlor.

Tippett, J. and K. Olsen 1980

Waipoua State Forest 13 - Compartments 19, 20 and 22 Archaeological Site Survey, March 1980.
Unpublished Interim Report to NZFS, Auckland and HPT, Wellington.

Released under the Official Information Act



Birds seen in the sanctuary include: native pigeons, tuis, fantails, northern brown kiwis, rosellas, grey warblers, tomtits, kingfishers, waxeyes, fernbirds, and welcome swallows.

The name *Waipoua* (once spelled *Waipoa*) is derived from the Maori *wai*—water/river, and *poa*—sea shellfish, i.e., "river where the poa shellfish are found". Another translation of indeterminate origin is "forest of the early morning rain".

Kauri is a surface rooting tree. The roots are very sensitive and are easily damaged by people walking on them, so take great care around them.

Forest phone No.: Donnellys Crossing 605.



Maxwell's Cottage

Photography by Lee Switzer

Cover: McGregor Kauri

Photography by Peter de Jager



Published by
New Zealand Forest Service
Wellington
1983

P. D. HASSELBERG, GOVERNMENT PRINTER, WELLINGTON, NEW ZEALAND—1984

24498E—84PTK

Inside: left, mature kauri
right, young kauri

Waipoua Forest Sanctuary

Attachment 2



APPENDIX 1

Released under the Official Information Act

Waipoua Forest Sanctuary is the largest remnant of the once extensive kauri forests of northern New Zealand. It was declared a sanctuary to preserve the flora and fauna in a natural state. The legal protection it enjoys can only be revoked by Act of Parliament.

Dr Leonard Cockayne carried out a botanical survey in the early 1900s and described about 300 types of trees and plants. Giant kauri dominate this dense wealth of plant life—trees, climbers, palms, ferns, epiphytes, mosses—and give the forest canopy its distinctive appearance, but the most common tree is taraire.

There are 9105 ha in the sanctuary, but only 2638 ha in the western part contains mature kauri. Most of these grow as single trees among taraire, northern rata, towai and rewarewa, although occasionally they form large groves.

Elsewhere rimu, totara, tawa, towai and kahikatea are associated with taraire in varying proportions, depending on soil, exposure, and terrain.

In clearings left by past fires kauri regeneration is apparent in all stages of growth.

Location: The sanctuary is in the eastern part of Waipoua Forest, 50 km north of Dargaville.

Physiography

The land is rugged and hilly. Elevation varies between 182 m and 606 m. The Waipoua and Wairau Rivers drain from it.

Walks

(Locations marked on map)

Tanemahuta: A 5 minute walk (suitable for wheelchairs) leads to Tanemahuta (Lord of the Forest) which is the biggest tree in New Zealand. Tanemahuta is estimated to be 1200 years old. Its height is 51.5 m and its girth, 4.6 m from the ground, is 13.7 m. The height from ground level to the first branch is 12.6 m, and the area of crown spread is 1078 sq. m.

Te Matua Ngahere: It takes about 10–15 minutes to walk down to Te Matua Ngahere (Father of the Forest). This is the second biggest tree in New Zealand, but it has the largest girth (16.41 m).

Yakas: The yakas tree is reached after an easy 30 minute stroll. Cathedral Grove, a stately group of mature kauri, is found near the yakas tree.

Kauri Rickers: A short track leaves from the northern end of the Waipoua River bridge and leads up to a stand of pole kauri known as rickers.

Arboretum: Opposite the visitor centre is a path that goes through a variety of trees and comes out near Maxwell's Cottage. James Maxwell was the first caretaker of Waipoua Forest from about 1890–1920. Some relics of the early kauri timber trade can be seen in the cottage.

Lookout: The Lookout Tower is open to the public. It gives a wide view of the sanctuary, the pine plantation, and the Tasman Sea.

Toatoa Stand: A short walk (5–10 minutes) through a toatoa forest and other named trees.

Brief History

The original Waipoua Block of 14 285 ha was bought by the Crown in 1876 for \$4,400 from Chiefs Parore te Awha and Tiopira Kinaki.

Although the land had been intended for settlement, 9166 ha was reserved for State forestry in 1906. From then until 1920 use of the area for farming or forestry was the subject of inconclusive debate.

With the passing of the Forests Act 1921–22 a policy of forest management for sustained yield was adopted, but this soon gave way to public pressure in favour of preserving the last large kauri forest.

During World War II the extraction of kauri for essential war purposes aroused considerable antagonism and, after a protracted controversy and two petitions to Parliament, 9105 ha was proclaimed a sanctuary in 1952.

Today an advisory committee assists the Minister of Forests in the administration of the sanctuary to ensure its preservation. The Forest Service maintains the area and is responsible for its protection.

Kauri

Kauri (*Agathis australis*) is a conifer or cone-bearing tree and is grouped botanically with pines and firs. It occurs naturally in New Zealand only north of 38° latitude.

Although the seed germinates easily, seedlings require the protection of a "nurse" crop such as manuka. After emerging from this shelter the young trees develop a narrow conical crown of slender branches, and lower branches are shed as the trees grow in height.

When mature, the tree changes shape and develops a heavily branched spreading crown supported by a branchless columnar trunk sheathed in ash-grey bark. The bark flakes off, usually in a ripple pattern. A characteristic of old kauri trees is

the mound at the base of the trunk, sometimes as much as 4.6 m high, known as pukahu. It consists of reddish-brown humus originating from bark shed over several hundred years.

Fully grown kauri reach 24 m to 37 m high and have a trunk 3.6 m or more in diameter. Trees of this stature emerge distinctively above the rest of the forest.

The kauri has thick, leathery leaves, which is unusual for a conifer. The leaves are approximately 40 mm long and 15 mm wide and normally olive-green, although in young trees they often have a red tinge.

The seeds are carried in a round, woody cone 50–75 mm in diameter, which disintegrates when ripe. The pollen cone is cylindrical.

Kauri heartwood is yellow-brown, the sapwood light brownish-white. The wood shows tiny dark flecks and has a slight sheen. It is famous for the long, wide, clear boards that can be cut from the heartwood of the large trees. The timber is straight grained, easily worked and finished, and remarkably durable under the most exacting conditions. It was very popular for boat building.

Notes of Interest

An interesting rarity found beneath fern cover in kauri forest is New Zealand's largest and most robust moss, *Dawsonia superba*. Each plant has a central woody stem surrounded by narrow leaves, and "fruiting" plants have a terminating capsule with a peristome like a wad of cotton. The moss can grow up to 760 mm high.

Kauri grass is the name given to the flax-like clumps of the lily *Astelia trinervia*. Huge tussocks of *Ghania xanthocarpa*, a giant cutting sedge, are mixed with the Kauri grass and, in places open to the light, often form dense "swards".

The protected kauri snail (*Paryphanta busbyi*) is the North Auckland representative of a group of carnivorous snails. Its shell is a flattened spiral 65–75 mm across and is a dark green. The snail is rarely found in the immediate vicinity of kauri trees, because it is too dry for the worms and slugs it feeds on.

Until 1905, kauri trees were "bled" by gum collectors who cut V-shaped notches 450 mm apart around the trunk at vertical intervals of about 1.8 m. Scars can still be seen on many trees in the sanctuary. Masses of gum, varying in colour from white to reddish-brown, sometimes collects in the forks of branches. The gum was mainly used to make varnish.

Released under the Official Information Act

- 31 -

APPENDIX II: Description of the proposed boundaries of the Waipoua
Historic and Traditional (Archaeological) Reserve.

From the western edge of Compartment 5, at Grid reference 047-057(1),^{*} on the south bank of the Waipoua River the boundary runs west along the ridgeline. The area partially cleared of pines on the north side of this ridge will not be replanted with pine after felling^{*} is finished in 1986-87. From the ridge-top the boundary turns southwest(2) and follows the northern edge of a scrub area until site N18/93 is skirted by at least 30 metres. Then it turns west(3) running below Oputonga Road but above sites N18/188, 102, 106, 109, 103, 177, 187, 179, and 186. Pit sites N18/94, 105, and 107 will be outside the reserve and will be managed as isolated sites. The boundary of the reserve meets the northern edge of the logging skid(4) constructed near sites N18/179 and 186. A permanent access and logging track is necessary above (and southeast of) N18/186 and this will be the boundary. This track should not come within 25m of the "large stone structure" marked on the site record form for N18/186 (see Taylor and Sutton 1985: Appendix II).

From the western edge of the skid the boundary cuts across the top of the gully and stream, above site N18/179, meeting(5) and following the logging road on the western side of the gully. From the road it extends in a straight line across the most westerly gully in Compartment 5. Then it turns to the north(6) running down towards the river and west of the skid but east of sites N18/111 and 184 avoiding them by at least 30 m. About half way down the ridge, from the skid to the river and below N18/184, the slope steepens after a flat. Here the boundary turns west(7), across the northern edge of the flat, and then extends until it meets the ridge and track that form the boundary between Compartments 5 and 66. Here it turns(8) and follows down the ridge extending the boundary between Compartments 5 and 66 to the river edge(9). This takes in a small portion of Compartment 66 and protects site N18/113, old horse tracks above, and possible features concealed under dense bracken fern. The boundary then crosses to the north side of the river and follows down the river until a point approximately 200 metres upriver from the ford is reached(10).

* Numbers refer to points marked on Figures 2, 3 and 4.

Released under the Official Information Act

- 32 -

From this point on the river edge the boundary follows north up Pawakatutu Road embracing sites N18/128, 129, 87, and 90. Approximately 50 metres past Papatea Road, where Pawakatutu Road turns to the southwest, the reserve boundary turns north-west(11) along the 1966/1972 planting line, until the crest of the ridge above sites N18/87 and 90 is reached. Here the boundary moves north(12) following along above an area of large land slides. A buffer zone, at least 15 m back from the edge of these slips should be allowed to attempt to stabilise the land from further subsidence. Past the slips, when the boundary reaches the 1942 P. palustris, it turns slightly to the east and runs across a wide valley to the next ridge approximately 30 m from a permanent post marking Kaitieke Pa(13).

The boundary skirts the northern edge of Kaitieke Pa following the ring-barked pines in Compartment 15 until a stand of bush is reached(14). The boundary follows the northern perimeter of this bush coming out on the logging skid adjacent to N18/140. From here the boundary follows east and south-east around the skid and road leading towards the Waipoua River, until a stream gully, below N18/139, is reached(15). The boundary then follows down the bush edge on the north side of this gully to the Huaki Stream(16).

Then the boundary turns north once more and follows north and then east along the stream and the pine planting boundaries(17) on the edge of Compartment 15 until it reaches Pawakatutu Road(18). This northern section of the boundary has not been walked and the exact location may be varied to minimise survey and for other practical purposes. The final area should include the historic grave and Huaki clearance.

From the road the boundary turns to the east running to the Kauri Sanctuary Boundary which forms the eastern boundary of the archaeological reserve.

APPENDIX III: SUMMARY OF KNOWN ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN WAIPOUA HISTORICAL AND TRADITIONAL RESERVE

Old Imperial NZAA Site Number	New Metric NZAA Site number	Compartment	Vegetation	Description
N18/15	006/0 ⁰ 97	58	Bush - cut over (kauri management) broadleaf	Extensive site with 2 rectangular stone platform (tuahu?), 30 stone heaps probably from gardening, 5 pits, terrace, and 2 small ponds possibly associated with irrigation. Posted 1986 (see Plate 12)).
N18/82	006/0151	14/15	Scrub and ring barked <u>P. elliotii</u>	Kaitieke Pa. Fortified ridge pa with prominent platform defended by steep scarps and ditch and bank. Three groups of pits. Rectangular stone hearths on platform. Posted 1979.
N18/83	006/0152	14	Bush	Four pits on ridge. Posted 1982.
N18/84	006/0153	14/15	Scrub between <u>P. elliotii</u> and bush	Two pits on ridge. Posted 1982.
N18/85	006/0154	15	Bush and <u>P. elliotii</u> Large puriri on river bank.	Impressive with large rounded earth mound with rectangular stone platforms on it. Heaps on surrounding slopes. Possible ceremonial site. Posted 1982 and 1985.
N18/86	006/0155	14	Bush	Single pit. Posted 1982.
N18/87	006/0156	14	<u>P. radiata</u>	Extensive and complex site with stone wall, stone alignment, stone enclosures and at least 300 heaps. Posted 1982 (see Plates 4 to 6).
N18/90	006/0159	14	<u>P. radiata</u>	Four pits on low knoll within N18/87 site perimeter. Posted 1982.
N18/91	006/0160	14	<u>P. radiata</u>	Four pits and midden
N18/93	006/0162	5	Ring barked <u>P. echinata</u>	Twelve pits and one terrace on spur end.
N18/100	006/0168	5	<u>P. radiata</u>	Two possible pits - not relocated.
N18/101	006/0169	5	Riverside bush. Large kowhai	Complex site with elongated heaps, stone faced terraces and about 50 heaps and drains.
N18/102	006/0170	5	<u>P. echinata</u>	Seven pits and one terrace. Excavated 1986.
N18/103	006/0171	5	<u>P. echinata</u>	Three pits and one terrace and stone heaps on adjacent steep slope. Drains. Excavated 1986 (see Plate 10).
N18/104	006/0172	5	Bush. Large rata	Five stone heaps on river flat. Posted 1986.
N18/106	006/0174	5	<u>P. radiata</u>	Te Kopae - four terraces, probably house sites.
N18/108	006/0176	5	<u>P. radiata</u>	Single pit on knoll on steep slope.
N18/109	006/0177	5	Mainly bush with various pine species on perimeter. Several large mature trees incl. rata + kahikatea	Extensive and complex site. Includes seven large stone platforms, ("megaheaps") stone lined drain, 3-400 heaps, two pits and one terrace. Posted 1986 (see Plate 9).
N18/110	006/0178	5	Bush - medium totara and kauri	Single pit river side. Posted 1986.
N18/111	006/0179	5	<u>P. patula</u> and some <u>P. radiata</u>	Twenty six pits and two terraces.
N18/113	006/0181	5/66	Scrub	Two stone heaps.

Released under the Official Information Act

Old Imperial NZAA Site Number	New Metric NZAA Site number	Compartment	Vegetation	Description
N18/128	006/0195	14	<u>P. radiata</u>	One small pit and probable terrace.
N18/129	006/0196	14	<u>P. radiata</u>	Two pits and a stone heap on knoll.
N18/130	006/0197	14	<u>P. radiata</u> and bush	Twenty stone heaps on river terraces.
N18/131	006/0198	14	Bush	One stone heap. Posted 1982.
N18/132	006/0199	14	Regenerating bush	Seven stone heaps and stone faced terrace. Posted 1982.
N18/133	006/0200	14	<u>P. radiata</u> and light bush	At least fifty stone heaps and two stone faced terraces. Posted 1982.
N18/134	006/0201	14	Regenerating bush	Two pits and terrace with drains. Posted 1982.
N18/135	006/0202	14	Regenerating bush	Seven pits and four terraces on knolls. Posted 1982.
N18/136	006/0203	14	Light bush	Six pits and three terraces on two spurs. Posted 1982.
N18/137	006/0204	14/15	Scrub	Two pits on ridge. Posted 1985.
N18/138	006/0205	15	<u>P. elliptii</u>	Twenty stone heaps on gentle slope.
N18/139	006/0206	15	Regenerating bush	Approximately 20 stone heaps on high ground. Posted 1982.
N18/140	006/0207	15	Bush - broad- leaf and some <u>P. elliptii</u> on site perimeter	About 20 stone heaps with a variety of forms. Excavated 1985. Posted 1982 and 1985 (see Plate 11).
N18/143	006/0210	14	Regenerating bush. Large manuka	Nine pits in two groups on edge of steep drop. Posted 1982.
N18/144	006/0211	58	Regenerating bush (kauri management)	Three pits and about 30 stone heaps on slope.
N18/145	006/0212	58	Regenerating bush	About twenty stone heaps in rows, beside river.
N18/146	006/0213	58	Light bush	Sixteen stone heaps in gully.
N18/147	006/0214	58	Eucalyptus sp.	Eleven pits on spur. Posted 1986.
N18/148	006/0215	58	Eucalyptus sp.	Nine pits on a ridge. Posted 1986.
N18/149	006/0216	58	Nikau and supplejack	About 30 stone heaps on swampy ground.
N18/150	006/0217	58	Light bush	Four pits and two possible terraces.
N18/151	006/0218	58	Open bush with large manuka	Two pits and one terrace. Posted 1986.
N18/152	006/0219	58	Open bush	Twelve pits in two groups, beside steep drop. Posted 1986.
N18/177	006/0249	5	<u>P. echinata</u>	Single terrace with stone hearth. Excavated 1986. Interpreted as house site.
N18/178	006/0250	5	Bush	Two terraces and about ten stone heaps. Also stone faced stream.

Released under the Official Information Act

Old Imperial NZAA Site Number	New Metric NZAA Site number	Compartment	Vegetation	Description
N18/179	006/0251	5	<u>P. patula</u>	Modified knoll and "pits". Excavated 1985. Gum diggers camp and ? tree planting trenches.
N18/180	006/0252	15	Light bush	Terrace with stone hearth. Posted 1985.
N18/181		5	<u>P. radiata</u>	Eleven stone heaps on slope (see Plate 7).
N18/182		5	<u>P. patula</u>	Two small areas of stone heaps under thick pine litter.
N18/183		5	<u>P. patula</u>	Single pit on level ground beside steep drop.
N18/184		5	<u>P. patula</u>	Two terraces on ridge.
N18/185		5	<u>P. radiata</u>	Five stone heaps on riverside flat. Excavated 1985.
N18/186		5	<u>P. taeda</u> <u>P. patula</u>	Extensive area of stone heaps including one prominent stone "structure". Pond. Excavated 1985 (see Plates 1 to 3 and 8).
N18/187		5	<u>P. radiata</u>	Te Kopae. Stone faced terraces and heaps on steep slope.
N18/188		5	<u>P. echinata</u>	Six pits and three terraces on ridge end.
N18/189		5	Riverside bush	Three pits on river bank.
N18/202		5	Light river-side bush including totara and rata	At least 25 stone heaps on river flat.
N18/205		58	Bush. Large manuka	Seven pits, one terrace and one stone heap. Posted 1986.
N18/206		58	Bush. Broad-leaf. Kauri management	Ten pits, on two levels, some water filled. Drain. Posted 1986.
N18/207		58	Bush	Single terrace with stone hearth on gentle ridge.
N18/208		58	Open bush. Large nikau	At least seventeen stone heaps on slope.
N18/209		58	Bush. Large manuka	Single terrace on slope.
N18/210		58	Bush. Large manuka	One terrace on gentle slope.
N18/211		58	Bush	Three pits on flat. Water filled, with frogs.
N18/212		58	Bush - nikau, karaka, supplejack	Seven stone heaps on rise between two gullies.
N18/213		58	Bush, large ricker kauri	Two pits and one terrace on level ground.
N18/214		58	Bush - medium totara, manuka	Two pits on river terrace edge.
N18/215		58	Bush - large manuka	Four stone heaps on steep slope.
N18/217		58	Bush - some large trees	Seven stone heaps at base of slope.

Released under the Official Information Act

Old Imperial NZAA Site Number	New Metric NZAA Site number	Compartment	Vegetation	Description
N18/218		58	Bush - makamaka Some manuka. Large rata.	Single pit on high ridge. Some water filled.

Full details of all sites can be found on NZAA site record forms held by NZAA (Whangarei), HPT (Wellington) and FS (Auckland and Waipoua).

Details are also given in FS reports. Full references can be found in the site check list in Lawlor (1984) and in Taylor and Sutton (1985, 1986).

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act



Plate 1: N18/186 (see Smith 1986b; Taylor and Sutton 1985). Line cut through Pinus patula prior to preliminary mapping. There is a stone heap in the right foreground with the undergrowth cut off.



Plate 2: University of Auckland Anthropology Department fieldschool at site N18/186 during a visit by the interim Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee in December 1985.

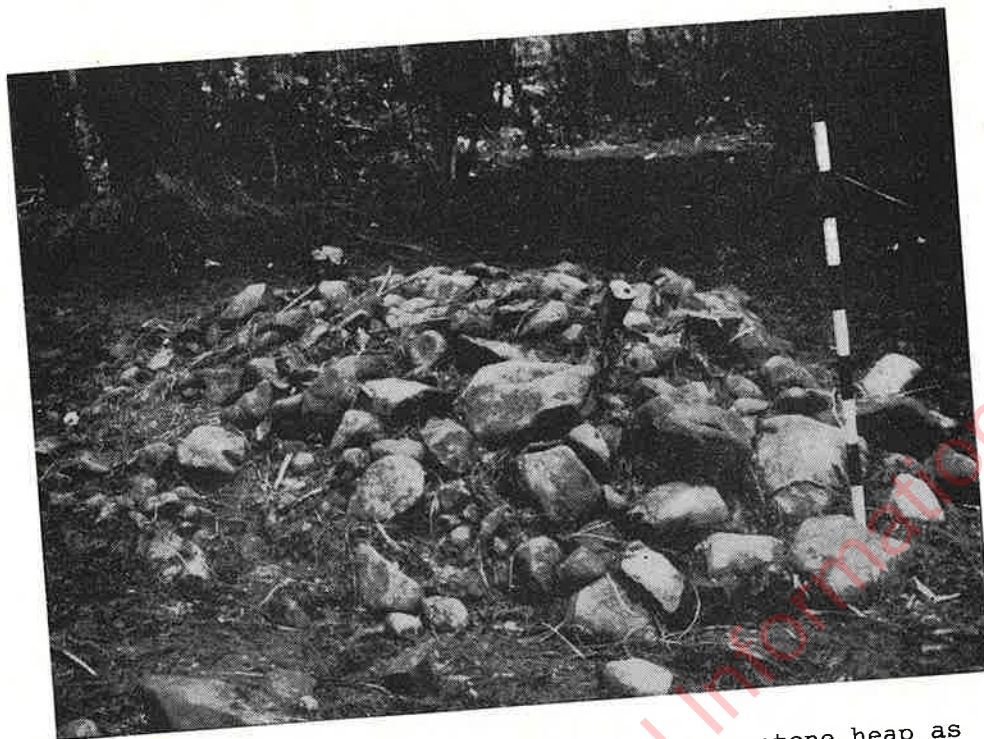


Plate 3: Site N18/186. This is the same stone heap as in Plate 1 after clearance. The scale is 1m long with 10cm divisions.



Plate 4: Site N18/87. Stone wall cleared for photographing. Planted in P. radiata. The scale is 50 cm.

Released under the Official Information Act

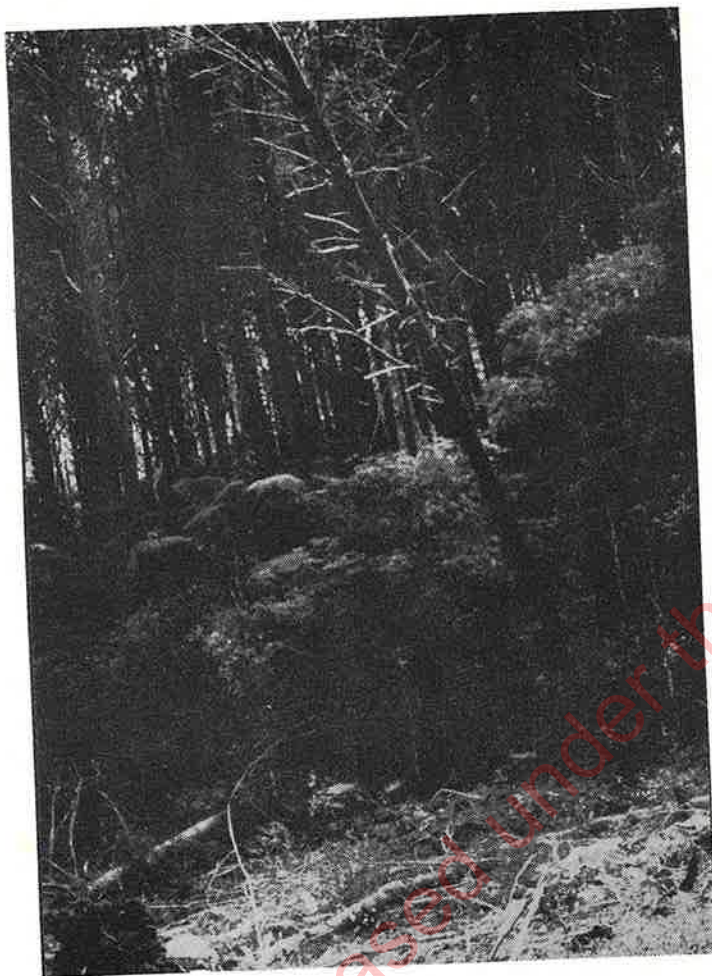


Plate 5: Felling of P. patula adjacent to N18/186.



Plate 6: Site N18/87. Stone alignment cleared for recording in P. radiata. The scale is 50 cm long.

ALL INFORMATION CONTAINED
HEREIN IS UNCLASSIFIED
DATE 01-11-2011 BY 60322
AUTHORITY 50 USC 3024



ALL INFORMATION CONTAINED
HEREIN IS UNCLASSIFIED
DATE 01-11-2011 BY 60322
AUTHORITY 50 USC 3024



Released under the Official Information Act



Plate 7: Site N18/181. Stone hearth probably indicating a house site. Situated in light bush immediately adjacent to P. elliottii.



Plated 8: Site N18/186. Small heap showing detail of construction. The stone in the foreground has dropped from the space above. The scale is divided into 10 cm divisions.

Released under the Official Information Act



Plate 9: Site N18/109. Stone heap showing an intact face and a collapsed face. Scale is 1 m.



Plate 10: Site N18/103: Mapping and excavation of the site are underway. Small and dead P. echinata were cut and removed from the site before work commenced.



Released under the Official Information Act

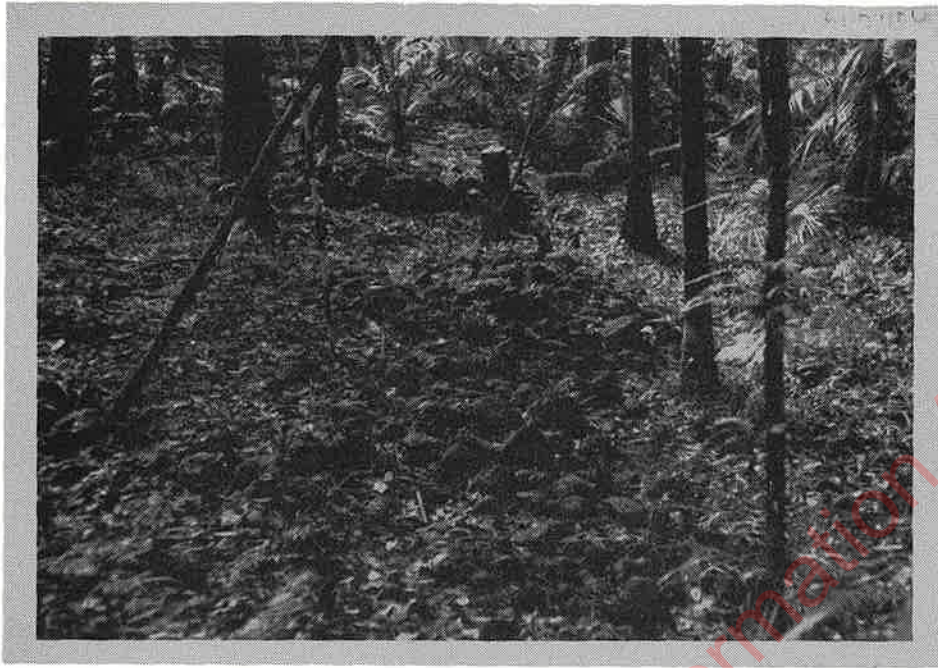


Plate 11: Site N18/140. Low stone facing. The feature is in bush immediately adjacent to a stand of P. elliottii.



Plate 12: Site N18/15. Stone platform in indigenous bush.

5. The following table shows the number of people who attended the concert in each age group. The total number of people who attended the concert was 1,200.



FUTURE DIRECTIONS
FOR THE
WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT
IN THE
DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

DRAFT

AUGUST 1987

Released under the Official Information Act

J.B.

Released under the Official Information Act

CONTENTS

	PAGE
1.0 INTRODUCTION.....	0
1.1 TE ROROA-WAIPOUA ADVISORY COMMITTEE.....	2
1.2 BACKGROUND.....	3
2.0 SITE MANAGEMENT AND CONSERVATION.....	7
2.1 PROTECTION.....	8
2.2 SURVEY.....	9
2.3 MODIFICATION.....	11
2.3.1 LOGGING.....	11
2.3.2 VISITORS TO SITES.....	12
2.3.3 NATURAL CAUSES.....	14
2.4 INVESTIGATIONS.....	15
3.0 STATUTORY REGULATION.....	18
3.1 CONSERVATION ACT.....	18
3.2 TREATY OF WAITANGI.....	19
3.3 HISTORIC PLACES ACT.....	19
3.3.1 AUTHORITIES.....	19
3.3.2 PERMITS.....	21
3.4 ANTIQUITIES ACT.....	22
4.0 ADVOCACY AND EDUCATION.....	26
4.1 SITE INTERPRETATION.....	27
4.2 WAIPOUA INFORMATION CENTRE.....	28
4.3 PUBLICATIONS AND MEDIA.....	29
5.0 RESEARCH AND LIASON.....	31
5.1 TRADITIONAL.....	32
5.1.1 AIMS AND OBJECTIVES.....	33
5.1.2 STRATEGIES.....	33
5.2 ARCHAEOLOGICAL.....	34
5.2.1 AIMS AND OBJECTIVES.....	36
5.2.2 STRATEGIES.....	36
6.0 IMPLEMENTATION AND PERSONNEL.....	38
6.1 PERSONNEL.....	38
6.2 ADMINISTRATION.....	40
6.3 BUDGET.....	41
6.4 COST RECOVERY.....	41
6.5 RESEARCH AND MANAGEMENT SCHEDULE.....	42
6.5.1 STAGE IV: NOVEMBER 1987 TO MAY 1988.....	42
6.5.2 STAGE V: NOVEMBER 1988 TO MAY 1989.....	44
6.5.3 STAGE VI: NOVEMBER 1989 TO MAY 1990.....	45
7.0 SUMMARY.....	47
8.0 BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	49

Released under the Official Information Act

Rongoa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee and through employment

actively involved in the project through participation on the
Tongata Whenua, Te Roroa, of Ngati Whata and Ngapuhi, who are
The sites are of much spiritual, emotional and historic importance to

and their situation is unique.
largest surviving tract of Kauri forest in New Zealand. The remains
intact stone and earthenware features located in and adjacent to the
The archaeological sites comprise densely concentrated and relatively

dated subject comprehensive field inspections are undertaken.
problems, facing him in resource management at Waipoua cannot be
Department. It must be emphasized that an understanding of the
since April 1 1997 the project has become the responsibility of the
direction for the Waipoua Archaeological Project within the DOC.
This report is to inform managers of past work and to define future

November 1994)

and the Department of Conservation (DOC) (Wellington in Minutes 5
Historic Places Trust (HPT) (Anderson 1993) (Smith 1994)
protection and preservation. The project is supported by the NZ
initiated the Waipoua Archaeological Project to ensure their
significance by the New Zealand Forest Service (FS) that they
valley. These ruins were considered to be of such historical
pre-European Maori settlements, are present in the Waipoua River
adjacent to the Waipoua Kauri Sanctuary, representing the ruins of
a large number and wide variety of archaeological sites, in and

1.0 INTRODUCTION

Released under the Official Information Act

DRAFT

PAGE 1

as archaeological assistants.

The spiritual and traditional values of the sites, their archaeological significance and their impressive landscape-qualities have been discussed in detail elsewhere (Coster 1983; Nathan 1985 a,b; Smith 1986a; Taylor 1986c).

The principle aim of the Waipoua Archaeological Project is to promote the conservation of Te Roroa Waipoua historic resources through an integrated programme of management and protection, advocacy and research.

Prior to the commencement of the Waipoua Archaeological Project Dr Atholl Anderson, Chairman of the HPT Archaeology Committee, visited the sites and met with tangata whenua and the following agreements (Anderson 1985; Black 1985) were reached between the NZ Forest Service and Historic Places Trust on the future management of the Waipoua sites:

- (a) the reservation of the main areas of archaeological sites
- (b) that logging will be carried out in a manner designed to cause least damage to the sites
- (c) logging will be carried out under the day to day direction of an archaeologist, after discussion with the HPT over the suitability of the person to be appointed
- (d) the future management of sites including appropriate revegetation and interpretation will be carried out in consultation with the Te Roroa-Waipoua Advisory Committee, who will also be involved in future

Released under the Official Information Act

advisors and/or assistants (Lawlor 1986).

also as technological (traditional and historic records investigators)

(c) Te Roroa be employed, not only as inexperienced labourers, but

jointly by Forest Service and Te Roroa

(b) identified sacred sites be declared reserves and administered

(a) Te Roroa form a Trust;

and requested that:

Waitangi Tribunal) communicated with Koro Wetere (Minister of Forests)

October 1985 after Ned Nathan (Te Roroa kaumatua and a member of the

Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee was formed in

1.1 TE ROROA-WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL ADVISORY COMMITTEE

references (Section 8).

recommendations for implementation (Section 7) and is concluded with

a summary of strategic plan (Section 6), budget (Section 7), a list of

(Section 4) and research and liaison (Section 5). The report includes

(Section 2), statutory regulation (Section 3), advocacy and education

within the DOC's broad functions of site management and conservation

background information. The following four sections define the project

of the Waipoua Archaeological Project, previous work and provides

This report is divided into nine sections. Section 1 reviews the aims

the Crown at Waipoua.

These are the primary commitments which pass to DOC as the agent of

(Ian Lawlor).

priority basis following advice from the FS Conservancy Archaeologist

(e) FS will investigate and plan for future management of sites on a

Released under the Official Information Act

DRAFT

PAGE 3

advisors and/or assistants (Lawlor 1986).

The Minister supported Mr Nathan's requests and also suggested the Historic Places Trust should be involved.

Representatives from tangata whenua, the Forest Service, Historic Places Trust, and more recently the Department of Conservation and Timberlands (a subsidiary of the new Forest Corporation), have continued to meet, oversee and advise on site management and research in the forest. Decisions have been made by consensus of those involved.

Eight meetings have been held to date (see Minutes: 15 October and 11 December 1985, 20 February, 11 June and 5 November 1986, 4 February, 18 March and 15 July 1987).

2.2 BACKGROUND

The natural history of Waipoua Forest, including geology, pedology and botany has been discussed previously in numerous reports and will not be outlined here (Bellingham 1965; Cockayne 1908; Eadie n.d.; Hayward 1972, 1973; Kermode 1981; Lloyd 1973; MacFarlan 1974; McGregor 1980, 1988; Sutherland, Cox, Taylor and Wright 1980).

Aspects of the history of the forest have been included in a number of printed references and the European history of logging, gum-digging and bleeding, road-building and the creation of the Kauri Sanctuary is

Needs
Maori
more
impe

DRAFT

Released under the Official Information Act

The project has been run as a series of planned stages of management and research each building on the other. Three stages have now been completed and each has been comprehensively documented with site record forms, site notes, information sheets, interim reports and

1985:

(Archaeological) Reserve (Cooper 1983; Lawlor 1984; Taylor 1985;

(a) define an area to be set aside as a Traditional and Historic

during logging by using special logging techniques and;

(d) work with forest staff and logging crews to protect the sites

at risk from logging;

(c) carry out excavations for research or management purposes on sites

(b) identify, mark, clean, map, and photograph sites;

valley;

(a) reserve blocks in pine due to be logged in the Waipoua River

service in 1985. The intentions were to:

The Waipoua Archaeological Project was instigated by the Forest

1980:

Taylor 1983a, 1987; Taylor and Sutton 1985; n.d.; Tippet and Olsen

Lane 1970; Moore 1984; Rapworth 1980; Pierce 1981; Pollock 1982;

Ruch 1973; Charters 1982a,b; Collins 1983; Cooper and Johnston 1980;

185 sites in Waipoua Forest (Atwell, Ruch and Lane 1973; Atwell and

Archaeological site surveys and investigations have identified over

1986; Nathan 1985a,b; Reed 1984; Smith 1970).

well documented (Adams 1985; Anonymous n.d. a; b; Halkett and Sae

0191

Released under the Official Information Act

DRAFT

PAGE 3

final reports.

During Stage I forest areas with sites at risk were resurveyed intensively, sites mapped, features planned and detailed strategies for the removal of pines from each site developed in co-operation with FS staff (Taylor and Sutton 1985).

Following Stage I it became clear that there were more sites and that the management problems were more complex than had been previously recognised. FS recognised that a substantial research and management programme would need to be continued over a number of years.

Stage II was carried out over the summer of 1985-86 and included extensive site survey in pine and indigenous forest blocks along the Waipoua River valley to enable the Traditional and Historic (Archaeological) Reserve boundaries to be defined. FS archaeologists also undertook extensive excavations (See section 2.4 for details), site management and a reconnaissance survey of the Wairau River valley (Taylor 1986 b,c; Taylor and Sutton n.d.). As necessary work was at that stage beyond FS resources the University of Auckland Anthropology Department was invited to participate in the project and undertook site mapping and excavation (Smith 1984, in prep.).

Stage III involved the continuation of excavations from the previous summer, mapping of stone structure sites and the beginning of the removal of pines from the sites. Further planned FS excavations were not commenced because NPT permits were not able to be obtained (Taylor

Released under the Official Information Act

Excavations have been undertaken on eleven sites during the project (Smith 1987; de la Cruz Taylor 1987; Smith 1987; Smith 1987). None of these have been on garden sites with stone platforms. Three on housewre storage pit sites (one of which also showed evidence of garden soils), one midden, one house with associated gardening and a gun dig site camp.

[illegible]

100-443889-100-443890

IV

Released under the Official Information Act

DRAFT

PAGE 7

2.0 SITE MANAGEMENT AND CONSERVATION

Site management is the strategy adopted by DCC to implement its aim of historic resource conservation. Management involves site protection (2.1), survey (2.2), modification (2.3) and investigations (2.4).

All Waipoua site management and research is administered through the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee. This group is the chief advocate for site protection at Waipoua (See Section 1.1).

The sites are located in both protected indigenous forest and exotic plantations mainly of pine. The sites in pine include those that are among the most significant traditionally and most impressive visually. Logging operations are progressively clearing these pines from the Waipoua River valley.

Management and associated research has of necessity focused on sites in pines and been linked to logging schedules. Archaeological surveys which preceded logging have demonstrated that the density, quality, and traditional importance of the sites warrants intensive archaeological attention (Taylor and Cullen 1985, n.d.; Taylor 1986b,c, 1987).

A further aim of the project agreed to by the the Minister of Forests was to employ tangata whenua. This has provided an understanding of archaeological methods and provided experienced personnel for the long term management and development of the sites. Traditional and historic research by tangata whenua agreed to by the Minister has yet to be

Released under the Official Information Act

Plots are located on the ground with permanent surveying points. Plots are located on the ground with permanent surveying points. Plots are located on the ground with permanent surveying points.

not in writing to protect sites on the land it manages unless host nation is agreed to by the HNT and to allocate protection responsibilities. Timberlands has agreed to protect sites at weapons sites. Protective measures will be determined on an individual site basis but in general sites will be protected by not replanting them in exotic species often without these crops are removed.

the feasibility of protecting the site at Waiyapoh has been recognized by the creation of the Traditional and Historic (Archaeological) Reserve (TAHR 1000). This has been agreed to by all parties involved but the formal gazettement of the Reserve has yet to be made.

1. The first step in the process of identifying a problem is to define the problem. This involves identifying the symptoms of the problem and determining the scope of the problem. Once the problem has been defined, the next step is to identify the causes of the problem. This involves identifying the factors that are contributing to the problem and determining the underlying causes. Once the causes have been identified, the next step is to develop a plan of action. This involves identifying the steps that need to be taken to solve the problem and determining the resources that will be needed to implement the plan. Once a plan of action has been developed, the next step is to implement the plan. This involves carrying out the steps that have been identified in the plan and monitoring the progress of the implementation. Finally, the last step in the process is to evaluate the results of the implementation. This involves determining whether the problem has been solved and whether the resources have been used effectively.

2. PROTECTION

2012 年 12 月 30 日

Released under the Official Information Act

Most sites are located in dense untracked bush and pine forest with thick indigenous undergrowth up to 6m high and ^{are} located under thick forest litter. Locating sites in these dense forests was a major survey problem as they were often completely concealed and it was only with local experience that sites could be located. Once located sites were marked and in pine lines were cut and clearance undertaken so that relocation and mapping were possible. In areas of indigenous forest vegetation was not disturbed unnecessarily.

Two surveys, one of which is based on aerial photography, have been undertaken for the FS on Haput and in the lower valley (Keene 1987) and one for FS (Pierce 1981b).

Archaeological site surveys have been undertaken by Forest Service botanists and Auckland University field club members in forest compartments 2-5, 7, 10, 12, 14-16, 19, 20, 22-24, 26, 28, 29, 35, 36, 50, 65, 66 (Waikanae River and parts of the Kauri Sanctuary) (Atwell, Rich and Lunn 1973; Atwell and Rich 1973; Charles 1982a,b; Collins 1983; Coates and Johnston 1980; Lunn 1970; Moore 1984; Papworth 1980; Pierce 1981a,b; Rallock 1982; Taylor 1982a, 1987; Taylor and Sutton 1985, 1986; Tippet and Dixon 1980).

Priority for DOC (Lunn 1987).

Archaeological site survey is the basis of inventory, and inventory is the foundation for effective management. This is regarded as a major

2.2 SURVEY

Released under the Official Information Act

FT
the thickness of the forest and the wet weather. Conditions make progress at Waipoua slow and time consuming. Conditions are far from ideal for work that is not essential.

Survey is continuing in areas undergoing erosion or development. Development includes road construction, pine logging, tree planting, track development and amenity construction. Find spots and hangi stone scatters have been the most common features located during such surveys.

Since April 1st and the advent of DOC the Waipoua archaeologists have been asked to inspect a number of DOC reserves and other sites in the Waipoua/Trounson Subdistrict. All FS Waipoua contracts have included clauses requiring that such work be undertaken. Initial work indicates that nearby reserves are often traditionally important and contain numerous sites. Problems with management have arisen in several reserves because of the lack of past archaeological and traditional inventory. DOC archaeologists ^{have been} ~~often~~ need to be involved in a wide range of land management decisions in the ^{sub} ~~district~~ including those concerning fencing, roading, grazing, amenity development, tracking, revegetation and aerial installations. ~~to name but a few situations where archaeological input has been needed since April 1st.~~

Survey in the future at Waipoua will concentrate on logging blocks eroding areas along the coast. ~~same~~ In addition an increasing demand for services outside Waipoua is anticipated. This will have the advantage of allowing the assessment and evaluation of sites in

Released under the Official Information Act

DRAFT

PAGE 24

3.1 ANTIQUITIES ACT

All portable artefacts are protected by the Antiquities Act 1975. This covers a wide range of portable objects which are collectively defined as "antiquities". These include Maori artefacts, and also objects, photographs, paintings and books of European origin which relate to New Zealand and are 60 years old; scientific type specimens of New Zealand animals, plants and minerals; meteorites; bones, feathers and eggs of the now or other extinct animals; and any boat or aircraft wreck which is more than 60 years old. None of these objects may be exported from New Zealand without the permission of the Minister of Internal Affairs.

Additional protection is given to "any chattel, carving, object or thing which relates to the history, art, culture, traditions or economy of the Maori or other pre-European inhabitants of New Zealand, and which was or appears to have been manufactured or modified in New Zealand by an ancestor of any such inhabitant prior to 1901." Any such artefact found within New Zealand after the 1st April 1976 is deemed to be the property of the Crown. Within 25 days any artefact found must be reported to the Minister or nearest museum. The Minister will then take such steps as he thinks necessary for the examination, recording and custody of the artefact. Anyone who wishes to keep newly found artefacts must register as a collector of Maori artefacts. Special provision is made for objects which come from the grave of a person whose identity is known.

Released under the Official Information Act

DRAFT

PAGE 25

The FS was a registered collector and it was agreed that all artefacts found during the Waipoua Archaeological Project would be kept at the Forest Headquarters. The FS gave a sum of money to enable a suitable display and storage cabinet to be constructed.

To date over 200 stone tools have been recovered during the project. These are mainly small obsidian or chert flake tools. A broken adze and a small chisel have also been found (Taylor 1986?). All material, except that found during the University of Auckland excavations (Smith 1984), is stored at the DOC Headquarters as agreed. These artefacts are available for display when the ^{DOC} Information ^{Centre displays} ~~section of the DOC~~ ^{are} revamped.

~~These are kept at the Forest Headquarters and are available for display when the Information section of the DOC is revamped.~~

Released under the Official Information Act

4.0 ADVOCACY AND EDUCATION

Public liason and involvement with the project has been provided principally through the establishment of Te Roroa-Waipoua Advisory Committee with representatives from the tangata whenua, the Te Roroa hapu of Ngati Whatua and Nga Puhi, the Historic Places Trust, Department of Conservation, and the Forestry Corporation.

To date other public liason, advocacy and education have not been major priorities within the project. Other issues such as the development of logging strategies, proposed investigations and addressing tangata whenua concerns have taken precedence. The Archaeological Advisory Committee have been concerned that control be maintained over public and media access and interest, in keeping with the wishes of the tangata whenua (See Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee Minutes).

However, in future public liason, advocacy and education will become increasingly important in keeping with the obligations of DOC.

4.1 SITE INTERPRETATION

Site interpretation should be developed through a series of planned stages, both on site and away from the sites. A detailed plan will need to be developed by DOC for this. The scale of interpretation will be dictated by available funds and in the longer term by the extent of use the sites receive.

Interpretation should be focused on the relationship between the Maori

and the natural northern environment, using both traditions and the understanding that can be gained through archaeology.

Interpretation facilities for visitors interested in the history of the forest should be focused away from the sites themselves, in the short term, to alleviate problems of access (See 2.3.2), and in the long term, to limit wear and damage to the sites to ensure their long-term survival.

The Waipoua Information Centre, located at the Forest Headquarters is an ideal focus for this interpretation of the forest's past (See 4.3). Interpretation would draw from modern and traditional Maori sources and from archaeological data. Displays should present the history and taonga of the forest and valley using a DOC regional context. Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee received a grant from the Forest Service to construct display and storage facilities at the Information Centre for archaeological finds. This has yet to be designed and could be an integral part of new DOC interpretation displays.

Initial public access to the sites could be provided through a programme similar to the Forest Service's summer interpretation programme. A limited number of guided walking tours, originating at the Headquarters, could visit the sites. This could be arranged for the coming 1987-88 summer if sufficient resources are available.

An assessment of the response and impact to summer walks would enable

Expand.

1 cabins

Can Michael
some inter

Local interest

an evaluation of whether sufficient demand exists to initiate further interpretation and perhaps guided walks on a more regular basis. However, before regular walks or free access to the archeological sites, can be undertaken considerable planning and on site preparation would be essential (See 2.3.2).

Tangata whenua would be involved in the decision to allow visitors access to the sites through discussions in the Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee. They could also be employed as guides.

4.2 WAIPOUA INFORMATION CENTRE

The Waipoua Information Centre provides a first class venue for public conservation advocacy and education. However, a new interpretation plan to give overall direction and identify priorities is required as the current displays at the Centre reflect (the more exploitative history of the Forest Service)

only one part
this

The major focus at the Centre should be the natural history of the forest in a regional DOC perspective. However, as the Centre is a repository for local taonga a strong emphasis within the DOC framework should be the Maori. This would focus on the relationship between the Maori and the forest, past and present, and would link the bush, the coast, the archaeological sites, the traditional history and modern Maori crafts.

Matakohu

Maxwell's cottage and Museum also provides a broad range of

opportunities for interpretation particularly of the forest's European past. This could be developed using further information gained through archival research and archaeological techniques.

4.3 PUBLICATIONS AND MEDIA

A large number of reports and file notes describe the work undertaken during and prior to the Waipoua Archaeological Project (See 9.0).

A further report (Taylor and Sutton n.d.), outlining research and management work undertaken between 1985-87, has been distributed in draft form and is now in the final stages of production. This needs to be produced for management, ethical and professional reasons.

Also nearing completion is a further report describing the results of the excavations during Stages II and III (Taylor n.d.).

In the future only annual summary reports of management will be produced unless other specific needs arise, such as with excavation reports. On-going management problems will be dealt with by problem or site specific file notes.

The production of an information leaflet already in draft form (Lawlor n.d.) is planned this year to supply visitors to the forest with details of the Project.

Following discussions by the Archaeological Advisory Committee visits to the sites by media reporters will be limited (See Te Roroa-Waipoua

VI

Archaeological Advisory Committee Minutes) unless notable discoveries occur or new information arises. The Waipoua archaeologist, together with the Advisory Committee Information Officer (Ian Lawlor), may take the initiative in releasing details, after consultation with tangata whenua and DOC district staff.

Released under the Official Information Act

draft

PAGE 31

5.0 RESEARCH AND LIASON

Research at Waipoua, of necessity, has had and will continue to have a management orientation. However, most of the work undertaken (eg. survey and mapping of sites) is the same as would be required for pure research and provides a solid basis for further work. Although in an ideal situation separating research and management may be desirable, at Waipoua the two have been integrated because of limited resources, accomodation, personnel and the nature of the work. A large body of scientific information has now been collected. This will allow for a finer focus for future investigations which can be planned to address more specific questions than previously.

A major disadvantage with Forest Service administration of the Waipoua Archaeological Project was that work was always by short term contract with no long term committment. This limited effective long term planning in areas such as management and research. However, the advent of DOC provides an appropriate opportunity to integrate past work into a longer term perspective.

Although the HPT Regional Archaeologist has maintained that a more substantial programme of research is justified this has not been a condition of the authorities issued (See 3.3.1). HPT proposals (Bulmer 1986; Smith 1987a,b) for excavation programmes at Waipoua have been rejected by the Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee because they were not integrated into the existing Archaeological Project and do not address tangata whenua concerns. Repeated requests

draft

PAGE 32

(eg. see Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Committee Minutes 7) for integration into the present programme of work and consultation with tangata whenua, Waipoua archaeologists and staff have been ignored. HPT proposals are therefore likely to remain unacceptable to the Advisory Committee.

The Waipoua Archaeological Project has focused, within a context of management, on 3 aspects of research; traditional (Nathan 1985a,b; Kereopa, Sowter, Nathan and Taylor 1987), archaeological (Keen 1987; Smith 1986b; Taylor n.d.; Taylor and Sutton 1985, n.d.) and historical (Kromquet 1986; Short 1986; Smith 1986b). Emphasis has been placed and is likely to continue to be placed on archaeological and traditional aspects of the history of the forest.

5.1 TRADITIONAL

Although 165 places have been recorded as archaeological sites no traditional sites are registered in Waipoua Forest. The proposal outlined here is to employ tangata whenua to begin this process. This work may serve as a wider example of how traditional recording of sites should be undertaken alongside archaeological programmes.

Directions for future research on traditions are expected to grow out of this pilot scheme and extension of the research through DOC or other agencies may be desirable. The potential is considerable.

draft

PAGE 33

5.1.1 AIMS ~~AND OBJECTIVES~~

- (a) To identify places of traditional Maori importance in and adjacent to Waipoua Forest.
- (b) To define the areas of traditional sites and to locate these areas on maps.
- (c) To record details of the historical, spiritual and emotion significance of traditional places.
- (d) To recommend measures necessary to recognise, protect or preserve the sites.
- (e) To complete applications under the Historic Places Act (1980), Section 50 to have the places declared traditional sites.

5.1.2 STRATEGIES

Research would focus primarily on places located in Waipoua Forest and its immediate environs as appropriate. Initially work would involve processing of the list of traditional places already prepared for the forest (Sowter, Kereopa, Nathan, and Taylor 1987). It is anticipated that more sites will be identified during this work, providing an initial extension of the programme.

The primary method of research will be the collection of oral information from the Maori people who are knowledgeable about the history of the valley. This will be supplemented by published and unpublished written material.

It is recognised that some traditional information may be compiled that would be of a confidential nature and that distribution would

Copyright © 2009 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.


[!\[\]\(e2297bc882e4a3f95bff068ab9c9101f_img.jpg\)](#)
[!\[\]\(69eafe5577bb2820ded2637faee72eea_img.jpg\)](#)

draft

PAGE 34

therefore be restricted. Decisions on this are most appropriately made by the informants.

The initial position would be advertised and a suitably qualified and experienced person selected. The appointee would be preferably from the whanau, have research experience, reside locally and be someone whom traditional informants could place confidence in. Tangata whenua should be involved in the selection of appointee.

5.2 ARCHAEOLOGICAL

A theoretical basis for archaeological research at Waipoua has been outlined by Smith (1987a). However, the proposal presented here adopts a different approach to research at Waipoua. Archaeological work to date has been focused in two areas of the forest, Compartments 5 and 15, as these were the main areas at risk. Although these areas will continue to be the focus of archaeological attention a research programme needs to cover a greater area and involve scientists of different disciplines.

Particular attention needs to be given to information sources that are unique to Waipoua. These include the traditional knowledge and importance of the sites, and their situation in and adjacent to the largest surviving kauri forest. A further significant feature of many of the archaeological ^{ruins} remains at Waipoua is that they are above the ground, unlike ~~at~~ most archaeological sites where most ^{remains are} information is buried. Attention has been and should continue to be focused on these.

Therefore be recalled. Decisions on this are most appropriately made by the informant.

The initial position would be advised and a further detailed and experienced person selected. The approach would be generally from the informant, have research experience, health facility and be someone who is familiar with the place conditions in Tanganyika where the project is to be carried out.

A theoretical approach to archaeological research at Wapona has been outlined by Smith (1960). However, the approach provided here adopts a different approach. Research at Wapona archaeological work is data and high level of the forest, comparison of the data as these were the main areas of study. Although these areas will continue to be the focus of archaeological research a research programme needs to cover a greater area and involve collection of different disciplines.

Particular attention needs to be given to the collection of data and analysis of the data. These include the traditional knowledge and the language of the site, and their relation to the site. The site is a very important area, and further significant data are being collected. The site is a very important area, and further significant data are being collected. The site is a very important area, and further significant data are being collected.

draft

PAGE 35

VI

Traditions provide a framework for developing an understanding of the variation in ~~the types~~ and distribution of sites and provide an outline of the chronology of settlement. Further, at Waipoua they identify the actual people associated with various sites. This information, combined with that recovered through archaeological techniques, can provide an enhanced and vivid picture of past lifeways at Waipoua.

Research should also focus on the relationships between the ancient Maori and the forest. At Waipoua the trees themselves are a major part of the archaeological landscape and therefore warrant study.

These unique opportunities for examining past human and environmental relationships are greatly enhanced by the proximity of a long sea coast with rich kaimoana. This important aspect of Maori life is not neglected in this research outline.

Nowhere else can one examine the interaction between the Northern Maori, an existing forest, horticulture, the sea, and enrich the interpretation through traditional knowledge.

The need to examine these relationships on a regional basis, in closer detail, is well recognised (Davidson 1984:40).

draft

Page 55

Their purpose is to provide a framework for developing an understanding of the relationship between the two types of sites and provide an outline of the chronology of settlement. Further, at Valignus they identified the burial mounds associated with various sites. This information, combined with that recovered through archaeological excavations, can provide an enhanced and vivid picture of past life at the site.

Excavations have also taken place on the mound which the ancient burial site is located. At Valignus the three burials are a major part of the archaeological landscape and therefore a primary study.

There is also opportunity for studying past human and environmental relationships. The site is situated on the banks of a long sea coast with rich fisheries. This important aspect of human life is not reflected in this research outline.

Human life can be examined in the context of the site. The site is located on the banks of a long sea coast with rich fisheries. This important aspect of human life is not reflected in this research outline.

The site is situated on the banks of a long sea coast with rich fisheries. This important aspect of human life is not reflected in this research outline.

Released under the Official Information Act

VI
draft

5.2.1 AIMS AND OBJECTIVES

- a. To allow protection and appropriate management of historic resources at Waipoua
- b. to allow interpretation and restoration of sites after logging is completed
- c. to answer research questions
- d. to satisfy requirements of HPT authorities

These aims are not exclusive and there is considerable overlap.

5.2.2 STRATEGIES

As outlined above (2.0) the primary work of site location and survey, the essential basis for research, has been largely completed (Taylor and Sutton 1985, n.d.). The strategy proposed involves continuing to build on this work through the comparison and complimentary analysis of a representative sample of sites. Six main site types or clusters are recognised at Waipoua: stonework sites, pit storage sites, gardens, house terrace sites, middens and pa.

Apparently similar sites and features will be planned and excavated to identify actual similarities and differences in form and function, both within and between sites. Much of the preparatory site mapping and feature planning work has been completed. In addition, particular advantage will be taken of information that becomes available incidentally through disturbance by logging or other development work.

VI
draft

PAGE 37

Specifically the research proposed requires:

- a. Documentation and excavation of a range of stone work features, from the most simple to the most complex, to identify the original form, methods of construction, age and function. The primary focus of this work would be stone structures in site N18/109 but could include stonework on nearby sites N18/186 and 187. This work was originally planned for the 1986-87 summer but was unable to be undertaken (Taylor 1986c, 1987a). Comparison of features excavated can also be made with features already excavated when the results become available (Smith in prep.; Taylor and Sutton 1985).
- b. Continuation of excavations on site N18/102, plus at least one other small pit site and one large pit site.
- c. Excavation and dating ^{will} ~~would~~ also be required on at least one additional house site.
- d. Recovery and analysis of middens should ~~also~~ be undertaken. Middens are rare in the forest but a number of eroding middens on the coast require urgent attention. Logging may also uncover additional middens.
- e. Work should ~~also~~ be carried out several of the fortifications in the forest. This will involve mapping sites, collection of dating material from eroding or bulldozed sections and limited excavation.
- f. In addition to these planned excavations emphasis will be placed on incidental information that becomes available during logging or from erosion. Most features uncovered in this way are off-site and provide access to information that is not easily found by archaeologists.
- g. Subject to finance work could also be undertaken on aspects of the historical archaeology in the forest including -gum digging, bleeding and kauri logging. Few sites that relate to the European history of

11/11/77

Page 23

Specifically the research proposed was:

a. Documentation and excavation of a range of archaeological features,

from the west wall to the west corner, to identify the original

form. Methods of construction, age and function. The primary focus of

this work would be the excavation of the wall and the discovery of

any remains of the wall. This work was originally

planned for the 1982-83 season but was unable to be undertaken for

1982-83. Completion of the excavation was also made with

regard to the excavation of the wall. The results of the excavation

are: 1. The wall was built in 1881.

2. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

3. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

4. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

5. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

6. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

7. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

8. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

9. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

10. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

11. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

12. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

13. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

14. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

15. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

16. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

17. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

18. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

19. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

20. The wall was built on a foundation of stone and brick.

draft

PAGE 38

the forest have been proposed for preservation.

h. A detailed botanical survey of the historic and traditional reserve and adjacent areas will ~~also~~ be undertaken to identify vegetation types, age and past modification. This ~~should~~^{will} assist in distinguishing areas of older settlement and land clearance from those more recently settled.

i. Studies of soils, sedimentation and pollen deposits ~~would~~^{will} provide valuable background information relating to the settlement, land clearance and the development of horticulture in the valley.

6.0 IMPLEMENTATION AND PERSONNEL

Logging of sites in Compartments 5 and 15 at Waipoua is expected to take 3 more years. As the day to day presence of archaeologists is required all year for the greater part of this period it is proposed that the Waipoua Archaeological Project should be continued for this time. In addition to logging management which requires mainly periodic attention, research should also be undertaken. Modifications to the proposed programme can be expected as the logging schedules vary and as our understanding of the archaeology develops.

The main ~~field~~^{field} research and site logging must be undertaken during summer with analysis of results, report writing and some logging management being undertaken during the winter months.

6.1 PERSONNEL

The overall project should continue to be directed by ~~a~~ full time archaeologist and assistant archaeologist. If the position is to

draft

PAGE 39

VI

remain on a contract basis, DOC has the option of retaining the present Waipoua Archaeologist (Michael Taylor) or of readvertising the position. If a permanent position is planned it should be advertised and the most suitable applicant chosen.

Because of the necessity of regular monitoring of logging both of these personnel will need to be based at Waipoua.

The director will continue to be responsible for the overall direction of the project, management of sites, directing of mapping and excavations, supervision of logging, the organisation of analysis and report production. The assistant director will help with these tasks and assume responsibility for specific portions of the work.

More use should be made of subcontracting of specific pieces of work, such as mapping, specialists' analysis or excavations, including the requirement of written results. If work by outside agencies or subcontractors is required it should be undertaken within the context of the present Project and under the Project Director's control. The extent of this is subject to finance.

Tangata whenua should continue to be given preference for employment as field assistants (see also 5.1.2).

The assistant contractors position is at present unfilled. Additional experienced archaeologists are also required to carry out necessary work and act as supervisors for less skilled assistants. A high ratio

draft

PAGE 40

VI

of experienced to unskilled personnel is necessary to maintain control and a consistent high standard of work. Previously other archaeologists have been largely drawn from graduate archaeologists completing higher degrees or seeking more permanent employment. All positions will be widely and publicly advertised.

Greater use should be made of volunteer labour, whether student seeking to gain field experience, or volunteers drawn from the proposed conservation corps.

6.2 ADMINISTRATION

Under DOC the administration of the Archaeological Project has been undertaken through the Waipoua Cost Centre and DOC Kaikohe District Office. This is for purely practical reasons as Auckland is too far and Waipoua too remote to maintain effective communication lines for administration purposes.

The Project Director currently reports to the DOC District Conservator on day to day operations. Professional liaison, of necessity, has been and will continue to be maintained through the Auckland Regional Office (Ian Lawlor). ^(See 1.0e) This situation may be subject to revision when rationalisation of roles, functions and responsibilities of archaeologists within DOC is completed.

Close working relationships are also maintained with other DOC District and Subdistrict staff, appropriate Regional specialists, Timberlands staff (particularly those concerned with logging), logging

draft

PAGE 41

contractors and tangata whenua and local HPT Committee members.

6.3 BUDGET

Costing for the 1987-88 financial year was carried out using procedures consistent with those used in the past by the FS at Waipoua as no DOC specific procedures were provided.

The rates of pay for the Director (1011.03.01) and Assistant Director (1011.02.05 to 08) (depending on experience) are based on Public Service scientist pay scales, for those with M.A. or greater qualifications, as recommended by the HPT. These have been used in the more recent contracts. Some future adjustments may be needed to be made for length of service, merit or variations in qualifications.

Field worker rates of pay and allowances are taken from the N.Z. Workers Award (Determination 450). These will be revised when an award specific to DOC becomes available.

6.4 COST RECOVERY

Timberlands has indicated that it is willing to meet additional costs involved in the protection logging of the archaeological sites. As well they will make a significant cash grant to help cover costs of necessary archaeology.

The HPT has also indicated a willingness to contribute directly to the costs of archaeological management and research at Waipoua and an approach should be made to the HPT Director for financial assistance.

draft

PAGE 42

VI

The potential for cost recovery from public visits and sales of souvenirs is at present limited but these could become a ⁴major contributor in the future.

6.5 RESEARCH AND MANAGEMENT SCHEDULE

Anticipated logging schedules are detailed elsewhere (Tables in Taylor and Sutton n.d.) and it is necessary that ^{field}work be tied to these schedules. However, as discussed above (2.3.1) variations may occur in these schedules and these will result in alteration of planned archaeological work.

Over the next 3 years during logging of Compartments 5 and 15 work will focus on:

- (a) supervision of logging on or near sites to minimise any damage.
- (b) the continuation of recording of sites and features at risk from logging.
- (c) monitoring of surface disturbance during off-site logging.
- (e) investigation and recovery of evidence unearthed during logging or from other causes.
- (f) other planned investigations, including mapping and excavations.

6.5.1 STAGE IV: NOVEMBER 1987 to MAY 1988

The major excavations for Stage IV of the Project will be undertaken in November and December 1987. Work is proposed on 2 sites, N18/102 and N18/109. Stone structures in N18/109 are among the most impressive in the forest and are also the features most vulnerable to logging

Page 15

Sheet

The potential for early recovery from both sides and raise up
anthesis is at present limited but these could become a major
contribution in the future.

2.5. REACTION AND ADAPTATION SCHEMES
And the other existing schemes are detailed elsewhere (1972) in Table
and Table 2.1 and it is necessary that they be used in these
schemes. However, the discussion above is 2.1) variations may occur in
these schemes and they will result in alterations of planned
architectural work.

Over the next 3 years the use of computerized 2 and 12 work
will become an
the supervision of design and on the other hand to minimize any damage.
for the continuation of working at site and between all risk from
losses.
The monitoring of water temperature and the other related
for the detection and early of possible structural damage or
from other causes.
It is also planned to develop, including heating and cooling.

2.5.1. STAGE TWO NOVEMBER 1981 TO MAY 1982

The major development for Stage Two in the design will be characterised
in November and December 1981. Work is proposed on 2 and 12 work
and the other. Stage 2.1 will be to develop the new design
in the future and also the new work materials to design

draft

PAGE 43

VI

damage. It is essential that details of their original form and construction are documented prior to logging proceeding if they are to be reconstructed after logging (See 5.2.2a).

N18/102 has previously been test excavated and the variety of features, the presence of datable materials and the presence of stone tools indicate that more extensive excavations would be warranted.

Test excavations are ~~also~~ planned on one stone scatter and 3 areas of possible garden soils uncovered by logging in Compartment 5 during the 1987 winter. Other sites or features are ~~also~~ expected to be uncovered as logging encroaches upon sites and these too may need to be investigated.

Logging of sites is planned to be undertaken during January and February 1988 which are the driest months when any surface disturbance can be minimilised. During this time Project field work will be undertaken near to the logging to be able to deal with emergency situations as they develop.

Site recording to be undertaken during Stage IV includes primarily the completion of mapping of areas at risk in N18/109 and detailed planning and photographing of features that require recording prior to logging.

The botanical survey (See 5.2.2h) is also planned for the summer of 1987-88.

Page 40

that

However, it is essential that details of their original form and
transmission are documented prior to logging proceeding as they are so
be reconstructed after logging (see 2.1.2).

With the growth in data being excavated and the variety of
formats, the importance of data to projects and the volume of data
from which the data is excavated would be maintained.

Just as the data is being mined on the same scale and a sense of
urgency is being created by logging in the department 2 during the
1987 winter. Other sites or features are also expected to be uncovered
as logging continues upon sites and there too may need to be
investigated.

Logging of sites is almost always taken up in January and
February 1987 which are the best times when the surface conditions
can be maintained. During this time the field work will be
underway to the logging is the best time to deal with emergency
situations as they arise.

Once recorded in the computerized data base by the project team, the
completion of mapping of areas of - 100 to 1000 m² is retained
planning and maintaining the features that require further work in
logging.

The project was completed in 1987 and the summer of
1987-88.

draft

PAGE 44

During the winter months, in addition to the ongoing work outlined above (6.5), analysis and report writing, barren logged areas will be seeded or replanted. Damage from erosion will also be monitored and controlled. Seed from indigenous undergrowth will be collected from trees felled during pine logging on sites.

6.5.2 STAGE V: NOVEMBER 1988 to May 1989

The pattern of work established in previous years, with intensive excavations prior to Christmas and site mapping and recording and site logging in the New Year, will be continued.

During Stage V attention will be focused on sites N18/106 and N18/187 if work on these sites has not proceeded (Smith 1987b) and tangata whenua agree that it should. If excavation has proceeded on these sites, work will be undertaken on a large pit site (N18/111, 112 or 118) and a small pit site (yet to be chosen).

Excavations will also be planned for terrace and midden site N18/36 and on disturbed features on site N18/140, if logging on this site is completed.

Recording of features, through planning and photography, will be undertaken on stonework site N18/85. Test excavations here ⁹ have already demonstrated that major excavations are not necessary (Taylor 1987). However, the impressive stonework remains ^{are} very vulnerable to logging disturbance.

1981 年 6 月 26 日 星期三

draft

PAGE 45

Mapping and feature recording at N18/87 may ~~also~~ be ^{started} ~~commenced~~ during this stage if time permits.

Reconstruction of stonework may ~~also~~ be attempted if the situation permits.

Other incidental work is ~~also~~ expected to arise as logging proceeds.

A study of soil types and their relationship to gardening will be commissioned. Studies of sediments and pollen deposits will be undertaken in the lower valley if land owners concur.

6.5.3 STAGE VI: NOVEMBER 1989 to MAY 1990

Once again the pattern of timing of work established in preceding years will be followed. First priority in this stage will be given to any work remaining outstanding from previous stages.

Continuation of mapping and feature recording on site N18/87 will be undertaken. If appropriate excavations will also be undertaken.

Recording and test excavations of pa in the valley will be a main priority during this stage. Mapping of N18/82 (Kaitieke), N18/88 (Kiwinui), N18/14 (Owetenga), and N18/11 (Pahinui) (if permission is obtained from the landowners). Limited excavations on N18/14 and N18/88 should be considered nearer to 1989. In addition, incidental information could be recovered from eroding and bulldozed sections on

draft

PAGE 46

other sites.

Other excavations, if necessary will be planned nearer to Stage VI, once results from previous stages are available and a finer focus for research problems can be achieved.

Reconstruction of damaged features and revegetation of DOC areas that have had the pines removed will also be a major focus during Stage VI.

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

draft

7.0 SUMMARY

7.1 Logging of plantation pines in the Waipoua State Forest threatens the continued survival of an area of significant Maori archaeological sites.

7.2 Prior agreements (between the Forest Service and N.Z. Historic Places Trust) require that logging of these sites be carried out under the supervision of suitably qualified and experienced archaeologists in a manner least damaging to the sites.

7.3 Historic Place Trust authorities to modify the sites require that archaeological investigations be undertaken on a sample of these sites.

7.4 The Forest Service set aside a significant area of these sites, in both pine and indigenous bush, as a proposed reserve which has been transferred to the Department of Conservation.

7.5 Principle objectives of work already undertaken has been to locate, record, protect and implement appropriate management of the sites.

7.6 Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee should continue to advise on all management and investigations or other developments proposed on the sites.

7.7 The Waipoua Archaeological Project has been underway for 3 years

Page 2

10/1/71

2. SUMMARY

The purpose of this report is to provide information on the results of the investigation of the alleged violation of the provisions of the National Firearms Act, Chapter 47, Title 18, U.S.C., relating to the possession of a firearm by a person who is a member of a criminal organization.

The investigation was conducted by the New York State Police, New York City, and the New York State Police, Albany, New York, in cooperation with the Federal Bureau of Investigation, New York City, and the Federal Bureau of Investigation, Albany, New York. The investigation was conducted from October 1, 1970, to October 31, 1970.

The results of the investigation are as follows: The investigation has revealed that the alleged violation of the provisions of the National Firearms Act, Chapter 47, Title 18, U.S.C., relating to the possession of a firearm by a person who is a member of a criminal organization, has been committed by the following persons:

1. The person who is a member of a criminal organization, and who is in possession of a firearm, has been identified as the following person:

2. The person who is a member of a criminal organization, and who is in possession of a firearm, has been identified as the following person:

3. The person who is a member of a criminal organization, and who is in possession of a firearm, has been identified as the following person:

4. The person who is a member of a criminal organization, and who is in possession of a firearm, has been identified as the following person:

VI
draft

and it is anticipated that it will be 3 more years before sites are cleared of pines.

7.8 The Project will require the full time employment of an Archaeological Director and Assistant, plus short term field workers, for an initial term of 3 years.

7.9 The Project should continue to be administered through the Department of Conservation Waipoua Cost Centre and Kaikohe District Office.

7.10 The restoration, development and interpretation of the sites for public interpretation is intended.

7.11 See 1.0(e)

Released under the Official Information Act

Page 46

and it is anticipated that it will be a more rapid and efficient
method of analysis.

2. The present work requires the full time employment of an
archaeological technician and archaeologist, plus about four field workers,
for a period of 3 years.

3. The total cost of the project is estimated to be about \$100,000 through the
operation of a research center located at the University of Wisconsin-Madison.

4. The total cost of the project is estimated to be about \$100,000 through the
operation of a research center located at the University of Wisconsin-Madison.

Page 47

Released under the Official Information Act

draft

PAGE 49

8.0 REFERENCES

Anderson, A. 1985

Letter to D. Black, Assistant Conservator, F.S., Auckland, 30 June 1985. File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Atwell, E.G. and G.F. Puch 1973

Archaeology in the Waipoua Region, Northland. Part II: Description of Pa from the Waimamaku Valley and Kawerua.
Tane 19:111-118.

Atwell, E.G., G.F. Puch and R. Lawn 1973

Archaeology in the Waipoua Region, Northland. Part I: List of Sites from Hokianga South Head to Maunganui Bluff.
Tane 19:103-110.

Bellingham, M. 1985

Proposed Western Extension to the Waipoua Forest Sanctuary, Northland.
Unpublished Report.

Black, D.A. 1985

Letter to Dr A. Anderson, Chairman N.Z. Historic Places Trust Archaeology Committee, Wellington, 12 July 1985.
File 6/13/21/1/, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Bulmer, S. 1986

Report to the Historic Places Trust Archaeology Committee on the Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project.
Unpublished Report.

Charters, H.E. 1982a

Archaeological Investigations in Waipoua SF13, Compartment 5.
Interim Report to NZFS and NZHPT.

Charters, H.E. 1982b

Site Management in Waipoua SF13.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Charters, H.E. and J. Pierce 1981

File note, 3 June 1981, file 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Cockayne, L. 1908

Report on a Botanical Survey of the Waipoua Kauri Forest.
Report to the House of Representatives C14.
Government Printer, Wellington.

Collins, R. 1953

Waipoua Booklet (List of old Maori Pa in Waipoua)
Memo, 14 April 1953; File 6/13 (Vol. IX).
N.Z.F.S. Auckland.

Coster, J. 1979

File note, 25 January 1979, file 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

draft

PAGE 50

VI

Coster, J. 1983

Archaeological Site Management in the Waipoua River Valley: A Review and Proposals.
 Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Coster, J. and G. Johnston 1979

Waipoua State Forest 13; Archaeological Site Inspections, March 1979.
 File note, 24 March 1979, file 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Coster, J. and G. Johnston 1980

Waipoua State Forest 13: Kawerua Coast 1977-1980.
 Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Daniels, J. 1987

The Trust and the Department of Conservation.
 Unpublished Paper presented to N.Z. Historic Places Trust Conference, Wellington, July 1987.

Davidson, J. 1984

The Prehistory of New Zealand
 Longman Paul Ltd.

Duff, R. 1956

The Moa-hunter Period of Maori Culture.
 Government Printer, Wellington.

Eadie, n.d.

Hayward, B.W. 1972

Geology of the Kawerua Coastline, North Auckland.
 Tane 18:149-168.

Hayward, B.W. 1978

Moas- New Zealand's First Rockhounds. Evidence from Kawerua.
 Tane 24:159-172.

Keene, C. 1987

The Archaeological Application of Large Scale Colour and Colour Infrared Aerial Photography over the Lower Waipoua River Valley.
 Preliminary Report.
 Unpublished Report, Anthropology Department, University of Auckland.

Kereopa, Nathan, Sowter and Taylor 1987

Maori Traditional Sites in Waipoua SF 13 (Restricted)

Kermode, L.O. 1981

Rock Type Map of Waipoua-Aranga (Sheets 006/07) NZMS 290
 Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington.

Kromquet, J. 1986

.....

PAGE 50

1951

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

Grassland and Silviculture in the Western United States
and the Pacific Northwest
Published Report, W.S.P. 1951, 1952

draft

PAGE 51

Lawlor, I. 1984
Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage One Information Sheet.
Unpublished Information Sheet, File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Lawlor, I. 1986
Report to the HPT Archaeology Committee, Concerning the Survey,
Management and Investigation of Historic Places in the Waipoua River
Valley.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Lawlor, I. 1987
.....

Lawn, R. 1970
Early Maori Occupation, Waipoua Forest
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Leahy, A. and W. Walsh 1977
Waipoua Forest Archaeological Site Survey, Compartments 28 and Pt.,
29.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Lloyd, R.C. 1973
Report on Waipoua Scrubland.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

MacFarlan, D.A.B. 1974
Preliminary Report of the Inland Geology of the Kawerua Area.
Tane 20: 111-114

McGregor, W.R. 1930
From Fern to Forest: the Life History of Waipoua
Wanderlust Magazine Vol.1 No. 5.

McGregor, W.R. 1948
The Waipoua Kauri Forest of Northern New Zealand.
Auckland

Moore, A. 1984
Waipoua State Forest: Reconnaissance Survey and Site Management 1984
Planting Season.
Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Nathan, E. 1985a
Waipoua and the Hapu Te Roroa.
In Taylor and Sutton 1985.

Nathan, E. 1985b
Waipoua and Te Roroa Hapu (Outline for a Proposed Information
Leaflet).
In Taylor and Sutton 1985.

Papworth, M. 1980
Waipoua River Valley, March-April 1980

PAGE 21

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.
Lambert, J. 1982
Unpublished Testimony Report, 1974-1975, W.D.P.S., Auckland.

draft

PAGE 52

Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Pierce, J. 1981

Waipoua SF13 (Waipoua River Valley) Cpts 2,4,7,13,15 and 16, April, 1982.

Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Pierce, J.

.....

Pierce, J. 1982

Report on Trial Logging on N18/142, Pits/terrace Site, Cpt.,15, Waipoua SF 13.

File note, 30 March 1982, file 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Polack, J.S. 1838

New Zealand Being a Narrative of Travels and Adventures. Caper Press, Christchurch.

Pollock, R. 1982

Waipoua SF13. A Survey of Burn Areas In Compartments 2,3,4,13,15 and 16, April 1982.

Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Short, S. 1986

Land History of the Waipoua Block 1875-1906
Unpublished Paper, Anthropology Department, University of Auckland.

Smith, I.W.G. 1986a

Archaeological Sites of the Waipoua Region: an assessment of their significance and recommendations for further action.

Unpublished Report to N.Z.H.P.T.

Smith, I.W.G. 1986b

Gardening, Gum Digging, and Silviculture in the Waipoua River Valley: preliminary report on excavations at N18/186 and N18/179.

Smith, I.W.G. 1987a

Waipoua Archaeology: Research Design and Investigation Proposal.
Unpublished Report, Anthropology Department, University of Auckland.

Smith, I.W.G. 1987b

Te Kopae Investigation Proposal.
Unpublished Report.

Smith, I.W.G. in prep.

Final Report on Excavations at N18/179 and N18/186, Waipoua Forest.

Smith, S.P. 1910

Maori Land Wars of the 19th Century.
Whitcome and Tombs, Christchurch.

Sutherland, Cox, Taylor and Wright 1980

Soil Map of Waipoua-Aranga (Sheets 006/07) NZMS 290.

draft

PAGE 53

Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington.

Taylor, M. 1985

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage II Information Sheet.
Unpublished Report, File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1986a

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project Stage II: Summary of Work
Undertaken for Contract 16.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1986b

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage III Information Sheet.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1986c

Report on the Proposed Historic and Traditional Reserve in Waipoua
State Forest 13.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1987

Summary of Work Undertaken During Stage III of the Waipoua
Archaeological project.??
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. n.d.

Report on Excavations at Waipoua Forest.

Taylor, M. and A. Sutton 1985

Waipoua State Forest 13 Archaeological Project: Stage I Report
Submitted at the Completion of Archaeological Contract No. 13.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor M. and A. Sutton n.d.

Waipoua Archaeological Project: Management and Research undertaken
1985-1987.

Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee.

Minutes of Meetings 1 to 8 Held at Waipoua Forest 1985-87. Transcribed
by Ian Lawlor.

Unpublished Minutes, File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Tippett J. and K. Olsen 1980

Waipoua State Forest 13 -Compartments 19, 20, and 22. Archaeological
Site Survey, March 1980.
Unpublished Interim Report to N.Z.F.S., Auckland, and HPT, Wellington.

PAGE 38

Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington.

Taylor, M. 1985
 Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage II Information Sheet.
 Unpublished Report. File #13-211, M.S.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1984a
 Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project Stage II: Summary of Work
 Undertaken for Contract 1A.
 Unpublished Report. M.S.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1984b
 Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage III Information Sheet.
 Unpublished Report. M.S.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1985
 Report on the Proposed Historic and Traditional Reserve in Waipoua
 State Forest 1A. M.S.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1987
 Summary of Work Undertaken during Stage III of the Waipoua
 Archaeological Project.
 Unpublished Report. M.S.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1988
 Report on Excavations of Waipoua Forest.

Taylor, M. and A. Sullivan 1985
 Waipoua State Forest: An Archaeological Project: Stage I Report
 Submitted at the Completion of Archaeological Contract No. 1A.
 Unpublished Report. M.S.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. and A. Sullivan 1986
 Waipoua Archaeological Project: Management and Research undertaken
 1982-1987.

The Waipoua-Waikare Forest Management Committee
 Minutes of Meetings 1 to 5 held at Waipoua Forest 19-2-87. Transcribed
 by Ian Laidlaw.

Unpublished Minutes. File #13-211, M.S.F.S., Auckland.

Report 1, and M. Oliver 1980
 Waipoua State Forest: 13 Cooperatives 19, 20, and 21. Archaeological
 Site Survey, March 1980.
 Unpublished Interim Report to M.S.F.S., Auckland, and HRT, Wellington.

The cover design by Manos Nathan of the Te Roroa hapu is derived from the moko of Tuputupuwhenua on the pou aro carving of Matatina Marae, Waipoua; Tuputupuwhenua being the progenitor of Ngati Whatua. The three titi elements comprising the whole represent the Tangata Wheuna, the NZ Historic Places Trust and NZ Forest Service. The encompassing circle represents a unity of purpose from the three groups.

The cover layout was designed by Bill White, NZ Forest Service, Auckland.

This is an unpublished internal report. It should not be cited in print without permission from the author and the Regional Manager, Northern Region.

Opinions expressed herein are those of the author and do not necessarily reflect any policies of the Department of Conservation.

Released under the Official Information Act

WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT STAGES II AND III:
MANAGEMENT AND RESEARCH UNDERTAKEN DURING 1985-87

FEBRUARY

1988

Department of Conservation

Private Bag 8

Newton

Auckland

Michael Taylor and Annetta Sutton

Released under the Official Information Act

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We would like to thank the following people who all, in one way or another, made this report possible:

The Whanau of Waipoua, for their support and interest, especially the late Ned Nathan and Reiha Paniora.

The Waipoua Forest Staff; Keith Davidson, Ross Finlayson, Gavin Gray, Graham Harris, Ella Mason, Rod Young, Pius Zammit, and all the Forestry Workers.

Reg Kemper (D.O.C. Waipoua), and John Beachman (D.O.C. Kaikohe).

The Department of Anthropology, University of Auckland, for access to equipment and facilities, and specialist services.

The Archaeological Fieldworkers; Michael Bowers, Peter Bristow, Martin Burke, Karen Cofman-Nicoresti, Bruce Cramond, Rosemary Daamen, Michelle Horwood, Elizabeth Hudson, Pera Hutchins, Gordon Jackman, Ben Karena, Wiki Karena, Ian Lawlor, Helen Marshall, Alex Nathan, Daniel Nathan, Jamie Nathan, Reg Nichol, Richard Paniora, Rose Paniora, Robert Pollock, Ian Smith, Adrienne Solcombe and Lynda Walter.

Ian Lawlor for his advice and support throughout the Project.

Bruce Dale who attended to the final production of this report.

Michele Moore and Nick Twohill who assisted with the final production.

The New Zealand Forest Service who supported and encouraged the work undertaken here. Many thanks are due to all concerned.

Released under the Official Information Act

CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	<u>Site Management and Research</u>	5
1.2	<u>Logging and Archaeological Sites</u>	7
1.3	<u>Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee</u>	8
1.4	<u>Traditional Maori Sites</u>	9
1.5	<u>Department of Conservation and Timberlands</u>	10
2.0	COMPARTMENT 5	11
2.1	<u>Survey</u>	16
2.2	<u>Protection</u>	17
2.3	<u>Modification</u>	18
2.4	<u>Investigation</u>	19
2.5	<u>Future Management</u>	20
3.0	COMPARTMENT 14	21
3.1	<u>Survey</u>	25
3.2	<u>Future Management</u>	26
4.0	COMPARTMENT 15	27
4.1	<u>Survey</u>	27
4.2	<u>Protection</u>	30
4.3	<u>Modification</u>	30
4.4	<u>Investigation</u>	31
4.5	<u>Future Managemanet</u>	31

COMPARTMENTS 23, 27, AND 36 -THE KAWERUA COAST	32
5.1 <u>Survey</u>	39
5.2 <u>Protection</u>	40
5.3 <u>Modification</u>	41
5.4 <u>Investigation</u>	41
5.5 <u>Future Management</u>	41
6.0 COMPARTMENT 58	43
6.1 <u>Survey</u>	43
6.2 <u>Protection</u>	47
6.3 <u>Future Management</u>	48
7.0 COMPARTMENT 65	49
7.1 <u>Survey</u>	52
7.2 <u>Protection</u>	52
7.3 <u>Future Management</u>	52
8.0 COMPARTMENT 66	54
8.1 <u>Survey</u>	57
8.2 <u>Future Management</u>	58
9.0 WAIPOUA KAURI SANTUARY	59
9.1 <u>Survey</u>	59
9.2 <u>Future Management</u>	61

10.0	WAIRAU RIVER VALLEY	62
10.1	Survey	62
10.2	Protection	64
10.3	Future Management	64
11.0	SUMMARY	65
12.0	REFERENCES	67
13.0	APPENDICES	
Appendix I:	News reports of Waipoua Archaeological Project.	
Appendix II:	Compartment 5 new site record forms and additional Information Sheets.	
Appendix III:	Compartment 14 new site record forms and additional information sheets.	
Appendix IV:	Compartment 15 new site record forms and additional information sheets.	
Appendix V:	Kawerua and Waipoua Coast; Compartments 23, 27 and 36.	
Appendix VI:	Compartment 58 kauri management.	
Appendix VII:	Compartment 58 new site record forms and additional information sheets.	
Appendix VIII:	Compartment 65 additional information sheets.	
Appendix IX:	Compartment 66 new site record forms and additional information sheets.	
Appendix X:	Kauri Sanctuary new site record forms.	
Appendix XI:	Wairau River new site records forms.	

FIGURES

Figure 1:	Waipoua Forest Map showing compartment divisions.....	4
	General Key to Figures 2-12.....	12
Figure 2:	Compartment 5 showing archaeological site locations.....	13
Figure 3:	Compartment 14 showing archaeological site locations.....	23
Figure 4:	Compartment 15 showing archaeological site locations.....	28
Figure 5:	The Kawerua Coast-Compartment 23 showing site locations.....	33
Figure 6:	The Kawerua Coast-Compartment 27 showing site locations.....	34
Figure 7:	The Kawerua Coast-Compartment 36 showing site locations.....	35
Figure 8:	Compartment 58 showing archaeological site locations.....	44
Figure 9:	Compartment 65 showing archaeological site locations.....	50
Figure 10:	Compartment 66 showing archaeological site locations.....	55
Figure 11:	Kauri Sanctuary showing area surveyed and site locations.....	60
Figure 12:	Wairau River Valley showing area surveyed and site locations.....	63

TABLES

Table 1:	Summary of archaeological sites in Compartment 5.....	14
Table 2:	Summary of archaeological sites in Compartment 14.....	23
Table 3:	Summary of archaeological sites in Compartment 15.....	29
Table 4:	Summary of archaeological sites on the Kawerua Coast.....	36

Table 5: Summary of archaeological sites in Compartment 58.....	45
Table 6: Summary of archaeological sites in Compartment 65.....	51
Table 7: Summary of archaeological sites in Compartment 66.....	56

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This report describes the archaeological research and management work undertaken in Waipoua State Forest 13 (Fig. 1) as Stages II and III of the Waipoua Archaeological Project from November 1985 to May 1986 and November 1986 to April 1987. Summary reports outlining this work have already been distributed (Taylor 1986, Taylor 1987).

The work had the support of the Tangata Whenua, Te Roroa, and was initiated and funded by the N.Z. Forest Service (FS). Since 1 April 1987 the work has been undertaken for the Department of Conservation.

The project is being undertaken as a series of stages of management and research, each building on the other. Stage I involved detailed surveys and site recording in Compartments 5 and 15 both of which were under development threat. Stage II involved continuation of the extensive surveys in the valley, site recording and the undertaking of a series of research orientated excavations. Stage III continued with detailed mapping of sites and with the logging of archaeological sites.

The work to be undertaken as Stage II of the project was detailed at the completion of Stage I (Taylor and Sutton 1985; Taylor 1985), the scope of which had in turn been derived from earlier recommendations on management and research (Papworth 1980; Pierce 1981; Coster 1983; Moore 1984; Lawlor 1984). Similarly Stage III extended from Stage II (Taylor 1986).

Both Stages I and II of the project were carried out under the

direction of Michael Taylor with the primary assistance of Annetta Sutton. The assistant director during Stage III was Bruce Cramond. Ian Lawlor has overseen all work undertaken. Ian Smith (University of Auckland) was also invited to participate in selected fieldwork which at that point was beyond the resources of the FS.

The work for Stage II involved extensive excavations which were undertaken in Compartment 5; on five sites under the direction of Michael Taylor and two by Ian Smith. Tangata whenua, archaeology students from the University of Auckland, and graduate archaeologists working for the FS assisted with both excavations. Detailed reports will be presented elsewhere and only brief outlines will be included here.

Stage II also focused on the definition of an area to be set aside as a Traditional and Historic Reserve (Fig. 1). The definition of the reserve involved the relocation of known sites in the Waipoua River valley and the survey or resurvey of areas not previously intensively covered, in addition to discussions and field inspections with tangata whenua and FS staff. The 645ha reserve includes at least 71 recorded archaeological sites as many more remain unrecorded in the portion of indigenous forest. About 48ha of the reserve is at present in pine and this will eventually be removed from exotic timber production. Copies of the report describing the proposal for the reserve were distributed in 1986 (Taylor 1986c) and all of the proposed area was transferred to the Department of Conservation on 1 April 1987.

During Stage III work was focused in Compartments 5 and 15 on detailed

planning and investigations of sites, and the removal of pines from sites.

While access to the sites has been restricted by resolution of the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee (See section 1.3) numerous visitors have inspected the main excavations and areas to be included in the reserve . FS visitors during Stage II included the Conservator of Forests, Peter Herrick, his deputies, Mason Potter and Peter McElroy, the retiring FS District Ranger, Colin Sutherland, the acting District Ranger, Tony Russell, Laurie Powell and Russell Dale from the FS Auckland office, and Cecil Hood from FS Head Office, Wellington.

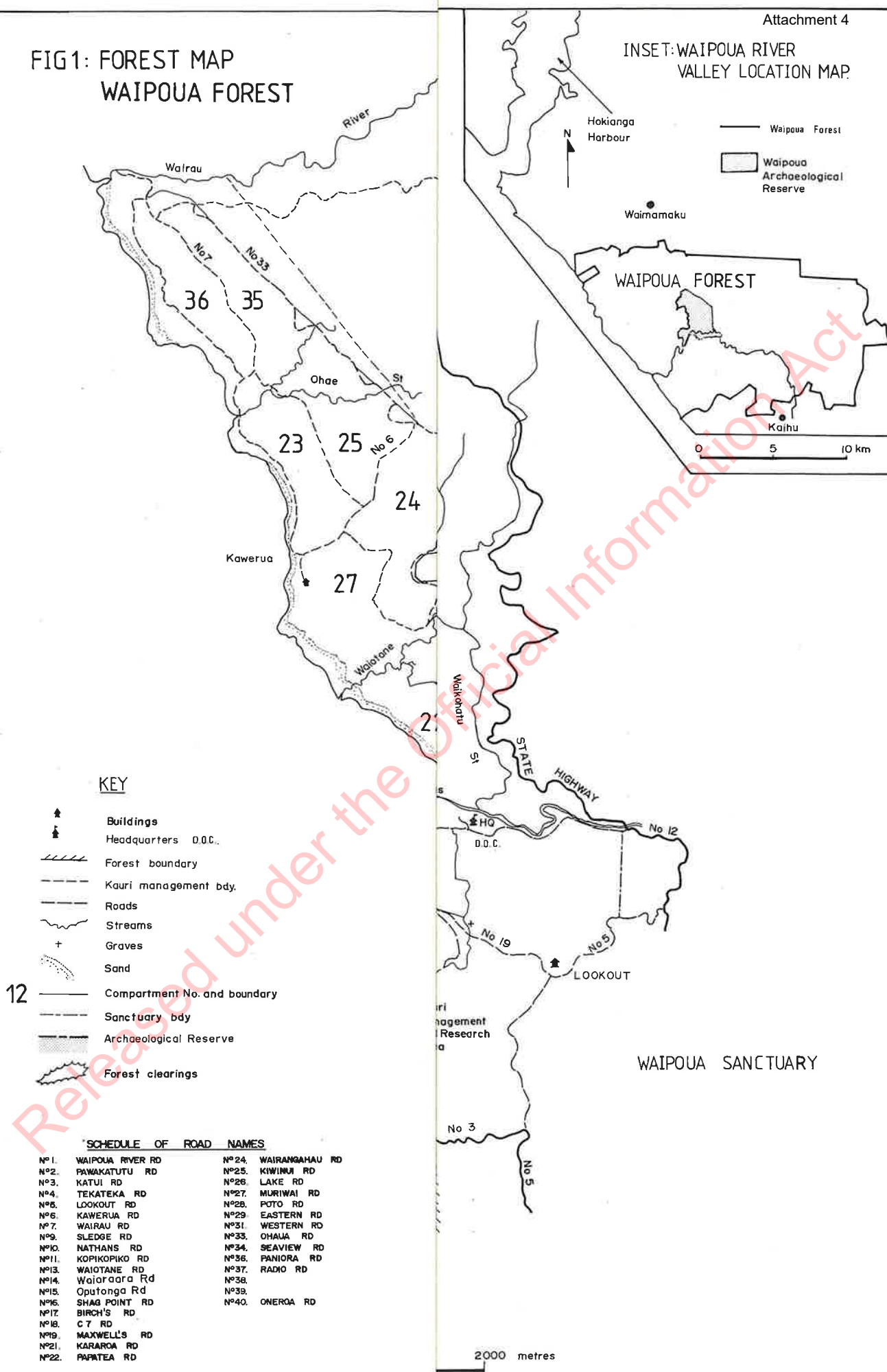
Archaeologists who visited the sites during Stage II included Peter Ads (Maori Studies Department, Victoria University, Wellington), Dr Harry Allen (Anthropology Department, University of Auckland), Dr Susan Bulmer (HPT Regional Archaeologist), and almost the entire N.Z. Archaeological Association (NZAA) Council (Louise Furey, Wendy Harsant, Mary Jeal, Garry Law, Bruce McFadgen, Brenda Sewell, Lynn Williams) with Nigel Prickett.

During Stage II news media visits included a tour of the sites by Glenys Hopkinson (Tourist and Publicity Department) and Bill Kier (Appendix I) as well as television crews from "The Natural World of the Maori", Te Karere, and Top Half Regional News. The two articles by Glenys Hopkinson were published widely including most N.Z. daily papers, the N.Z. News (U.K.) in Britain, and a Cook Islands newspaper. Other media representatives spoke to Ned Nathan and Ian

Released under the Official Information Act

FIG1: FOREST MAP
WAIPOUA FOREST

INSET: WAIPOUA RIVER
VALLEY LOCATION MAP



Tracing and additions by A. Sutton 25/8/86.

Released under the Official Information Act

Lawlor (Appendix I).

The number of visitors during Stage III was more limited but included Ken Piddington, Director General of DOC, Don McKenzie and Lisa Forester, FS botanists from Kaikohe, Rod Wallace, Technical Officer from the University of Auckland, Department of Anthropology and most of those who attended the Advisory Committee meetings.

News media interest continued during Stage III (Appendix I). A television crew from Communicado Television filmed logging and on sites for a new programme, "That's Fairly Interesting". Michael Taylor also provided interviews with Radio Northland.

1.1 Site Management and Research

All management and research undertaken on archaeological sites is summarised in the following sections (2.0 to 10.0) by Forest Compartment (See Figure 1).

Historic Places Trust (HPT) permits and authorities have been obtained for all archaeological and forest development work. However, not all permits and authorities issued were required during 1985-87 as logging of most sites was not undertaken and some archaeological work was postponed.

During the project the basic archaeological survey method employed required relocating known sites and then traversing the areas between them. In addition, in unsurveyed areas or areas with no sites, the ridges and other main natural features were walked until the whole

terrain had been covered at close intervals.

Practices used for site definition during past surveys have not been consistent throughout the forest. During the current work, when site numbers were already allocated, site boundaries were redefined for management purposes where necessary; for example, to distinguish sites in pines from those in bush. Elsewhere, where new sites were recorded, such as in Compartment 58, site definition was made on the basis of similar features been intervisible. When different types of features were not intervisible the locations were recorded as separate sites. This was done to facilitate the relocation of scattered features in dense bush.

Some replanting of sites with indigenous seedlings and seed on/or within the reserve area will be both desirable and necessary. Collection of seedlings and seed from within the logging zones should be undertaken prior to logging and planted out in winter.

Following logging, a close watch should be kept for the development of problems with soil erosion especially on the steeper slopes. Until vegetation is re-established, regular checks should be made to ensure that erosion does not occur on or in the vicinity of sites.

Investigations for both management and research should continue to focus on those sites that are under the most immediate threat from logging. Progress with these investigations will be slow because the dense vegetation which covers all sites makes surveying, mapping, and excavation slow and difficult especially when compared with

archaeology carried out in an open landscape.

1.2 Logging and Archaeological Sites

Logging of several archaeological sites during 1985-87 (compare Taylor and Sutton 1985: Tables 4 and 5 and Tables 1 and 3 in this volume) did not proceed as planned as logging fell behind schedule. Rates of timber removal are difficult to predict exactly because of a variety of factors including market fluctuations, orders required, species being felled, timber volumes produced, wetness of the ground, and mechanical breakdowns.

Only two sites N18/112 AND 183, have had all timber removed (See sections 2.1 to 2.3). Several sites, N18/111, 140, 179, 185 and 186 were partially logged. Damage to sites was minimal and no significant damage occurred to features.

Archaeologists should continue to be present to help plan and supervise the logging of sites (and surrounding areas), to both prevent damage to site features, and to record and investigate further features that are likely to be uncovered during logging operations. Measures agreed to by the FS and HPT that can be taken to minimise site damage are outlined elsewhere (Anderson 1985; Lawlor 1986; Smith 1986a; Taylor and Sutton 1985:7-9,17-21,26-28). Once logging has commenced archaeological site protection techniques are likely to develop rapidly with experience.

Following logging, sites should be reinspected to assess the impact and then site perimeters should be remarked with red paint and/or tape

to prevent further damage while work is continuing nearby. Most sites also should be marked permanently with tanalised fence posts bearing their N.Z. Archaeological Association (NZAA) site numbers to ensure that they are able to be relocated in the future.

1.3 Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee

Representatives from the tangata whenua, the FS, the HPT have continued to meet as the interim Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee to oversee and advise on site management and research in the forest. Four meetings were held during Stage II of the project (See minutes: 15 October, 11 December 1985, 20 February, 11 June 1986).

Three meetings of the Advisory Committee were held during Stage III (on 5 November 1986, 5 February 1987, 18 March 1987), and minutes for these meetings have been distributed by Ian Lawlor.

All work on the sites has continued to be carried out under the auspices of the committee. Proposed archaeological work has been outlined and results of fieldwork already undertaken have been reported to the Committee.

The Committee has resolved that visitors to the sites be limited to tangata whenua and necessary professional or scientific personnel. Visits by school groups, tour parties, or the general public will not be allowed until the sites can be presented with the dignity that they warrant.

Discussions are continuing over the most appropriate methods to formally establish the Committee and the Traditional and Historic Reserve. Attachment 4

Future management and research of the archaeological sites on the land which has been taken over by both the Department of Conservation and Forestry Corporation should be subject to discussion with the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee.

1.4 Traditional Maori Sites

A map and complementary list of 60 named places of traditional Maori importance in the forest was prepared in co-operation with Gracie Kereopa, Alex Nathan and Freda Sowter. As most of the places identified in this work are wahitapu or urupa strict limits have been placed on the distribution of the information. It is anticipated that many more places will be identified as time passes. The list and map were presented to the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee.

A list of places of traditional Maori importance and archaeological sites was also prepared for inclusion in recommendations for areas to be set aside from commercial production in the land proposed to go to Timberlands (Forester and McKenzie 1987:8-12). The main focus of this report was on areas of biological value, but many of these coincided with areas of traditional importance and archaeological sites.

1.5 Department of Conservation and Timberlands

This report is the final work to be carried out for the FS as after 1 April 1987 administration of Waipoua Forest was split between the new Department of Conservation (DOC) and Timberlands, a subsidiary of the Forestry Corporation. DOC controls the indigenous forest, including the Kauri Sanctuary and Traditional and Historical (Archaeological) Reserve, and Timberlands manages the exotic plantations. Final land allocations have still to be made.

The Archaeological Project is administered by DOC.

Timberlands still is obliged to manage archaeological sites on land under its control and close liason remains necessary.

Timberlands is responsible for the logging of pines from archaeological sites on DOC land, specifically in Compartments 5 and 15 within the area to be reserved (Taylor 1986c). Logging of these two Compartments will probably take another 3 summers (1987-1990). In Compartment 14, a portion of which has been allocated to DOC in the Archaeological Reserve, logging is due to take place until the 1990's.

2.0 COMPARTMENT 5

This compartment consists of a series of north facing slopes, gullies and ridges which were planted in a variety of pine species in the late 1930's and early 1940's (Fig. 2; Table 1). Areas of indigenous bush, containing much archaeological evidence, remain near the river. Pines in the eastern portion of the compartment were logged in the mid 1970's and logging is now underway in the western portion.

Soils within the compartment are variable, with Waipoua clays and loams dominant on the lower levels, and sand on the upper slopes and ridges. In the past, the areas where sand and loam meet may have been favoured for gardening as the mixed soils would have both the lightness of sand and the fertility of the loam.

Old and large Pinus radiata mark the route of the historic horse track that runs through the compartment. These trees were used for seed collecting in the 1950's but most likely date from the gum digging era. Forester (1985:24) has recommended that the historical significance of the older planted pines should be considered before their removal is contemplated.

The first archaeological sites in Compartment 5 were noted by forest staff and the compartment was surveyed with "some thoroughness" in 1980 (Papworth 1980:2). Other work has included the ringbarking of pines on N18/93 and one pine on N18/94 (Coster 1979), test excavations of 3 storage pit sites (Charters 1982a), and further site surveying (Moore 1984; Taylor and Sutton 1985).

General Key to Figures: 2 - 12

(★) N18/102 archaeological sites.



exotic plantings (mainly pines)



roads / tracks



streams



CPT5 compartment No's and boundaries.

See Fig.1 for key to Compartment locations

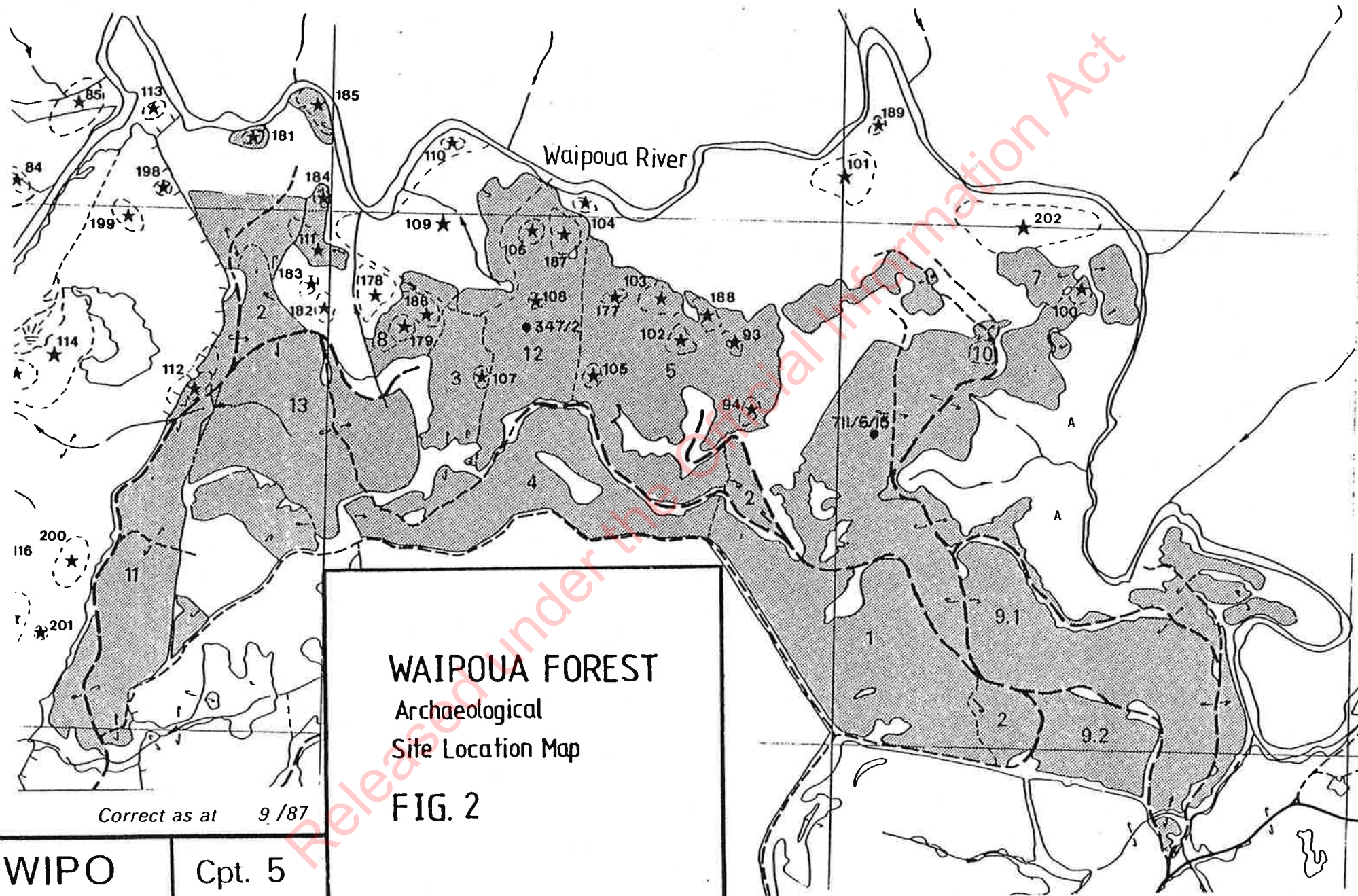


TABLE 1 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN COMPARTMENT 5

Attachment 4

NEW METRIC NUMBER	OLD IMPERIAL NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	AUTHORITY	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0095	N18/13	Reputed pa	<i>Pinus palustris</i> (1937) Firebreak	C	-	-	-	Findspot 1985
006/0162	N18/93	12 pits	<i>Pinus echinata</i> (1940)	R	1985/2	1987-88	-	Sketch mapped 1979. 60 ringbarked and understorey cleared 1979
006/0163	N18/94	4 pits 1 Terrace	<i>Pinus echinata</i> (1940)	R	1982/5	1987-88	-	Planned 1979. Excavated (Charters 1982) Pig damage 1986
006/0168	N18/100	2 pits	Bush edge	R	-	-	-	Not relocated despite repeated searches 1985-87
006/0169	N18/101	Stone structures	River edge bush	R	-	-	-	Some pig damage 1986
006/0170	N18/102	7 pits 1 terrace	<i>Pinus echinata</i> (1940)	R	1985/2	1987-88	-	Most pines cleared for planning and excavations 1986 (Taylor n.d.). Findspot obsidian flake 1986
006/0171	N18/103	3 pits 1 terrace stone heaps	<i>Pinus echinata</i> (1940)	R	1985/2	1987-88	-	Earthworks mapped 1986. Excavated (Taylor n.d.)
006/0172	N18/104	5 stone heaps	River edge bush	R	-	-	1 post 1986	See Appendix II
006/0173	N18/105	8 pits	<i>Pinus echinata</i> (1940)	-	1985/3 also 1982/5	1987-88	-	Sketch plan 1980. Excavated (Charters 1982)
006/0174	N18/106 Te Kopae	4 terraces	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1940)	R	1985/2	1989?	-	Undergrowth cleared 1985. Mapped 1985, 1987.
006/0175	N18/107	4 pits	<i>Pinus taeda</i> (1939)	-	1985/2 1982/5	1988	-	Excavated (Charters 1982)
006/0176	N18/108	1 pit	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1940)	R	1985/2	1988-89	-	-
006/0177	N18/109	Extensive site. 2 pits 1 terrace, c400 stone heaps, stone facings, stone channel	Bush <i>Pinus radiata</i> (1940) <i>Pinus taeda</i> (1939) <i>Pinus patula</i> (1938)	R	1985/2	1988-89	2 posts 1986	Pine perimeter mapped 1985-87. Test excavations (Taylor n.d.)
006/0178	N18/110	1 pit	Riverside bush	R	1985/2 Not needed	-	1 post 1986	Relocated accurately 1985. Sketch plan 1986 See Appendix II
006/0179	N18/111	26 pits 2 terraces	<i>Pinus patula</i> (1949) <i>Pinus radiata</i> (1940)	R	1985/2	1987-88	-	Sketch plan 1980, understorey cut 1986. Partially logged 1986-87. Excavation 1987, (Taylor n.d.)

TABLE 1 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN COMPARTMENT 3 CONTINUED

Attachment 4

NEW METRIC NUMBER	OLD IMPERIAL NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	AUTHORITY	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0180	N18/112	15 pits 1 terrace	Part Scrub Part <i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	-	-	Logged 1985	1986	Logged 1985. Relocated and sketch planned 1986. Partially in Compartment 66. See Appendix II
006/0181	N18/113	Stone faced terrace	Scrub below pine	R	-	-	-	Site relocated 1986. See Appendix II
-	N18/177	1 terrace	<i>pinus echinata</i> (1940)	R	1985/2	1988-89	-	Site planned and excavated 1986 (Taylor n.d.)
-	N18/178 Pawherowai	2 terraces Stonework	Bush adjacent to <i>Pinus patula</i> (1938)	R	1985/2 Not needed	-	-	Site definition clarified to include only features in bush 1986
-	N18/179 Pawherowai	3 'pits' and modified knoll	<i>Pinus patula</i> (1938)	R	1985/2	1987-88	-	Site planned and excavated 1985 (Smith 1986). Partially logged 1986-87
-	N18/181	Stone structures	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1940)	R	1985/33	1987-88	-	Sketch mapped 1985
-	N18/182	Stone structures	<i>Pinus patula</i> (1949)	R	- 1986/48	1987-88	-	Partially cleared and sketch mapped 1986. Undergrowth felled 1986.
-	N18/183	1 pit	<i>Pinus patula</i> (1938)	R	1986/48	Logged 1987	Post 1987	Logged 1987
-	N18/184	2 terraces	<i>Pinus patula</i> (1949)	R	1986/48	1987-88	-	Sketch planned 1985
-	N18/185	Stone heaps and river flat	<i>Pinus radiata</i>	R	1985/33	1987-88	-	Mapped and excavated (Taylor n.d.) Undergrowth felled 1986. Partially logged 1987.
-	N18/186 Pawherowai	Stone heaps on flat and slope. Pond	<i>Pinus patula</i> (1938) Few <i>Pinus taeda</i>	R	1985/33	1987-88	-	Undergrowth cleared 1985. Mapped and excavated (Smith 1986). Partially logged 1987
-	N18/187 Te Kopae	Stone faced terracing and heaps	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1940)	R	Needed	1989	-	Undergrowth cleared 1985. Planned 1985
-	N18/188	6 pits 3 terraces	<i>Pinus echinata</i> (1940)	R	Needed	1987-88	-	Planned 1985
-	N18/189	4 pits	Bush	R	-	-	-	-
-	N18/197	Findspot (obsidian flake)	Track between stands of <i>Pinus radiata</i>	-	-	-	-	New site located 1986. See Appendix II
-	N18/202	Stone heaps and lines	Riverside bush	R	-	-	-	New site located 1986. See Appendix II

* A, B, C are FS management grades. R indicates the site is to be included in the archaeological reserve.

About 24.8ha at present in pine, plus areas of bush on the lower slopes of Compartment 5, are to be included in the archaeological reserve and therefore excluded from future pine plantings.

2.1 Survey

Two areas of riverside indigenous bush at the eastern end of Compartment 5 were surveyed for sites. The eastern-most area (See Area A, Fig. 2) consisted of very steep slopes with some medium sized kauri trees, both standing and fallen, but no evidence of archaeological sites. However, a new site N18/202, was located in the other survey area and further exploration of this area is warranted.

Two new sites, N18/197 and N18/202, were recorded and two other sites (N18/112 and 113), that may be affected by logging, were included in sites listed for Compartment 5 (Appendix II):

Site type	Site no.	Grid reference
Pits	N18/112	027-055
Stone work	N18/113	028-059
Findspot	N18/197	027-057
Stone heaps	N18/202	043-058

Site N18/112 was recorded originally as a single pit and terrace site but 15 pits and one terrace were identified during Stage II (Appendix II). The site probably originally included over 20 pits but a portion of the site was destroyed when a firebreak was bulldozed through it in the 1950's.

One obsidian flake was found at N18/197 which is located on a log hauling track (Appendix II).

Site N18/100 which had not been relocated (Taylor and Sutton 1985:15), again was not located despite intensive searches.

2.2 Protection

No protected sites (Taylor and Sutton 1985:19-20) have been affected by forest development. However, pigs through rooting up the ground have damaged N18/101 ,a protected site, and N18/94 which is scheduled to be logged. The pigs present a major threat to the sites as they disturb any stratified evidence.

Sites N18/104, part of 109, 110, 112, and 183 were permanently marked for protection with tanalised fence posts bearing tags with the NZAA site numbers.

The perimeter of N18/112 was marked to exclude the site from replanting during the 1986 winter and about a dozen 6 year old pines were cleared from the site. These had been planted in 1980 following logging, and before the site was relocated.

Cut-outs were bulldozed on logging tracks to help prevent erosion through the build-up of run-off during heavy rain.

2.3 Modification

Logging proceeded in the western block of P. radiata during the 1985-87 field seasons and road and skid construction also were undertaken. Sites N18/ 102, 111, 179, 181 to 184 were monitored for damage but no unplanned modification occurred.

Mature P. palustris (1937) were felled from N18/112 before the site was relocated but their removal caused no significant damage (See 2.2). Logging on the periphery of N18/186 to allow skid construction was supervised by the forest logging officer and archaeologist. All trees (P. patula 1938) were direction felled away from the main archaeological features. One small stone heap, on the site edge, was destroyed during skid and track construction after investigation (Smith 1986b). A portion of the old horse track recorded on the NZAA site record form for N18/94 was removed during road construction.

Only site N18/183 has been completely cleared of pines. No damage was caused to the site. Logging also occurred on parts of five other sites in Compartment 5, N18/111, 179, 183, 185, and 186. No significant damage occurred to any recorded archaeological feature.

Logging was carried out by Mr Ernest Morton, the logging contractor, currently working in the forest.

Undergrowth was cut down on sites N18/111, 181, 182, 183, 184 and 185 to prevent damage to the ground surface during logging, but logging did not proceed on all prepared sites.

2.4 Investigations

Detailed mapping of the extensive site, N18/109, was continued during Stages II and III and most of the pine perimeter has now been mapped. Individual features have also been planned and photographed. Test excavations in N18/109 showed some evidence of gardening.

Detailed mapping and excavations also were carried out on sites N18/102, 103, 109A, 177 and 185. These excavations will not be described here as the results have been outlined elsewhere (Taylor 1986a) and will be described further after analyses are completed.

During Stage II excavations were also undertaken by the University of Auckland, Department of Anthropology field school on N18/179 and 186 and these have been summarised (Smith 1986b).

Two features uncovered during Stage III by logging operations were also investigated. An area of charcoal and burnt stone was uncovered about 20m from N18/111 by a bulldozer hauling logs. This was cleared of debris, planned, photographed, and then fully excavated. Two large charcoal samples were collected for wood identification and possible dating. Near N18/182, a skidder cut through a small knoll uncovering an ambiguous feature which upon excavation appeared to be a burnt root. Charcoal was also collected from this isolated feature and it was planned and photographed.

A small area of stonework on site N18/182 also was uncovered and planned. However, it was considered best to leave most of the low stonework buried under the thick duff layer that conceals it as this

affords an excellent protection against damage during logging.

Bruce Cramond has established a traverse network to enable a detailed contour map of sites N18/106, 109 and 187 to be prepared. This will tie together maps prepared during all three stages of the project.

2.5 Future management

Logging in this compartment will continue to progress at a faster rate than in previous years and inspection of logged areas and supervision of logging will require a greater proportion of the forest archaeologists' time. Sites N18/93, 94, 102, 103, 105, 107, 108, 109, 111, 177, 179, and 181 to 186 may be affected by logging in the near future.

Detailed archaeological recording of site N18/109 and investigation of N18/109, and 187 is necessary before logging approaches their perimeters. Major excavations on N18/106 and 187 were planned in December 1986 by Ian Smith but these were not able to be undertaken at that time. Tangata whenua have requested that no excavations on N18/106 are undertaken.

3.0 COMPARTMENT 14

Compartment 14 (Fig. 3; Table 2) comprises south facing slopes running down to river flats. Where there are large flats, or gentle slopes, pine is usually planted, but where the land is steep it usually retains a bush or scrub cover. Most of the areas planted in pine were burnt off in 1963.

Soils are generally Waipoua clays and loams, but these are overlaid in many places with sand. Rock outcrops only near the beginning of Papatea Road (No.22). A large area of active slips, situated above the site N18/87, needs to be watched to ensure the slope is stabilised.

The compartment is transected by Pawakatutu Road (No. 2) which leads to Kawerua. The eastern and upriver half of the compartment is traversed by Papatea Road (see Fig. 1), construction of which begun in March 1958. At the time, the Officer in Charge recorded in the Forest Diary that it was named "'Papatea Road' after the old Maori name for the area covered by much of the souther portion of Compartment 58" into which the road leads.

The principle survey in the compartment was carried out by Papworth (1980) whose survey team spent seven days there. Prior to this Coster and Johnston had confirmed the presence of several sites reported by FS staff (Coster 1979).

Other archaeological work carried out in the compartment has included the clearing of the stone wall and alignment in N18/87 and the marking of 13 sites with posts by Helen Charters and Robert Pollock (Charters

Cpt. 15

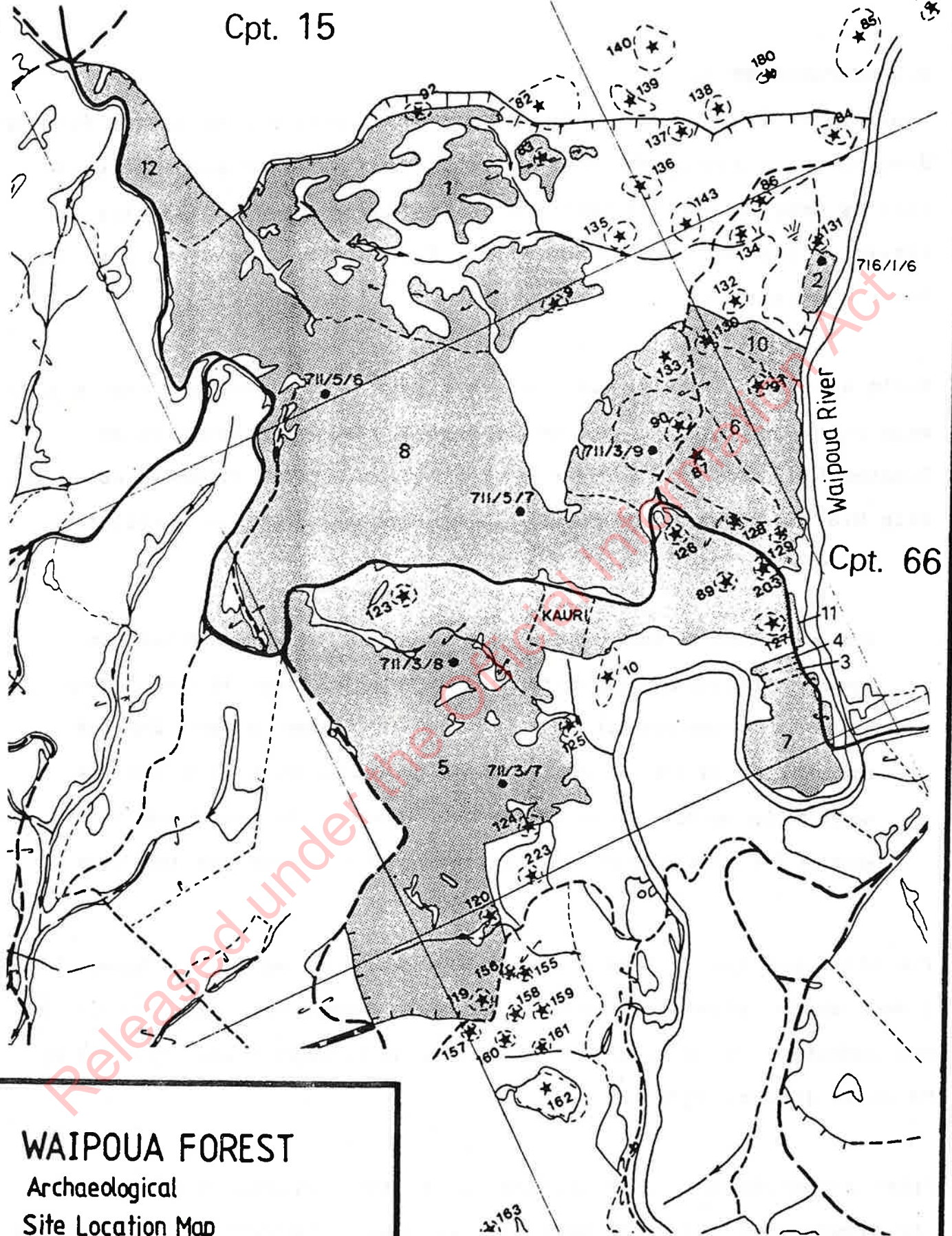


FIG. 3

Correct as at 9 / 87

WIPO

Cpt. 14

SCALE 1:10000

TABLE 2 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN COMPARTMENT 14

NEW METRIC NUMBER SITE	OLD IMPERIAL SITE NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	AUTHORITY PERMIT	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0091	N18/9	Reputed pa. 2 pits and terrace	<i>Pinus palustris</i> (1942) <i>Pinus radiata</i> (1972)	C	-	-	-	Pits and terrace located off the peak 1986. See Appendix III
006/0092	N18/10	15 pits	Scrub 6 <i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	A	-	-	5 posts 1979	Sketch plan of site 1986. See Appendix III
006/0152	N18/83	4 pits	<i>Pinus palustris</i> (1942)	R	-	-	1 post 1982	-
006/0153	N18/84	3 pits	Scrub in firebreak	R	1985/2 NoL needed	-	1 post 6 battens 1982	Sketch plan 1979
006/0155	N18/86	1 pit	Bush	A	-	-	1 post 1982	-
006/0156	N18/87	Area of varied stone structures- heaps, wall, alignment.	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	R	HP12/9/12 (1979)	-	2 posts 30 battens 1982	Includes extraordinary stone- work. Requires detailed recording
006/0158	N18/89	5 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	R	-	-	-	Sketch plan 1979
006/0159	N18/90	4 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	A	-	-	1 post 1982	Sketch plan 1979
006/0160	N18/91	4 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	C	HP12/9/12 (1979)	-	-	Sketch plan 1979
006/0186	N18/119	Terrace, drain	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	C	-	-	-	Sketch plan 1980. Recorded drain is a track. May have been bulldozed since recording
006/0187	N18/120	4 pits, drain	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	C	-	-	-	Sketch plan 1980 The recorded drain is probably a track
006/0188	N18/121	29 Gumholes	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	C	-	-	-	Sketch plan 1980
006/0189	N18/122	34 Gumholes	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	C	-	-	-	-
006/0190	N18/123	2 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	C	-	-	-	Sketch plan 1980
006/0191	N18/124	3 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	C	-	-	-	Sketch plan 1980
006/0192	N18/125	3 pits 2 terraces	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	A	-	-	1 post 1982	Sketch plan 1980
006/0193	N18/126	2 stone heaps	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	R	-	-	-	-
006/0194	N18/127	2 stone heaps	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	R	-	-	-	Additional site location plan. See Appendix III

TABLE 2 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN COMPARTMENT 1A CONTINUED

Attachment 4

NEW METRIC NUMBER SITE	OLD IMPERIAL SITE NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	AUTHORITY PERMIT	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0201	N18/134	2 pits 1 terrace drain	Bush	K	-	-	1 post 1982	Planned 1980. North-south reversed on original site record form
006/0202	N18/135	1 pit 3 terraces	Bush	K	-	-	1 post and ballons 1982	See Appendix III
006/0203	N18/136	6 pits 2 terraces	Bush	K	-	-	1 post and ballons 1982	Pits planned 1980 Visited 1986 - impressive terrace location beside waterfall. Extra terrace located
006/0204	N18/137	2 pits	Scrub in firebreak. Thick toitoi	K	1985/2 Not needed	-	2 posts 1985	Relocated and marked with posts and red tape, sketch plan 1985. Post tagged November 1985.
006/0205	N18/143	9 pits (in 2 groups)	Bush	K	-	-	2 posts 1982	Planned 1986 See Appendix III
006/0195	N18/128	1 pit	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	K	-	-	-	Possible terrace and site location recorded. See Appendix III
006/0196	N18/129	2 pits 1 stone heap	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	K	-	-	-	Sketch plan 1980
006/0197	N18/130	20+ stone heaps	<i>Acacia melanaxylon</i> B (1980) <i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966) Bush	-	-	-	-	-
006/0198	N18/131	1 stone heap	Bush	A	-	-	1 post 1982	-
006/0199	N18/132	1 stone faced terrace 7 stone heaps	Light bush (hangahanga)	K	-	-	1 post and ballon 1982	Sketch plan 1980
006/0200	N18/133	2 faced terraces. 50+ stone heaps	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966) Bush	K	-	-	1 post and ballons 1982	Requires mapping in detail.
-	N18/203	1 terrace 1 pit	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	-	-	-	-	New site 1986 See Appendix III
-	N18/223	3 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1965)	-	-	-	-	New site 1986. Sketch plan. See Appendix III
-	N18/224	Findspot (of obsidian flake)	Track through various pines	-	-	-	-	New site, See Appendix III

1982b).

The compartment east of Pawakatutu Road contains some impressive sites which include the extensive stonework of sites, N18/87 and 133, (in pine) and a series of terrace and pit sites, N18/134 to 136, and 143, (in bush) which probably represent dwelling areas.

Most of Compartment 14, upriver from the Pawakatutu Road is to be included in the Traditional and Historic Reserve. This includes about 15.0 ha of land at present in exotic species. These trees include 13.4ha of P. radiata (1966), 1.3ha of Acacia melanoxylea (1980), and 2.8ha of scattered P. palustris (1942). Plans for the removal of these trees have not yet been formulated.

3.1 Survey

Most of Compartment 14 was resurveyed during Stage II by relocating known sites and then walking the ground between them. Areas not surveyed include: Taniwhanui, the steep bush covered slopes and flats on the bend downriver from the ford; the eastern edge of the P. radiata (1966); and the slopes immediately below Kaitieke Pa (N18/82).

All known sites, except N18/130, were relocated and four new sites were recorded (Appendix III):

Site type	Site no.	Grid reference
Terrace and pit	N18/203	017-050
Pits	N18/223	009-047
Find spot	N18/224	009-045
Pit	N18/225	009-052

3.2 Future Management

Most sites in bush in Compartment 14 are already posted, mapped or sketch planned, and the site records have been updated. Therefore no action is required to protect these sites and attention can be focused on the sites located in pines.

Consideration needs to be given by the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee on the future management of the sites in pine along Papatea Road (N18/87,90 and 133) as these are to be included in the Traditional and Historic Reserve and are of major traditional importance. Previous reports (Pierce 1981:6) have recommended ring-barking the pines on N18/87. If this option is to be pursued the sooner it is done the better. However, some other management option may be preferred. Before any action is taken the site needs to be mapped, recorded and photographed in detail.

Sites down-river from Pawakatutu Road should be reinspected at least 3-4 years before logging commences (possibly in about 1995) so that necessary mapping and investigation can be undertaken. Once logged a reassessment of recorded sites will be necessary and most sites should not be replanted with exotic species.

4.0 COMPARTMENT 15

Compartment 15 (Fig. 4; Table 3) consists of a series of south facing steep to easy slopes bounded in the east by the Huaki Stream and in the west by the prominent ridge which demarcates it from Compartment 14.

Recorded archaeological sites are concentrated near the river in the south-eastern area of the compartment which is characterised by basaltic clay-loams.

The first archaeological site recorded in Compartment 15 was Kaitieke Pa, N18/82. Fieldwork involving site management and research have continued more recently with the ringbarking of more than 200 P. elliotii on and adjacent to Kaitieke Pa, N18/82 (Coster 1979), intensive surveys (Papworth 1980; Pollock 1982; Taylor and Sutton 1985), the permanent marking of 4 sites (Charters 1982b; Taylor and Sutton 1985), the experimental logging of site N18/142 (Pierce 1982), a test excavation on N18/140 (Taylor and Sutton 1985), and the mapping of several sites (Charters 1982b; Taylor and Sutton 1985).

In Compartment 15 one logging skid and about 5.7ha of land planted in P. elliotii (1942) are to be included in the archaeological reserve.

4.1 Survey

One new site was recorded in Compartment 15 during Stage III of the project. This was the findspot of three stone flakes; one each of obsidian, yellow chert, and red jasper. The findspot, GR 022-060, was

Archaeological Site Location Map.

FIG. 4

Cpt. 14

Correct as at 9 / 87

WIPO

.Cpt. 15

SCALE 1:10000

TABLE 3 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN COMPARTMENT 15

NEW METRIC NUMBER SITE	OLD IMPERIAL SITE NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	CURRENT AUTHORITY	LOGGING DATE	POSTED	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0151	N18/82 Kaitieke	Pa	Scrub Ring barked <i>Pinus elliottii</i> (1942)	R	1985/2	1988-89	2 posts 1979	Over 200 pines surrounding the pa were ringbarked in 1979
006/0154	N18/85	Stone structures River flat	Bush <i>Pinus elliottii</i> (1942)	R	1985/2	1988-89	1 post 1982 3 posts 1985	Mapped (Charlton 1982) Test excavations (Taylor n.d.) See Appendix III
006/0161	N18/92	6 pits	Scrub in firebreak	A	-	-	2 posts 1985	Sketch mapped 1985. Firebreak recut and stray pines cleared 1986.
006/0205	N18/138	13 stone heaps	<i>Pinus elliottii</i> (1942)	R	1985/3	1987-88	-	Mapped 1985. Understorey cleared 1986
006/0206	N18/139	20 stone heaps	Bush	R	1985/3 Not needed	-	1 post 1982	Bush edges and individual features marked 1985
006/0207	N18/140	20 stone heaps	Bush <i>Pinus elliottii</i> (1942)	R	1985/33	1986-87	1 post 1982 2 post 1985	Features cleared and mapped in 1985. Test excavations 1985. Understorey felled. Partially logged 1987.
006/0208	N18/141	1 pit	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1980)	-	-	logged 1982	-	Not relocated. Assumed to be destroyed by track construction.
006/0209	N18/142	3 pits 1 terrace findspot	Thick scrub	A	-	logged 1982	1 post 1982	Findspot of adze and flakes 1982, 1985, 1986. Site planned 1980
-	N18/180	2 terraces 1 stone hearth	Bush	R	-	-	1 post 1985	Hearth planned and photographed 1985
-	N18/233	Findspot	On track	R	-	-	-	New site 1987 See Appendix IV GR 022-060

between N18/138 and N18/181 (See Appendix IV).

Two small stone flakes were picked up on the ridge above N18/142, a previously recorded find spot (Taylor and Sutton 1985: Appendix III).

4.2 Protection

Tags bearing the NZAA site numbers were attached to permanent posts at sites N18/85, 92, 137, 140, and 180.

Naturally regenerated pines were removed from N18/92 and a vehicle track cut outside the site perimeter.

A large tree which had fallen and knocked over a permanent post on N18/140 was removed and the post restored to its original position.

4.3 Modification

Most forest development work planned for compartment 15 in 1985-87 did not proceed. However, a trial logging was undertaken on one stonework site, N18/140, using a FS logging specialist, Don Taingahue, and an FS gang. Over 120 trees were direction felled and removed from the site and its perimeter. Damage occurred to an area of modified soils on the western edge of the site where it was necessary to haul logs off the site. One stone heap was also damaged when trees fell the wrong way into the bush. Recovery of detailed archaeological information from the damaged features has yet to be undertaken.

Undergrowth was cut down amongst the pines on sites N18/138 and part of 140 to help prevent damage to archaeological features during future

logging.

4.4 Investigations

Investigations were carried out on one site, N18/85, during Stage III to determine the extent and significance of possible features on two flat areas adjacent to the main area of stonework at the site. No evidence of modification of soil was revealed on the upper flat although a small stone heap was present. However, a garden soil was discovered on the lower flat. A transect through an area of stone immediately below Papatea Road was also cleared to determine if it had been modified. This appeared to be entirely natural.

4.5 Future Management

Logging should proceed and be completed in Compartment 15 over the next two seasons (1987-89). Further logging of P. elliotii (1942) on site N18/140 is necessary to clear all pines from the site and supervision by archaeologists will be necessary. The site and reserve boundaries will need remarking after logging.

Both sites N18/82 and 92 are outside areas planted in pine but could be affected by logging if care is not taken. Archaeological supervision is desirable.

N18/82, Kaitieke Pa should be mapped in the near future.

Features damaged during the logging of N18/140 need to be investigated.

5.0 COMPARTMENTS 23, 27 AND 38 -THE KAWERUA COAST

Kawerua and the Waipoua Coast (Figs. 5 to 7; Table 4) have considerable Maori and European histories.

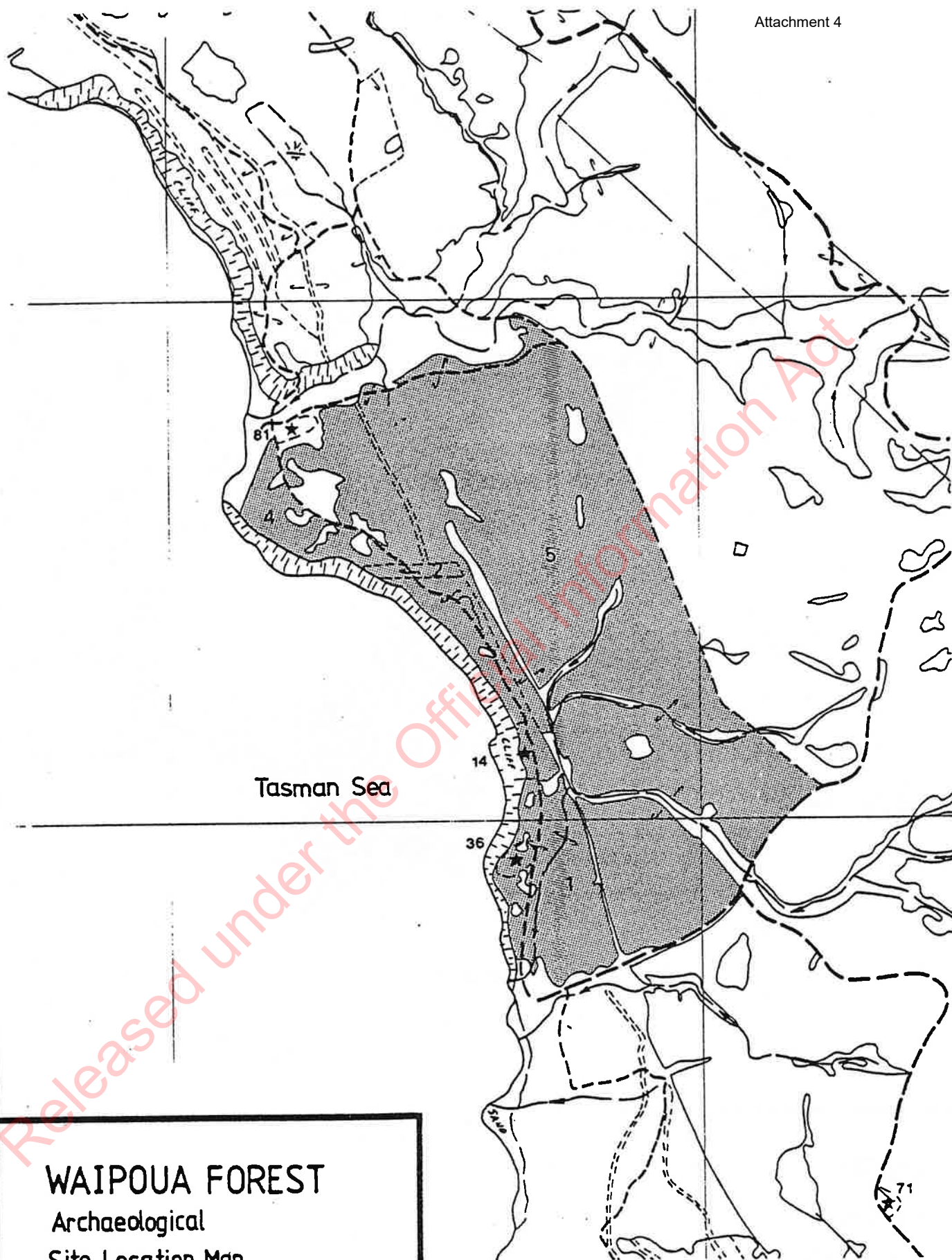
Specific localities at Kawerua are associated with Maori tradition including the Mahuhu canoe and the ancestors Rongomai and Whakatau (N. Nathan and R. Paniora pers. com. Also see Appendix V. Most of these locations have not been recorded as archaeological sites.

At Kawerua, archaeological remains are less conspicuous than in the Waipoua River valley, but as the main archaeological survey took place following burn-offs and before pine planting many sites were located (Coster and Johnston 1980).

Coastal sites have suffered from damage and destruction -from both natural erosion and forestry development. No pre-European sites on the coast remain intact and protected. This is not consistent with the aim of preserving a representative proportion of sites for scientific reasons, nor with the high Maori traditional values along the coast.

The sites recorded along the coast, mainly middens and pa, are site types that are rare in the Waipoua River valley. The two pa, Owetenga, N18/14, at Kawerua, and Pakiri, N18/73, at the mouth of the Wairau River, are the only two pa on the seashore between Hokianga South Head and Maunganui Bluff. Both pa have suffered damage from past bulldozing, particularly Owetenga.

Only seven coastal sites, including the two pa, were rated "A"(Coster



Tasman Sea

WAIPOUA FOREST
Archaeological
Site Location Map

FIG. 5

Correct as at 9 / 87

WIPO

Cpt. 23

SCALE 1:10000

Tasman Sea

WAIPOUA FOREST Archaeological Site Location Map

FIG. 6

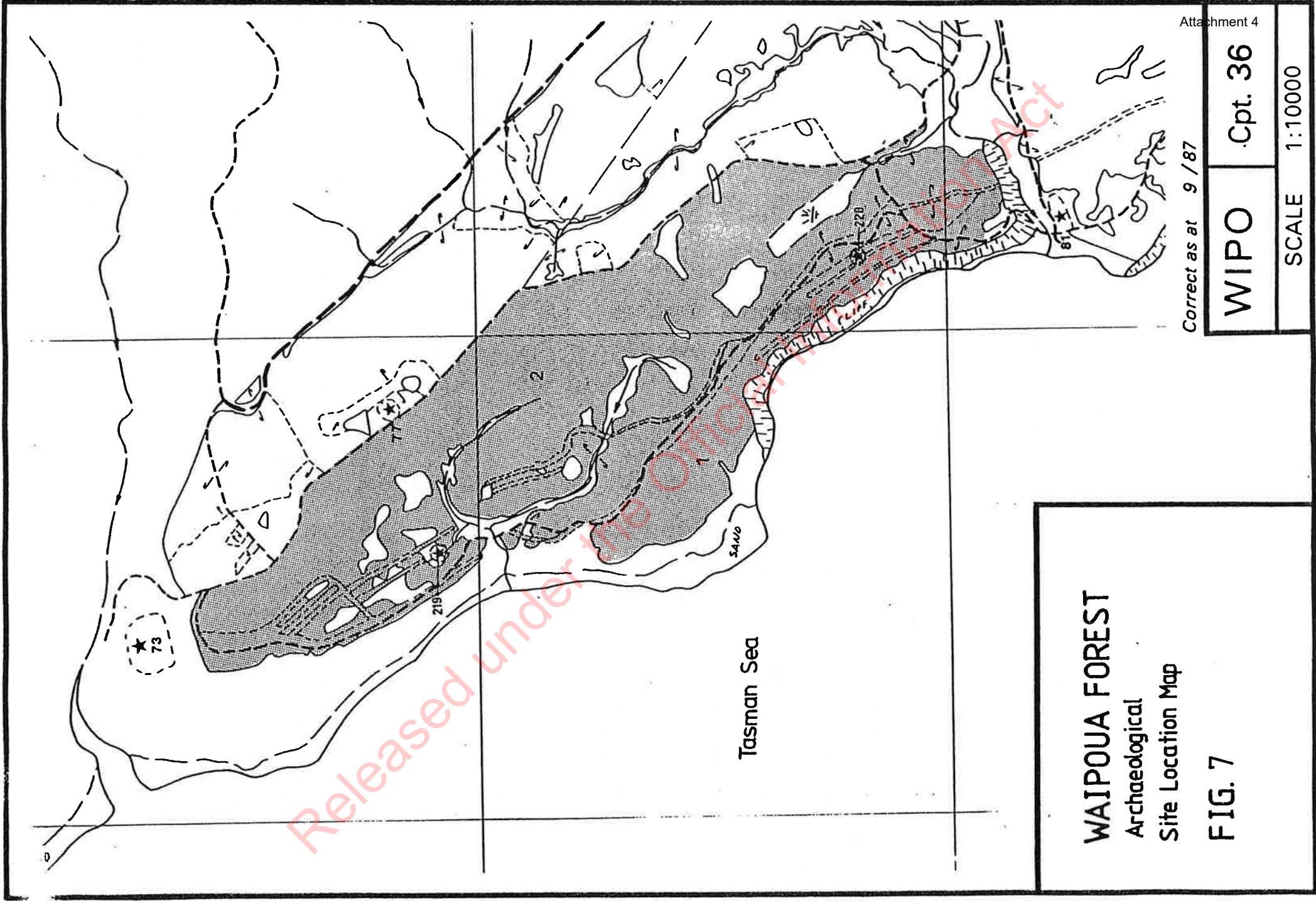
Correct as at 9 / 87

WIPO

Cpt. 27

SCALE

1:10000



Correct as at 9 / 87

WIPO

Cpt. 36

SCALE 1:10000

TABLE 4 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES ON THE KAWEKUA COAST

COMPARTMENTS 23, 27 AND 36

Attachment 4

NEW METRIC NUMBER	OLD IMPERIAL NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	AUTHORITY PERMIT	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0096	N18/14 Owetonga	Pa	<i>Pinus pinaster</i> (1951)	A	-	-	3 posts 1979	Posts removed by vandals 1985.
006/0114	N18/34	Hearth stones	Coastal scrub	C	1981/21	-	-	Not relocated. Possibly destroyed. Midden visible
006/0115	N18/35	Ovenstones	-	C	1981/21	-	-	Probably destroyed by erosion. Not relocated.
006/0116	N18/36	Midden, terrace	<i>Pinus pinaster</i> (1951)	A	-	-	2 posts 1979	Samples (Spencer 1969; Puch 1974). Serious erosion is rapidly destroying the site.
006/0117	N18/37	Midden	Foreshore dune	A	-	-	-	Eroded. Sampled (Puch 1974)
006/0118	N18/38	Middens	Foreshore	A	-	-	-	Eroded. Sampled (Puch 1974)
006/0121	N18/47	Gumholes	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1978)	C	1978/8	-	-	-
006/0133	N18/64	4 terraces	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1977)	C	1981/21	-	-	Not able to be relocated at present
006/0134	N18/65	1 terrace	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1977)	C	1981/21	-	-	Not able to be relocated at present
006/0135	N18/66	? terrace	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1977)	C	1981/21	-	-	Not able to be relocated at present
006/0136	N18/67	Terrace ? pit	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1977)	C	1981/21	-	-	Not able to be relocated at present
006/0137	N18/68	3 terraces	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1977)	C	1981/21	-	-	Not able to be relocated at present
006/0140	N18/71	7 pits	Not planted	A	-	-	4 posts 1979	Visited 1986.
006/0141	N18/72	Midden (post-European)	Excluded from ripping and planting	B	1978/8	-	-	Not relocated.
006/0142	N18/73 Pakiri	Pa	Thick coastal scrub	A	-	-	3 posts 1979	-
006/0143	N18/74	Midden (?Post- European)	Road edge	C	1979/3	-	-	Bulldozed
006/0144	N18/75	Midden	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1979)	C	1979/3	-	-	Ripped
006/0145	N18/76	Midden (Post-European)	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1979)	C	1979/3	-	-	Ripped. European artefacts collected.
006/0146	N18/77	Hut site Midden (Post-European)	Coastal scrub? Not planted	B	1979/3	-	-	-

TABLE 4 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES ON THE KAWERUA COAST

Attachment 4

COMPARTMENTS 23, 27 AND 36 CONTINUED

NEW METRIC NUMBER	OLD IMPERIAL NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	AUTHORITY PERMIT	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0147	N18/78	Midden (Post-European)	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1979)	C	1979/3	-	-	Ripped. Artefacts collected.
006/0148	N18/79	Midden	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1979)	C	1979/3	-	-	Bulldozed
006/0149	N18/80	Findspot	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1979)	C	1979/3	-	-	Bulldozed
006/0150	N18/81	Midden	Scrub?	C	1981/21	-	-	Bulldozed
006/0164	N18/95	Burial Cave	Scrub	A	1980/14	-	Post	Gazetted as Wahitapu Remains to Pahinui
006/0165	N18/96	Midden	Foreshore dune	C	-	-	-	Eroding
006/0166	N18/97	Midden (Post-European)	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1980)	C	-	-	-	Eroding onto track
006/0221	N18/98	Midden	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1980)	C	1980/40	-	-	Ripped
006/0167	N18/99	Midden (Post-European)	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1980)	C	1980/40	-	-	Bulldozed
-	N18/191	Findspot	Sand dune Sparse vegetation	-	-	-	-	Eroding. Continuing damage by 4WD vehicles.
-	N18/192	Midden	<i>Pinus pinaster</i> (1948)	-	-	-	-	Bulldozed. Photographs, sketch plan 1985
-	N18/219	Midden/ findspot	Coastal scrub	-	1986/18	-	-	Bulldozed. Sketch planned. New site 1986. All remains were excavated 1986. See Appendix V
-	N18/220	Findspot	Coastal scrub	-	-	-	-	Bulldozed. New site 1986. See Appendix V
-	N18/221	Midden	<i>Pinus pinaster</i> (1950)	-	-	-	-	Bulldozed. Now site 1986 See Appendix V
-	N18/222	Midden	<i>Pinus pinaster</i> (1950)	-	-	-	-	Bulldozed. New site 1986 See Appendix V

and Johnson 1980), meaning that they should be permanently protected. All three protected middens have suffered from serious erosion. In particular, N18/36, probably the deepest midden on the coast, with a wide range of rocky and sandy shore shellfish and fish (Puch 1974; Spencer 1969), is rapidly eroding out from the cliff edge. A major portion of the site has slumped into the sea over recent years and unless remedial action is taken the site is likely to be lost.

A Maori fishing reserve was set aside at Koutu in 1876 and this was demarked by the FS in 1952 (Appendix V).

The modern whanau gatherings along the coast in summer, and the abundance of middens and other archaeological sites in the vicinity reflect the importance of Kawerua as a traditional source of kaimoana to the tangata whenua.

Kawerua was also the site of an historic gumstore, post office, hotel, and homestead providing for up to 600 gum diggers working the gumfields as well as other traffic along the coast (which once was the main north-south route). Gum was shipped out via the weekly Rawene to Onehunga steamer.

In 1902 after the wreck of the S.S. Ventnor the bodies of 32 Chinese goldminers (which were being shipped back to China for burial) were buried just south of the Kawerua hotel but the exact location is not recorded.

No archaeological remains were located on the summit of Pukenuiorongo,

a place of traditional Maori importance (Coster and Johnston 1980). However, the traditional importance of the hill and general area and the presence of other sites in the vicinity (Leahy and Walsh 1977) suggest that the archaeological importance should be reassessed.

An adze from Kawerua, (in the Bollons collection of the National Museum, Wellington) collected about the beginning of the century, is an early form (Type 4A: Duff 1956) and probably derives from early Maori settlement in the area, as may other artefacts found in the vicinity (Coster and Johnston 1980:4).

Kawerua has also been recently recommended to be included in a marine reserve (Forester 1985:24).

Land at Kawerua and along the coast are proposed to be transferred to both the new Forest Corporation and the DOC. Final allocations have yet to be made.

5.1 Survey

During Stage II survey along the coast focused on walking V-bladed lines bulldozed for planting shelter belts of Norfolk Pine (Araucaria heterophylla), karo(Pittosporum crassifolium), flax(Phormium tenax) and Norfolk Island hibiscus (Lagunaria pattersonii). During 1985 and 1986 bulldozed transects were walked from above the Waipoua River to the Wairau mouth (except in the stream gullies)(See also Taylor and Sutton 1985:29). Four new sites were discovered during Stage II (Appendix V):

Site type	Site no.	Grid reference
Midden/findspot	N18/219	945-091
Findspot	N18/220	952-082
Midden	N18/221	965-057
Midden	N18/222	967-054

Other sites, N18/14, 36, 73, and 191 were relocated and their condition checked.

Three obsidian flakes and one other stone flake were found on the surface at N18/220.

5.2 Protection

During Stage II inspection of site N18/14, Owetenga Pa, revealed that the permanent posts marking the site had been removed along with one post from the associated terrace and midden, N18/36. The other post from N18/36 had been thrown into the gully across the road but was restored to its original hole.

N18/36 is eroding into the sea and much of the site has disappeared. As this is the only remaining site of its type recorded on the coast, steps to control the erosion should be undertaken or an investigation would be desirable before the site disappears.

A single post on, Pakiri, N18/73 was relocated only with difficulty as the site is now under very dense scrub. No damage has occurred to this site.

The intact portion of N18/191 is eroding, partly because motor vehicles are causing erosion by running up the steep slopes off the track which crosses the dunes. This should be discouraged, not only to protect the site, but also because birds nest on the sand in the vicinity. Replanting the area in species such as pingao (Desmoschoenus spiralis) may be appropriate.

5.3 Modification

All four new sites listed in section 5.1 were discovered after disturbance by the V-blading of shelter belt planting lines. Retrospective authorities to modify these sites have not been applied for from the HPT.

5.4 Investigations

The midden from site N18/219 was sieved in the field and removed for analysis. Preliminary sorting showed that shellfish, particularly pupu or cats'eye (Turbo smaragdus) was most abundant. Fish bones from snapper, labrids, and at least one other species were present. Also identified were several bones from a dog, a tui bone, and bones from a larger unidentified bird.

A broken portion of the blade of a black argillite adze, most probably originally a 1A type (Duff 1956:146-156b), was found near the midden.

5.5 Future Management

Greater attention needs to be given to increasing the protection given to coastal sites, and/or recovering information where practical

protection can not be achieved.

Protection and excavation of N18/36 should be given priority as large middens are rare along the coast and this site is eroding rapidly. An investigation would provide valuable information on current questions relating to the management of sea-food at Kawerua.

Archaeological and natural remains can be seen eroding from the cliff tops along the coast and recording and sampling of these remains would be useful. Samples from numerous charcoal horizons and concentrations would be informative for identifying and dating a coastal vegetation sequence.

A reassessment of sites at Pukenuiorongo and the surrounding area is necessary.

A decision on the replacement of the posts removed from N18/14 and 36 needs to be made. If the posts are replaced it may be wise to set them in concrete or use some other kind of foot to hinder their removal again.

Future management of the coastal lands should give higher priority to the considerable traditional, archaeological and historical values.

6.0 COMPARTMENT 58

Compartment 58 consists of a series of south facing ridges, valleys and steep gullies running from the Kauri Sanctuary in the north to the Waipoua River (Fig. 6; Table 5). The soils are mainly Waipoua clays and loams derived from the basaltic sub-stratum.

Vegetation is thick indigenous bush which remains unmodified only in parts. On the flats and near the river the bush has been cleared for gardening by the Maori within the past few hundred years. The forest has been described as bearing "a strong resemblance to the secondary growth on soil degraded by cultivation in lowland tropical rainforest" (Beveridge 1959). Areas also have undergone considerable modification during kauri planting trials (See Appendix VI).

Little archaeological work has been undertaken in Compartment 58 although abundant archaeological remains occur there. Inspections and surveys by FS archaeologists have identified many new sites and expanded previous site descriptions (Coster and Johnston 1979; Papworth 1980; Moore 1984).

6.1 Survey

Attention was focused during Stage II on the eastern portion of this compartment in an area of bush dominated by very large and mature kanuka which extends north from the river. This area was chosen as it was known to contain a number of unrecorded sites and because it could be easily delineated on the ground and aerial photographs.

Thirteen new sites were recorded during Stage II (Appendix VII):

WAIPOUA FOREST

Archaeological
Site Location Map

FIG. 8 CPT 58

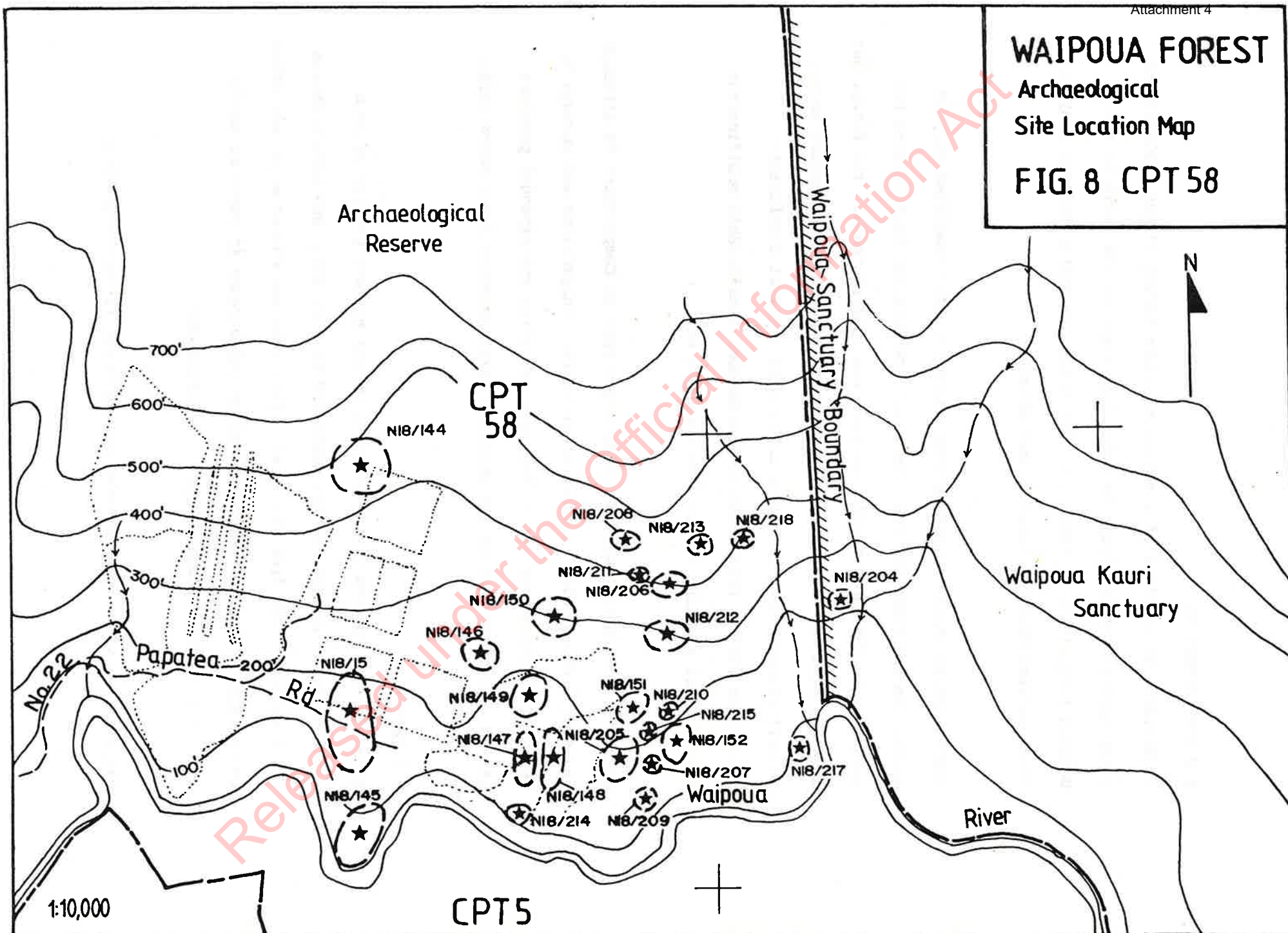


TABLE 5 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN COMPARTMENT 58

Attachment 4

NEW METRIC NUMBER	OLD IMPERIAL NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	HIT AUTHORITY	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0097	N18/15	Stone structures pits, terraces	Bush	K	-	NA	1 post 1986	Sketch plan
006/0211	N18/144	3 pits 30 stone heaps	Bush, scrub	K	-	NA	-	-
006/0212	N18/145	20 stone heaps	Bush	R	-	NA	-	-
006/0213	N18/146	16 stone heaps	Bush	K	-	NA	1 post 1986	-
006/0214	N18/147	11 pits	<i>Eucalyptus sp.</i>	K	-	NA	1 post 1986	Site plan 1986. See Appendix VII
006/0215	N18/148	9 pits	<i>Eucalyptus sp.</i>	K	-	NA	-	Site plan 1986. See Appendix VII
006/0216	N18/149	Stone heaps	Bush. Swamp.	K	-	NA	-	-
006/0217	N18/150	pits, terraces	Bush	R	-	NA	-	Sketch plan 1980.
006/0218	N18/151	2 pits	Bush. Large Kanuka	K	-	NA	1 post 1986	Site plan 1986. See Appendix VII
006/0219	N18/152	2 pits	Bush. Large Kanuka	K	-	NA	1 post 1986	Site plan 1986. See Appendix VII
-	N18/205	7 pits 1 terrace 1 stone heap	Bush	K	-	NA	-	New site, planned 1986. See Appendix VII
-	N18/206	10 pits	Bush	K	-	NA	-	New site, planned 1986. See Appendix VII
-	N18/207	Terrace with stone hearth	Bush. Large Kanuka	K	-	NA	-	New site, sketch planned, 1986. See Appendix VII
-	N18/208	Stone heaps	Bush	K	-	NA	-	New site, 1986. Damage by pig rooting 1987. See Appendix VII
-	N18/209	1 terrace	Bush	K	-	NA	-	New site, planned 1986. See Appendix VII
-	N18/210	1 terrace	Bush. Large Kanuka	K	-	NA	-	New site 1986. Damage by pig rooting 1987 See Appendix VII
-	N18/211	3 pits	Bush	R	-	NA	-	New site 1986 Pigs using pit as wallow. See Appendix VII
-	N18/212	7 stone heaps	Bush	R	-	NA	-	New site, sketch planned 1986. See Appendix VII
-	N18/213	2 pits 1 terrace	Bush	K	-	NA	-	New site, sketch planned 1986. See Appendix VII

Released under the Official Information Act

TABLE 5 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN COMPARTMENT 58 CONTINUED

Attachment 4

NEW METRIC NUMBER	OLD IMPERIAL NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	HPT AUTHORITY	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
-	N18/214	2 pits	Riveredge bush	R	-	NA	-	New site, planned 1986. See Appendix VII
-	N18/215	4 stone heaps	Bush	R	-	NA	-	New site, sketch plan. See Appendix VII
-	N18/217	7 stone heaps	Bush	R	-	NA	-	New site, sketch planned 1986. See Appendix VII
-	N18/218	1 pit	Bush	R	-	NA	-	New site, sketch planned 1986. See Appendix VII

Released under the Official Information Act

Site type	Site no.	Grid reference
Pits and terrace	N18/205	036-059.5
Pits and terrace	N18/206	037-063
Terrace with a stone hearth	N18/207	037-063
Stone heaps	N18/208	036-064
Terrace	N18/209	037-059
Terrace	N18/210	037.5-061
Pits	N18/211	036-063.5
Stone heaps	N18/212	036-062
Pits and terrace	N18/213	037-064
Pits	N18/214	034-059
Stone heaps	N18/215	037-061
Stone heaps	N18/217	040-061
Pit	N18/218	038-065

Other areas in Compartment 58 were not surveyed and all known sites were not relocated. Many sites in this compartment remain unrecorded.

During Stage III only one day was spent in Compartment 58, inspecting sites and collecting karaka seed. The karaka seed is to be sown in the logged areas within the Traditional and Historical Reserve.

6.2 Protection

Six pit sites were permanently marked with tanalised fence posts bearing a tag with their NZAA site number. These form a series of identifiable points from which other sites can be relocated.

No sites in this compartment are at risk from further development, although pigs have caused widespread damage to both archaeological sites and indigenous bush through rooting up the ground. If hunters fail to decrease the pig population within a short time further measures should be considered.

Both site N18/147 and 148 are planted in Eucalyptus sp. and removal of some or all of these trees may be necessary to protect the sites.

6.3 Future Management

This area warrants further detailed scientific study to provide an understanding of past relationships between Maori forest usage including clearance for gardening, tree management and natural vegetation sequences.

Pigs present a major threat to sites and further measures to control them will be necessary.

Survey, recording and permanent marking of sites in this compartment should continue as time and circumstances permit.

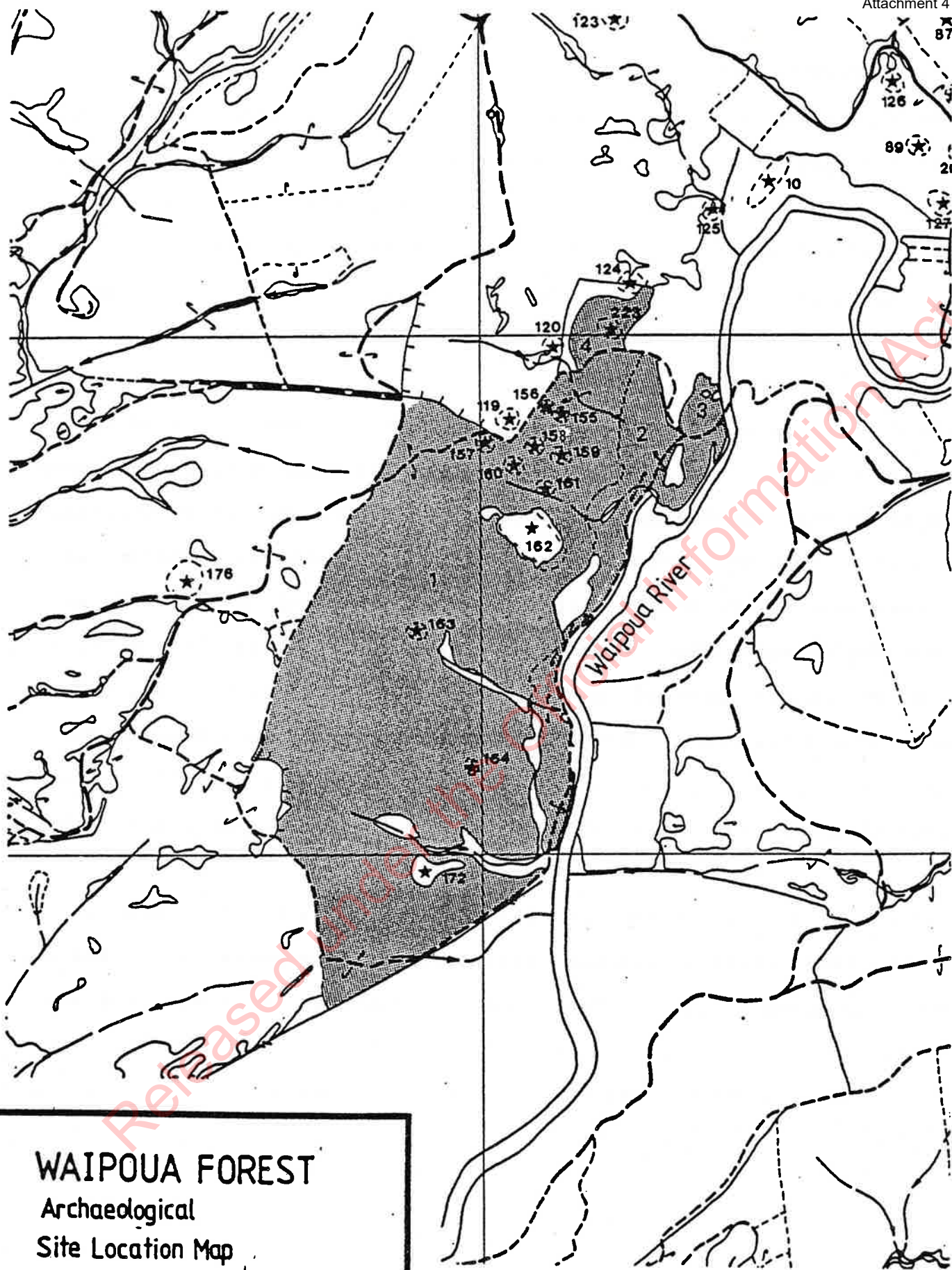
However, as no other development in this compartment is planned only limited continuing management to prevent further damage to archaeological features by new trees is necessary.

7.0 COMPARTMENT 65

The topography of Compartment 65 (Fig. 7; Table 6) consists of steep south facing sand ridges with some moderate slopes and small gullies above the riverside flat. The soils on the slopes are a poor consolidated sand but fertile alluvium occurs on the flats which were farmed by the Pumpi's before they were acquired by FS. A collapsed whata remains beside the forest track on the river flat.

Prior to burning off and pine planting, the compartment was examined "only marginally" by archaeologists as it was under very dense manuka up to 3m high which made visibility and progress through it difficult (Papworth 1980:2). Subsequent to burning, but prior to planting, the compartment was resurveyed with good visibility and 18 new sites were recorded (Pierce 1981). However, the locations of sites N18/165 to 172 are incorrectly recorded. Accurate relocation has not been possible and these sites are not marked on the map (Fig.7). Considerable damage by machinery was reported on sites N18/161, 170, 171, and 172. Sites N18/155 to 161 and 163 to 171 were then planted in P.radiata in 1981.

Old tracks down the ridge near the Compartment 14 boundary are visible on the 1956 aerial photograph (1011/C6). These probably follow the old foot and horse route from Whenuahou settlement to the coast, and may be the route described by Polack in the 1830's (Polack 1838:74). These tracks are recorded as site N18/157 but were erroneously described as possible gum digging trenches.



WAIPOUA FOREST
Archaeological
Site Location Map

FIG. 9

Correct as at 9 / 87

WIPO

Cpt. 65

SCALE 1:10000

NEW METRIC SITE NUMBER	OLD IMPERIAL SITE NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	AUTHORITY PERMIT	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0226	N18/155	Midden	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	-
006/0227	N18/156	Terrace	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	-
006/0228	N18/157	Trenches	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Probably horse tracks.
006/0229	N18/158	2 pits 2 trenches	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	-
006/0230	N18/159	Terrace Findspot	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Damaged by gumholes
006/0231	N18/160	3 terraces 2 pits Findspot	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	-
006/0232	N18/161	6 pits, 5 terraces findspot	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Machine damage 1981
006/0233	N18/162	8 terraces 10 pits findspots	Not planted scrub	A	-	-	5 posts 20 battens 1982	Planned 1981, 1986. See Appendix VIII. Erosion control is necessary
006/0234	N18/163	Terrace	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	-
006/0235	N18/164	5 pits terraces midden	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Mislocated on FS maps.
006/0236	N18/165	4-5 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Mislocated on FS maps.
006/0237	N18/166	2 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Mislocated on FS maps.
006/0238	N18/167	3-5 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Mislocated on FS maps.
006/0239	N18/168	Findspot	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Mislocated on FS maps.
006/0240	N18/169	2 terraces 3 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Mislocated on FS maps.
006/0241	N18/170	3 pits 3 terraces findspot	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	2000+	-	Machine damage 1981 Mislocated on FS maps.
006/0246	N18/171	8 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1981)	C	-	-	-	Machine damage 1981 Mislocated on FS maps.
006/0242	N18/172	5-8 pits 3 terraces midden findspot	Not planted in pine. Scurb	A	-	-	5 posts 20 battens (1982)	Machine damage 1981
-	-	findspot	On track	-	-	-	-	New site 1987. See Appendix VIII (GR 004-039)

7.1 Survey

Site N18/162 was easily relocated as it is not planted in pine and is clearly marked with posts. Several stone scatters and possible hangi had eroded out on the slope below the pits on the northern spur and these features were planned (Appendix VIII). Two stone flakes were also picked up on the ground surface.

Sites, N18/155, 156 and 158 to 161, on the ridge adjacent to N18/162 were in unthinned P.radiata (1981) and although some features were located the individual sites could not distinguished.

N18/172 which is posted and not planted in pine, can be seen on aerial photographs and from across the river, but was not inspected.

7.2 Protection

The upriver portion of N18/162 (on the northern spur) is eroding badly as revegetation has been poor since burning off. Following thinning and pruning of pines in the area, slash was laid over the eroding surfaces to help regeneration occur. However, it may be necessary to seed the area. The southern spur is covered with thick low scrub which has protected the ground.

7.4 Future Management

N18/162 should be reinspected during the next fieldwork season and if erosion is continuing then seeding with suitable ground cover such as lupin or manuka of the exposed surfaces should be undertaken.

N18/172 should also be inspected to ensure erosion is not damaging the

site.

All other sites in Compartment 65 are planted in pine and should be reassessed toward the end of the current rotation. Detailed planning and, if necessary excavations, should be undertaken on all sites before any further modification occurs. Where warranted sites should then be excluded from future development.

A comprehensive resurvey of the western portion of Compartment 65 will be necessary to accurately relocate the sites.

Released under the Official Information Act

8.0 COMPARTMENT 66

This compartment (Fig.8; Table 7) consists of west facing slopes planted in P. radiata (1966,1980) and a river flat planted in both Eucalyptus sp. (1971,1980) and poplars (Populus sp.)(1967). Areas in scrub include steep slopes and swamps.

Prior to 1961 most of the land was farmed by Nick Yakas, a well known Waipoua personality. The Yaka's house was at the western end of the compartment on a prominent knoll now used by the FS as a road metal dump. Other remains from farming also occur on the flats.

The soils on the hills consist of weathered Waipoua clays and outcrops of basalt overlaid in places by sand. Fertile alluvial clay-loam soils cover the river flats.

Site surveys in Compartment 66 have been limited as there is no immediate threat to the sites. Seven sites were recorded prior to Stage II of the Waipoua Project (Papworth 1980) but only the pit site N18/118 has since received additional attention (Charters and Pierce 1981).

A gundiggers camp was recorded in the compartment near the riverbank during an early survey (Survey Fieldbook 2848) but this has not been relocated.

No modification, protection, or investigation of sites has been undertaken in Compartment 66 except on site N18/112 which is also partially in Compartment 5 (See 2.1 to 2.3).

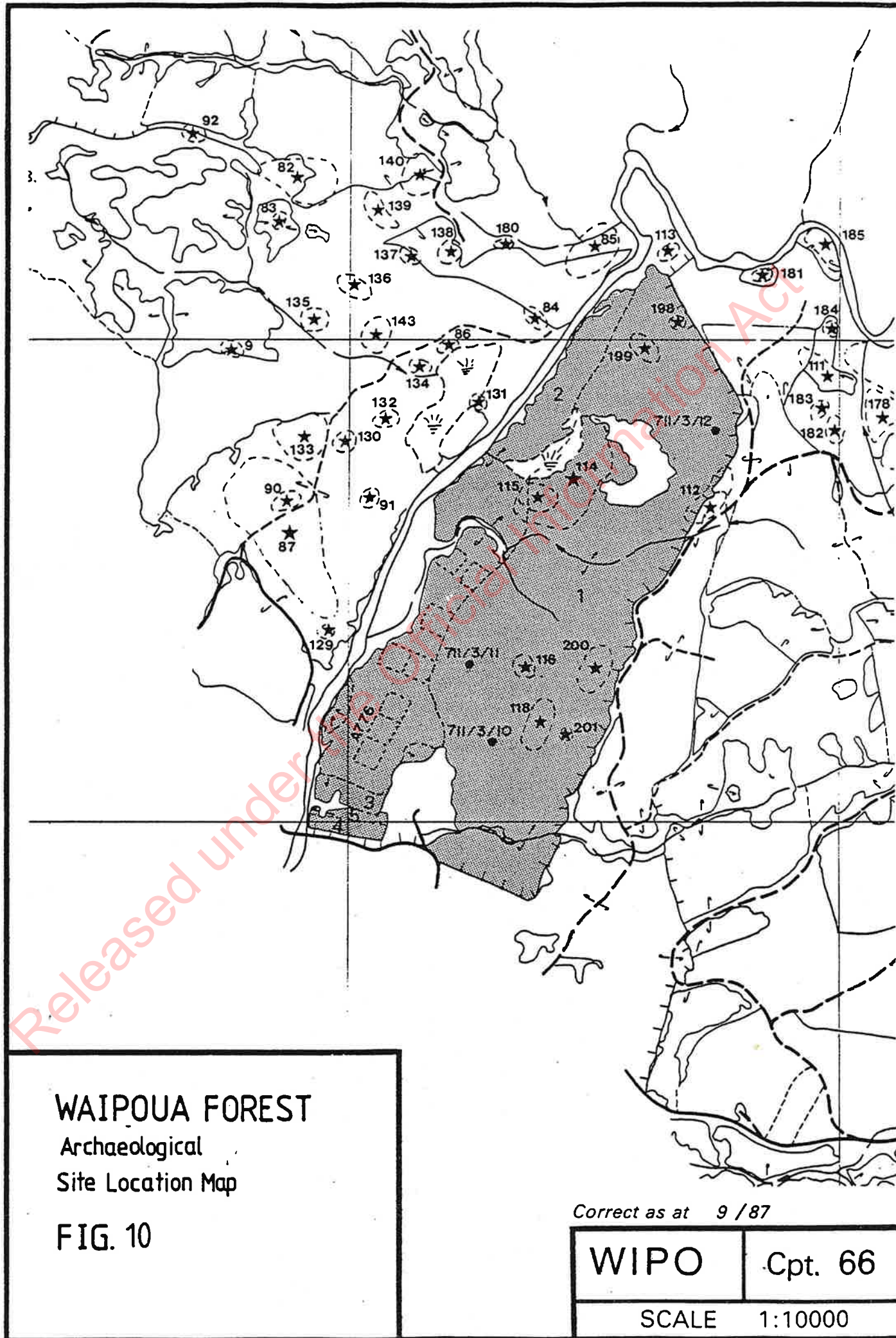


TABLE 7 SUMMARY OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES IN COMPARTMENT 66

NEW METRIC SITE NUMBER	OLD IMPERIAL SITE NUMBER	SITE TYPE	VEGETATION	STATUS*	AUTHORITY PERMIT	LOGGING DATE	POST	MANAGEMENT UNDERTAKEN
006/0180	N18/112	15 pits 1 terrace	Scrub	C	-	Logged	1 post 1986	See Compartment 5 (Section 2)
006/0181	N18/113	Stone faced terrace	Bush below pine	R	-	-	-	See Compartment 5 (Section 2)
006/0182	N18/114	11 stone heaps	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	B	-	1990s	-	Needs to be cleared and reassessed prior to logging. Site is considerably more complex than originally recorded
006/0183	N18/115	8 pits and 5 stone heaps	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966) Scrub	A	-	1990s	-	Enclosed by N18/114 following 1986 inspection
006/0184	N18/116	5 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	C	-	1990s	-	-
006/0222	N18/117	1 pit drain	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	C	-	1990s	-	Probably a natural feature ie., unlikely to be archaeological. Mislocated on map
006/0185	N18/118	35 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	A	1985/33	1990s	-	-
-	N18/198	1 terrace	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	-	-	1990s	-	New site, planned 1986. See Appendix IX
-	N18/199	4 terraces	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	-	-	1990s	-	New site, sketch planned 1986. See Appendix IX
-	N18/200	20-30 stone heaps	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	-	-	1990s	-	New site, 1986. See Appendix IX
-	N18/201	2 pits	<i>Pinus radiata</i> (1966)	-	-	1990s	-	New site, sketch plan 1986. See Appendix IX

8.1 Survey

Ten person days were spent resurveying this compartment during Stage II to allow assessment of the sites. All seven known sites were relocated (Table 8) and four new sites were also recorded (Appendix IX).

Site type	Site no.	Grid reference
Terraces	N18/198	026-057
Terraces	N18/199	025-057
Stone heaps	N18/200	024-051
Pits	N18/201	025-049

Only the slopes in P. radiata (1966) were surveyed in detail. The 1980 plantings which were mainly in sandy soils were unthinned and any possible archaeological features were obscured. Thinnings and thick undergrowth in the 1966 P. radiata made survey difficult and small sites or isolated features may remain undetected.

Site N18/114 extends over a much greater area and contain much more stone work than originally recorded. It includes stone faced terracing.

Site N18/117 is probably a natural slump.

8.2 Future Management

N18/117 should be reassessed to determine if it is natural or cultural in origin. Other sites, including the portion of N18/112 in Compartment 66, should be graded B to permit continuing management of the pines. All sites should be reinspected well before cropping of the trees to enable site mapping, and investigations be undertaken. Ultimately after pine removal and reassessment most sites should be permanently protected.

Released under the Official Information Act

9.0 WAIPOUA KAURI SANCTUARY

The Waipoua Kauri Sanctuary consists of 9105ha of protected kauri forest (See Taylor 1986c: Appendix II).

Archaeological survey in the Sanctuary was undertaken during Stage II to determine the upriver limit of archaeological sites as had been recommended (Coster 1983:7; Papworth 1980:10). No previous surveys for Maori occupation sites had been undertaken in the Sanctuary.

9.1 Survey

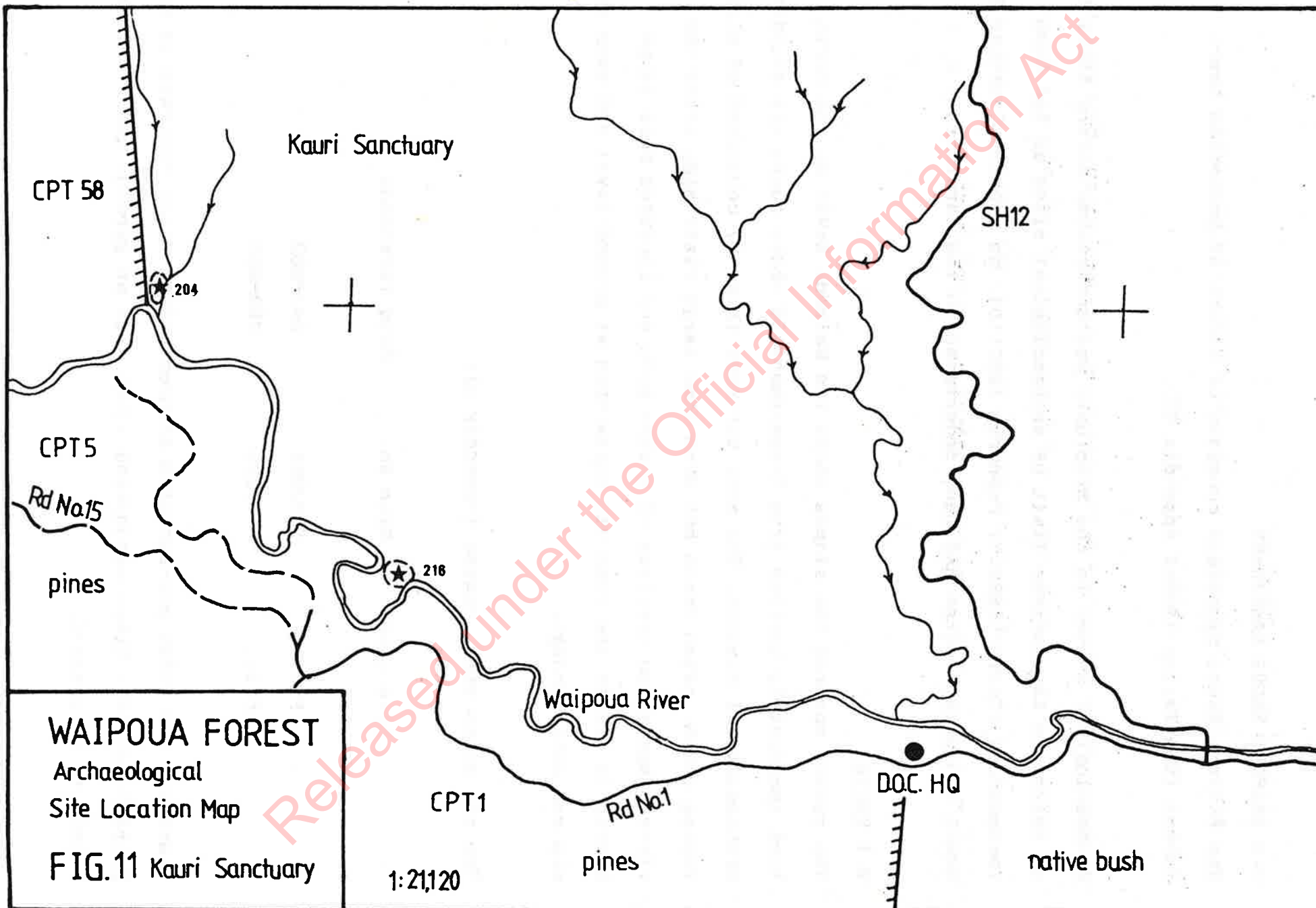
The survey covered the slopes above the Waipoua River on the north bank immediately upriver from Compartment 58 where there are abundant archaeological remains. The area surveyed (Fig. 9) consisted of slopes facing south, often steep but with some large flats high above the river. Vegetation consists of mature bush and includes some large kauri. In places the bush was quite open at ground level and easy to see and walk through.

Two pit sites were located (Appendix X):

Site type	Site No.	Grid reference
Pits	N18/204	041-063
Pits	N18/216	052-050

These are the first pre-European archaeological sites recorded in the Kauri Sanctuary. Other associated sites such as gardens and houses are likely to be present.

09



9.2 Future Management

Several areas between the end of Shag Point Road and the Sanctuary boundary contain mature kanuka stands, suggesting past clearance in the past. No archaeological evidence was located in these areas but a more intensive survey of them would be warranted.

Both new sites should be posted to enable them to be relocated but no further management is recommended, except occasional inspections to ensure that damage by pigs or other agents is not occurring.

Released under the Official Information Act

10.0 WAIRAU RIVER VALLEY

The Wairau River is situated near the northern boundary of the Waipoua Forest (Fig. 10). A brief reconnaissance survey for archaeological sites was made in the Wairau River valley during Stage II following advice from the FS hunters that sites were present in the area.

Previously N18/190, a source for stone used in tool manufacture, was recorded at the river mouth (Taylor and Sutton 1985: Appendix IV).

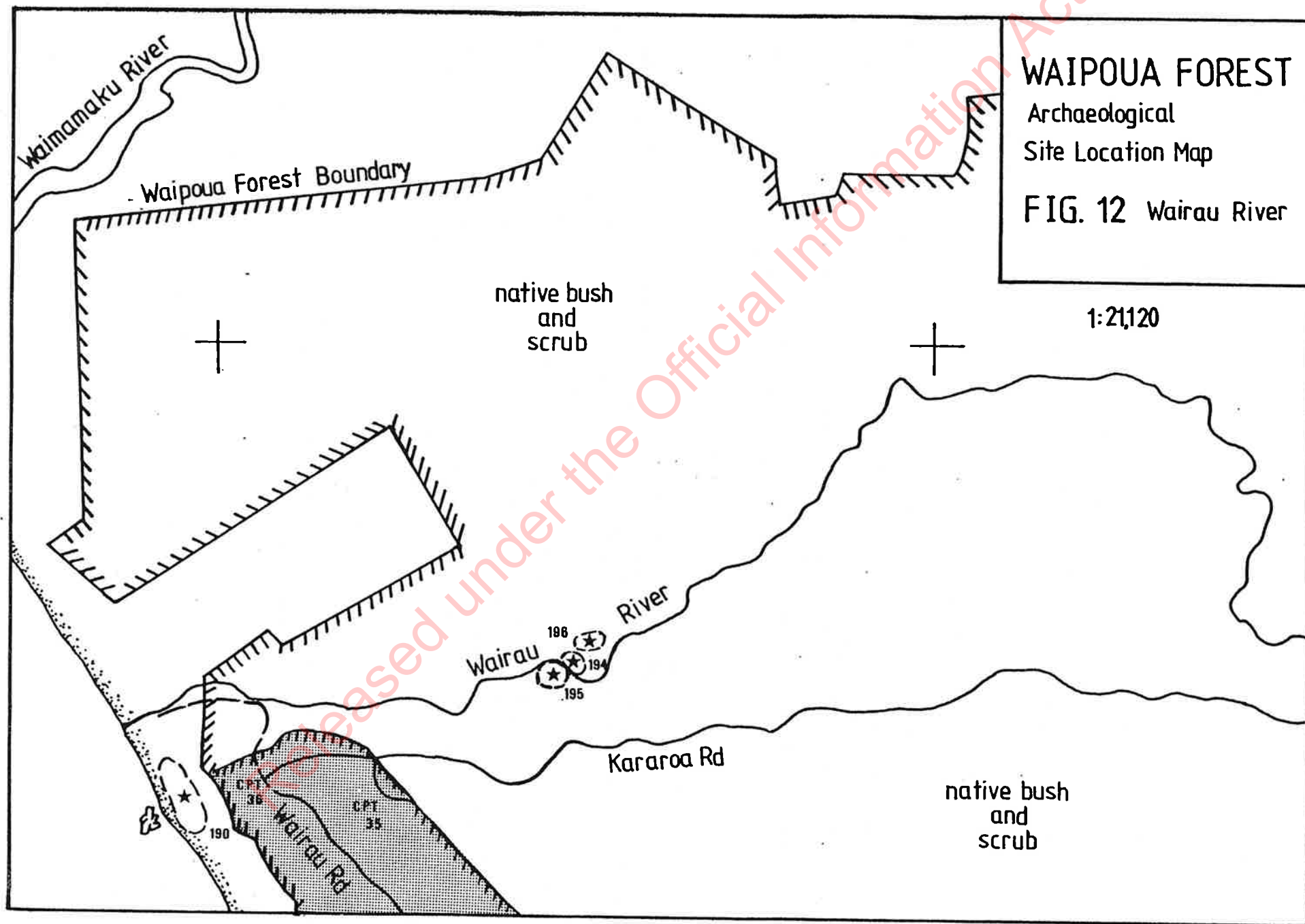
10.1 Survey

The survey was limited to the flats in the narrow river valley which are mainly under regenerating bush. The valley slopes which are steep and covered with thick scrub were not surveyed.

Three sites were located (Appendix XI), all consisting of river flats with stone structures and drains:

Site type	Site no.	Grid reference
Stone heaps and drain	N18/194	961-098
Stone heaps and drain	N18/195	959-098
Stone heaps	N18/196	962-099

These are most likely old gardens and associated sites can be expected to be present. Further downriver from N18/194 on the north bank are more flats in scrub and grass. Large stone heaps there appear likely to be related to modern stock grazing and were not recorded as archaeological sites.



Remains of an old homestead are located near the mouth on the north side of the river.

10.2 Protection

All three sites were marked with posts bearing tags with their NZAA site numbers.

10.3 Future Management

No development is planned for the Wairau River valley apart from possible future walking tracks (Forester 1985:21-22). If a track is developed through the area tangata whenua and archaeologists should be consulted during planning to ensure that no damage occurs to archaeological features.

No other management is recommended except periodic inspections to ensure that damage to sites by wild animals does not occur.

11.0 SUMMARY

The current program of site management, survey, protection and investigation should be continued.

Investigations for both management and research purposes should be continued on those sites which are under the most immediate threat from logging. Historic Places Trust authorities to log require that archaeological excavations are carried out, prior to logging, on a sample of sites.

Logging on or about archaeological sites should be continued only under the supervision of an archaeologist.

Site damage during logging should be continued to be minimised by the use of agreed techniques.

Regular checks will be necessary to ensure that logging on or in the vicinity of sites does not cause erosion.

Areas in pines in Waipoua (eg. Compartments 65 and 66) will continue to require detailed archaeological assessment and investigation prior to logging.

The Waipoua Archaeological Project has been underway for three years now and it is anticipated that it will be three more years before current sites are cleared.

A botanical survey to assess Maori modification of indigenous areas, especially Compartment 58, is essential for the development of an understanding of the past forest and land use.

Pig control will be necessary in areas of indigenous forest if the sites are to be preserved.

A resurvey of part of Compartment 65 is necessary to accurately locate sites.

The Te Roroa Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee should continue to oversee and advise on all work on sites

Consideration by the Te Roroa Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee needs to be given to sites in Pine along Papatea Road.

Greater attention needs to be given to coastal sites, and/or recovering information, where practical protection cannot be achieved.

A higher priority should be given to protecting the considerable traditional Maori, archaeological and historical values of coastal lands.

12.0 REFERENCES

Anderson, A. 1985

Letter to D. Black, Assistant Conservator, F.S., Auckland,
30 June 1985.
File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Black, D. 1985

Letter to A. Anderson, Chairman of the N.Z.H.P.T. Archaeology
Committee. 12-7-85.
N.Z.F.S. File 6/13, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Charters, H.E. 1982a

Archaeological Investigations in Waipoua SF13, Compartment 5.
Interim Report to N.Z.F.S. and N.Z.H.P.T.

Charters, H.E. 1982b

Site Management in Waipoua SF13.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Charters, H.E. and J. Pierce 1981

File note, 3 June 1981, file 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Coster, J. 1979

File note, 25 January 1979, file 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Coster, J. 1983

Archaeological Site Management in the Waipoua River Valley: A Review
and Proposals.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Coster, J. and G. Johnston 1979

Waipoua State Forest 13; Archaeological Site Inspections, March 1979.
File note, 24 March 1979, file 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Coster, J. and G. Johnston 1980

Waipoua State Forest 13: Kawerua Coast 1977-1980.
Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Duff, R. 1956

The Moa-hunter Period of Maori Culture.
Government Printer, Wellington.

Forester, L. 1985

Report on the Proposed Waipoua Ecological Reserve.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Kaikohe.

Forester, L. and D. McKenzie 1987

Indigenous Enclaves Within Northland's Exotic State Forests.
Draft 1987. N.Z.F.S., Kaikohe.

Lawlor, I. 1984

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage One Information Sheet.
Unpublished Information Sheet, File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Lawlor, I. 1986

Report to the H.P.T. Archaeology Committee, Concerning the Survey,
Management and Investigation of Historic Places in the Waipoua River
Valley.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Leahy, A. and W. Walsh 1977

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Site Survey,
Compartments 28 and Pt., 29.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Moore, A. 1984

Waipoua State Forest: Reconnaissance Survey and Site Management 1984
Planting Season.
Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Papworth, M. 1980

Waipoua River Valley, March-April 1980
Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Pierce, J. 1981

Waipoua SF13 (Waipoua River Valley) Cpts 2,4,7,13,15 and 16,
April, 1982.
Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Pierce, J. 1982

Report on Trial Logging on N18/142, Pits/terrace Site, Cpt.,15,
Waipoua SF 13.
File note, 30 March 1982, file 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Polack, J.S. 1838

New Zealand Being a Narrative of Travels and Adventures.
Caper Press, Christchurch.

Pollock, R. 1982

Waipoua SF13. A Survey of Burn Areas In Compartments 2,3,4,13,15 and 16, April 1982.
Unpublished Report, File A478/8, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Puch, G.F. 1974

Midden Analysis of the Waimamaku and Kawerua Coastline, Waipoua Region, Northland.
Tane 20:104-110.

Smith, I.W.G. 1986a

Archaeological Sites of the Waipoua Region: an assessment of their significance and recommendations for further action.
Unpublished Report to N.Z.H.P.T.

Smith, I.W.G. 1986b

Gardening, Gum Digging, and Silviculture in the Waipoua River Valley: preliminary report on excavations at N18/186 and N18/179.

Spencer, J.R.H. 1969

An Archaeological Investigation of a Maori Shell Midden at Kawerua.
Rokiroki 4:1-14.

Taylor, M. 1985

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage II Information Sheet.
Unpublished Report, File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1986a

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project Stage II: Summary of Work Undertaken for Contract 16.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1986b

Waipoua Forest Archaeological Project: Stage III Information Sheet.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1986c

Report on the Proposed Historic and Traditional Reserve in Waipoua State Forest 13.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor, M. 1987

Waipoua Archaeological Project Stage III: Summary of work undertaken.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Taylor ,M. and A. Sutton 1985

Waipoua State Forest 13 Archaeological Project: Stage I Report
Submitted at the Completion of Archaeological Contract No. 13.
Unpublished Report, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee.

Minutes of Meetings Held at Waipoua Forest 1985-86. Transcribed by Ian
Lawlor.
Unpublished Minutes, File 6/13/21/1, N.Z.F.S., Auckland.

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX I

News Reports of the
Waipoua Archaeological Project

EXHIBIT 1

State of the
Federal Reserve System

Released under the Official Information Act

Northern Advocate, Thursday, January 16, 1986, Page 3

Historic sites in the forest

Many archaeological sites in the Waipoua Forest which have lain preserved by a blanket of pine needles for many years are under threat of damage through the logging of the trees which have protected them.

Around 100 known sites in 11 kilometres of the Waipoua Valley are being investigated by a team of archaeologists for the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Trust.

Trust spokesman Mr Ian Hawler, the head archaeologist of the New Zealand Forest Service's Auckland conservancy, says the organisation was first suggested two years ago.

The trust is made up of representatives of the tangata whenua — in this case Te Roroa — the NZ Historic Places Trust, and the Forest Service, with help from other archaeologists.

The trust is doing an initial survey of the sites in Waipoua to see what is there and what work must be done next.

"The Forest Service is prepared to preserve the major sites. So really this year we are investigating the area of the reserve," says Mr Lawler.

Trust member Mr Ian Smith, of Auckland University's anthropology department, led a team of 15 archaeology students to Waipoua in December last year.

The students, together with 10 locals, excavated two main sites in the valley.

"One was a series of Maori gardens — perhaps kumara or taro gardens," Mr Smith says.

MAORI GUMDIGGERS

"We also found a gumdiggers' camp. We knew there was a site but didn't know what it was — we thought perhaps it was a pre-European site.

"We now think it might have been a Maori gumdiggers' site because there was none of the usual European stuff around — such as bottles and tins."

The team of archaeologists currently in the forest is doing three things.

The first is looking for new sites and doing investigations on sites they have examined only briefly.

The second is looking at existing sites which are due for logging, and excavating those sites to see what is there.

The third is looking at ways to log the trees with the least damage to the sites.

"On one hand we have forestry threatening the sites by logging them, but on the other hand the sites have been protected by a blanket of pine needles which has prevented a lot of the usual damage," says Mr Smith.

"For instance, some sites in the Bay of Islands have had cattle or sheep walking on them for the last 100 years or so, which has caused a lot of damage."

Published at AUCKLAND, on [date] 16 APRIL 1986SUBJECT: WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT

NZ Herald Wed 16 April 1986.

Ancient Sites In Northland

Whangarei Staff
Archaeological finds said to be of international significance in the Waipoua Forest in Northland are unlikely to be seen by the public for several years.

About 200 sites, including village complexes, defended pas and stone and earth works dating back 1000 years, on and around the banks of the Waipoua River, have been investigated by the Forest Service during the summer.

Although no carbon dating tests have been completed, a Forest Service archaeologist, Mr Ian Lawlor, said the best evidence showed extensive horticultural operations similar to some 400 years old in the Bay of Plenty. Some of the artefacts uncovered were similar to stone adzes found in Polynesia that dated back 1000 years.

Rectangular stone platforms similar to ones found in the Cook Islands and the remains of houses have also been found.

Importance

The sites are of national and international significance, Mr Lawlor said, "because they are extensive and very well preserved. They are an interesting example of how a tropical people adapted to subtropical and temperate climates, and we will be able to compare one village complex with another

to get ideas about the social structures of the society."

The importance of the sites was realised during an archaeological survey before logging in 1980. Mr Lawlor said the sites were considered more important than the pine trees on and around them, and the trees would be removed using conservation techniques such as aerial wires and helicopter logging.

"The pines were planted in the 1930s and if they are left to grow bigger they are even more likely to do damage when they fall. The best thing to do is to remove them as carefully as we can."

Dignity

Mr Lawlor said that an advisory trust had been set up to advise the Forest Service, including members of the local Te Roroa people, the Forest Service and Historic Places Trust staff. He said the Maori community believed the area had to be presented to the public with full dignity, and until such time as they considered the sites presentable, access would be restricted.

A Te Roroa elder, Mr Ned Nathan, of Dargaville, said he did not want to see crowds of people tramping over the sites.

"It would undo everything the archaeologists are doing and it would contravene our Maori traditions," he said.

Instead, he favoured development and restoration of a few sites for public viewing.

"It will probably be several years — depending on the logging programme and how the field work goes — before paths can be laid down and guides can control where people walk."

Satisfied

"We feel it is important that our children and grandchildren know about this before the public at large, so that they are aware of our history."

"My grandmother would not have agreed to the release of these sites. Imperialism did a lot of harm — people of that generation didn't think our traditional things would be observed, and so information wasn't released. I am very pleased and satisfied that the work is now being done in accordance with our thinking."

He said that it was not part of Maori ethics to investigate places where forebears had lived just to satisfy personal curiosity.

Surprised

"So although we knew the sites were there, nobody of my generation had been on any expeditions to define how far the sites extended — the number of them surprised me."

Although Mr Nathan said he knew the genealogy and names of many of the village complexes, he hoped to find old maps that would help to give information on ones he did not know about.

Maori elder sees change

For Northland Maori elder Ned Nathan, times have changed.

He remembers his grandmother pleading with the authorities not to plant trees on her tribe's sacred ground.

Now, two generations later, Mr Nathan says New Zealand Forest Service staff are doing all they can to heal the wounds and right the wrongs of the past.

Mr Nathan is descended from Chief Manumanu, of the Ngati Whatua tribe, and is an elder of the Te Roroa tribe, which still lives in the Waipoua River valley in the heart of Waipoua Forest. He is a retired businessman and a member of the Waitangi Tribunal.

The archaeological sites which are being re-discovered in Waipoua Forest were inhabited by his ancestors.

"Our ancestors came here about 400 years ago," he said. "It was an ideal site. They found all they needed — rich soil for growing food, wood pigeons and a plentiful supply of shellfish."

"Our chiefs called it Whanau Hou — the New Land. One translation of the name, Waipoua, is 'the water of the shellfish'."

Mr Nathan said before the 1950s relationships between Maoris and pakehas were not good.

"In 1876 my tribe sold 35,000 acres of Waipoua land for £2000 — one shilling and one pence (about 11 cents) an acre.

"The authorities enforced bureaucratic rules.

"I can remember my grandmother and all the elders of their time went to officialdom and begged them not to plant on our sacred sites. It was very humiliating."

Today he describes the relationship between pakeha and Maori as "beautiful" as they work together on arrangements for excavating the old Maori villages and sacred sites.

He describes the Forest Service's officer in charge of Waipoua Forest, Rod Young, as "a very understanding officer."

"There hasn't been the domination of the past," he said. "The change in attitude by officials is impressive. It is so harmonious. Our social attitudes to each other are excellent."

Mr Nathan says evidence from the archaeological dig suggests 3000 to 5000 people previously lived in the Waipoua River valley. Today there are four families of 19 people.

"In the past, one mile inland from the sea, they could catch snapper, there were poa, that is big cockles with a taste between a cockle and a toheroa. There were mussels at the river mouth and prolific gardens of kumara and taro."

For Mr Nathan, unravelling the past from the evidence found at the archaeological sites is "a beautiful feeling."

He is assisting the archaeologists with identifying the pa sites, terraced gardens and stone heaps as they are uncovered.

He says there is little doubt some of the stone heaps which have been uncovered were sacrificial altars.

His ancestors had held ritualistic ceremonies before harvesting or fishing, or any activity involving robbing nature, such as felling a tree to fashion a canoe.

"These ceremonies would have included the sacrifice of enemies and prisoners," said Mr Nathan.

"It's an old Polynesian thing. It must have happened."

He admits he is departing from tradition by accepting these things occurred.

But, as he says: "The time has come to uncover them all."

Mr Nathan is keen to see a trust formed to administer the archaeological sites. Plans are under way to form a trust made up of members from the Maori people, the Forest Service and the Historical Places Trust.

This will put his mind at rest. Because, as he says: "Who is to say future officialdom will have the same humanitarian attitude as those of today?"

"My grandmother and her sisters cried for days over their land."

Extract from " MOST NEW ZEALAND NEWSPAPERS " Newspaper.

Published at N.Z. WIDE, on [date] MARCH-APRIL 1986

SUBJECT: WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT.

Rare forest finds

Rare historical ruins are being uncovered among pine trees in Northland's Waipoua Forest.

The remains of former Maori and European habitation could be between 150 and 600 years old, with some possibly 1000 years old. They cover about 300 hectares and may be the most extensive archaeological find in New Zealand to date.

The pine trees which have sheltered the area for decades are now mature and ready for logging.

Forest ranger in charge of Waipoua Forest, Rod Young, said every tree would be examined before felling to ensure there was a minimum of damage to the historic remains. A specialist crew would be trained to do the felling.

The Forest Service plans to set aside the main archaeological area, along the lower slopes and river terraces of the Waipoua River

Valley, as an archaeological reserve.

An advisory trust is being formed to manage the site.

The advisory trust will be made up of district Maori people of the Te Roroa hapu of the Ngati Whatua tribe, who have inhabited the area for centuries, as well as Forest Service and Historic Places Trust personnel.

Some Maori people are assisting with the archaeological excavations.

Auckland Forest Service archaeologist Ian Lawlor says the finds, which appear to include ancient Maori villages, are of international significance.

A stone adze, of a very early form, suggests settlement in the valley could go back 1000 years.

"Protection of the sites will come ahead of commercial contract logging," said Mr Lawlor.

The excavations have revealed elaborately constructed stonework terraces, kumara pits, taro gardens and some unusual drainage systems.

Among recent finds was the hearth of a house, a rectangular stone structure, found on a raised area in the forest.

Perhaps the most unusual finds have been rectangular stonework platforms which Maori elder, Ned Nathan identifies as sacred altars used in ritualistic ceremonies.

The altars are at the Papatea site, "the place of divinity," which, Mr Nathan says, is regarded as an ancient and significant location.

The altars would have been used for making sacrifices prior to planting, harvesting, fishing or tree-felling — any activity involving robbing nature, he said.

The altars would probably also have been used for human sacrifices of enemies and prisoners.

Waipoua Forest archaeologist

Michael Taylor, who is supervising on-site excavations, says many aspects of the sites are unique, partly because they have been in the forest and have not been farmed over.

"The pine forest has done only limited damage," he said. "It has probably preserved the ruins.

"The archaeologists are trying to work independently from history or legend.

"It will not be until more excavations have been done that we will get a better knowledge of what was here."

Old gumdiggers' camps had also been uncovered, said Mr Taylor, along with clay pipes, fire scoops and gum scrapings.

The natural setting of the sites, among both native

and pine forests, added mystique to the finds. The uncovering of these remnants of the past would tell a lot about how the people had lived many years ago.

Mr Taylor said the Forest Service was doing everything possible to ensure Maori people were involved in decision-making about logging the trees and the future of the sites.

On logging, Mr Young said all the options for removing the trees without

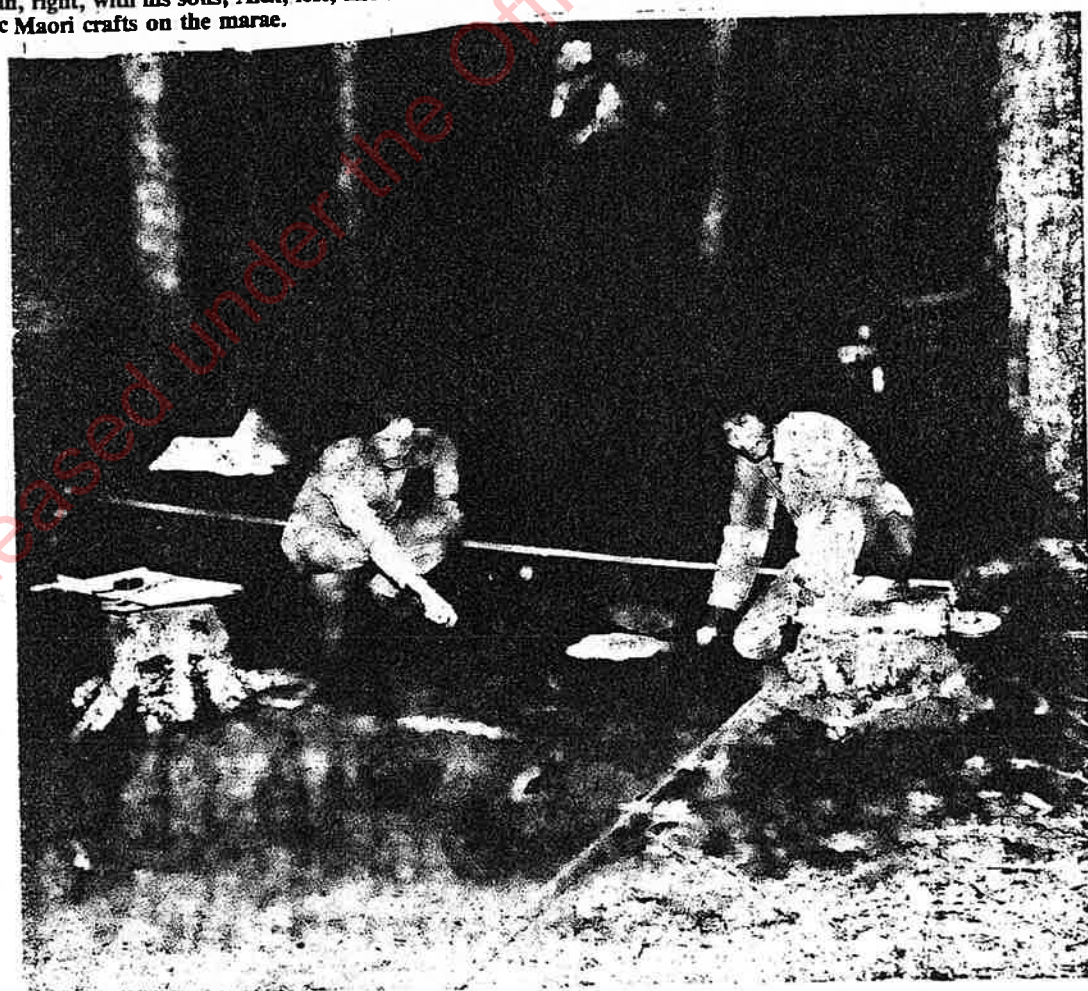
damaging the sites were being studied. It would be possible to fell some of the pine trees to land away from the sites in areas of underground remains, such as kumara pits. But in areas where remains were above the ground, such as fragile stone terraced walls, felling the trees would be more difficult.

Using bulldozers or skidders for removing the tree was the first and cheapest option, said Mr Young. But if this was likely to cause damage, other more expensive options, such as aerial rope systems or helicopters, might have to be used.

Extract from " MOST NEW ZEALAND NEWSPAPERS " Newspaper.
 Published at N.Z. WIDE , on [date] MARCH-APRIL 1986
 SUBJECT: WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT



Ned Nathan, right, with his sons, Alex, left, and Manos at the Matatina marae in the Waipoua River valley. Alex and Manos are teaching ethnic Maori crafts on the marae.



↑ MAORI
ELDER
SEES
CHANGE

← RARE
FOREST
FINDS

Archaeologist Michael Taylor with assistant Richard Paniora excavating in Waipoua Forest.

...96J-85PTK

Extract from " NORTHLAND TIMES

" Newspaper.

Published at DARGAVILLE

, on [date] 12 FEBRUARY 1987

SUBJECT: WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT.

NORTHLAND TIMES, THURSDAY FEBRUARY 12, 1987 PAGE 4

WAIPOUA FOREST ARCHAEOLOGY

Ancient Occupation Clearly Indicated By Diggings

Early New Zealand occupation, possibly as long ago as 1,000 years, is daily revealing itself in the archaeological diggings in Waipoua Forest, 50 kilometers north of Dargaville.

In the forest there is a cool shaded spot, isolated from the whine of chainsaws and the crashings of timber, where people work, painstakingly reconstructing the past.

They work slowly, brushing away loose dirt from the stone heaps and terraces that were built and later deserted probably before Europeans had settled the land.

There is much to do. Site archaeologist Michael Taylor talks of being able to walk for three days over the land of the Waipoua River Valley and coming across different sites.

Indeed, the proposed historical reserve is huge — certainly the largest in New Zealand. On the 645 hectares of former forestry land are some 175 known sites of pre-European and historic importance.

UNIQUE

The setting of the site is unique. The small bush wrapped valley offers the scientist unusual potential to study land use and settlement patterns because it is relatively undisturbed.

Although some of the sites were planted in pine a number of years ago, others are in natural Kauri forest.

The bush and forest have preserved the ruins well and, unlike many other New Zealand sites which have been farmed over often for the past 150 years, gives the viewer the opportunity to study them in an environment resembling that existing before or during their occupation.

This enhances their scientific value. But the natural setting adds to the aura of the area, and they seem almost part of a living history, rather than potential museum exhibits.

The sites have been classified into either earthwork or stonework for the purposes of management.

Thirty-one sites with stonework are present on the site and they contain

over 1100 stone heaps, some of extraordinary work.

The natural basalt has been used for a variety of purposes including lines marking garden plots and other land boundaries, garden heaps, facings for retaining sloping soil, and ceremonial constructions such as shrines and altars.

Further excavation and experimental reconstruction will be necessary to understand the uses of many of the structures.

Pits and terraces are the main forms of earthwork sites on the reserve.

The numerous kumara pits in the reserve, some 197, suggest a large gardening population and/or a long period of land use.

When roofed they provided a controlled condition suitable for long term storage of the vegetable, and have usually been found in well drained locations, such as on the edges of steep drops.

Five fortified pa have been located along strategic points on the Waipoua River valley, only one of which, Kaitieke, is located on the reserve. Three others are on private land in the lower valley, while the other, Tirikohu, is located in thick scrub near the Waipoua River mouth and is partially on Forest Service and private land.

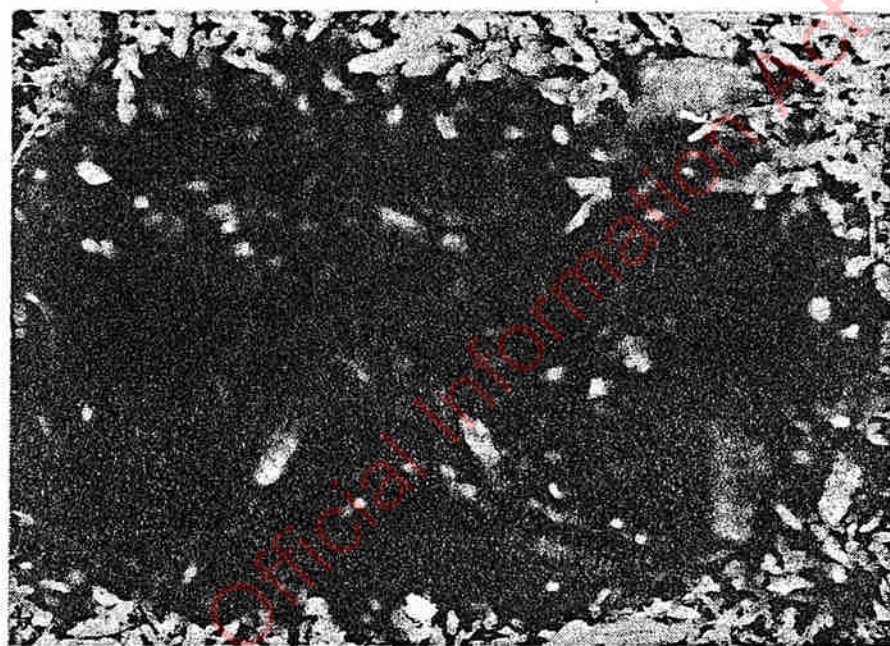
SELECTIVE FELLING

Selective felling is being carried out on some of the sites planted in pine, where the tree growth threatens to undermine or destroy the stone earthwork.

This is being done carefully, supervised contractors often dropping the trees away from the sites, leaving high stumps which the logs can be pivoted over when being dragged off.

Some sites, such as that of the Kaitieke Pa, have had all their trees ringbarked. This causes the trees to rot while standing and then break off at ground level when they fall, minimally damaging the earth and stonework features.

Intrinsically tied to the scientific importance of



These four stones were probably the hearth of a home.

the area is the cultural value that it represents to the local people.

SPIRITUALLY SIGNIFICANT

The Maori people regard the Papatea site as the most significant as it was the tuahu (the spiritual nucleus within which ritual ceremonies were performed).

It is known to have been established over 10 generations ago as reference is made to the location in ancient chants.

The original Waipoua Block was purchased in 1876 from Tiopira Kinaki of Ngati Whata and Parore te Awha of Ngapuhi.

When exotic afforestation began in 1924 the pleas of the Tangata Whenua to have their sacred sites excluded from planting were ignored.

Although no Carbon 14 dating has yet been done on any of the Maori sites to give them an exact age, there is an archaeological opinion that the valley was first settled perhaps 1000 years ago.

Preservation of a proportion of these sites by creating an archaeological reserve was first suggested by Colin Sutherland (then Kalkohe District Ranger) in May 1981 at a meeting between the Forest Service and the Historic Places Trust. However

further field work made it clear there were far more sites and ensuring management problems than originally envisaged.

Presently the proposed reserve is part of the Waipoua State Forest and managed by the Forest Service. But meetings between the Forest Service, the tangata whenua, and the Historic Places Trust culminated in the formation of an advisory committee made up of representatives of these three groups.

This committee, the Te Roroa — Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee oversees the management, investigation, and development of the sites.

With the inauguration of the Forest Corporation this year the control of the proposed reserve will probably be transferred to the Department of Conservation, and the reserve will be set aside under the Historic Places Act (1980) as an Historical and Traditional Reserve.

RESTRICTED AREAS

At present access to the sites is restricted to protect the sites while they are under investigation, and because of the demands of time that visitors would make on Forest Service staff.

Any decisions to open the sites to the public

would first require careful planning and preparation. Walking tracks would have to be formed, road access improved and amenity facilities built.

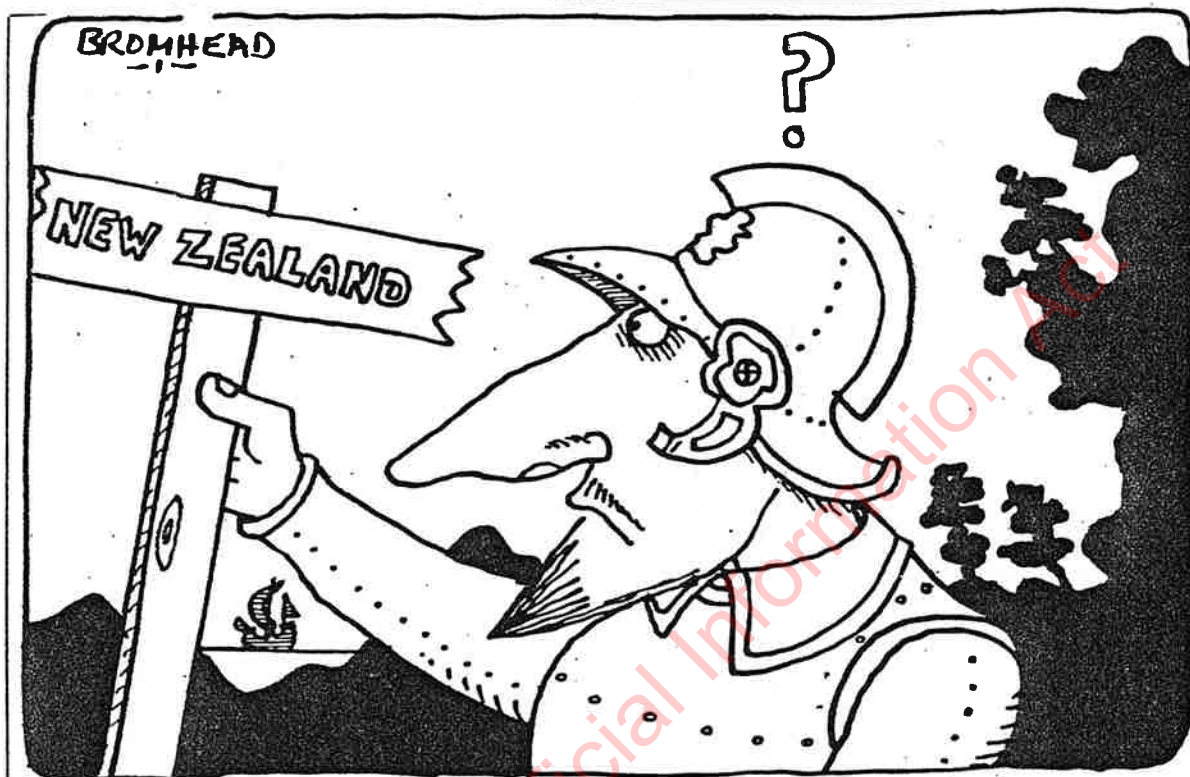
Also sites would have to be made understandable to visitors by using printed brochures, signposting and the employment of guides versed in local traditions.

In the meantime their attractions as a scenic and historical landscape,

along with their potential for furthering the understanding of both Northland's and New Zealand's prehistory alone warrant their protection and thorough investigation.

Standing, listening to the 'whump' of falling pine as the loggers cut their way into the face — one tends to feel very finite, looking at stones placed hundreds of years ago by unnamed hands.

But the kauri still stands.

Extract from " SUNDAY STAR " Newspaper.Published at AUCKLAND, on [date] 27 JULY 1986SUBJECT: SPANISH IN WAIPOUA FOREST

If you want to make name for yourself, rewrite history

LIKE to see your name in the history book? That is, without entering politics or anything bothersome? Easy. Just rewrite the chronicle. Establish that a well-recorded historical event is wrong.

You don't have to travel, the opportunity exists right here, in New Zealand. Forgive me for phrasing this frolic like a toothpaste competition, but this is what you have to do. Just prove that Abel Tasman was not the first European to visit Aotearoa.

First, a warning! Rewriting history is not a pushover. Evidence supporting radical concepts is interesting but ethereal. The premise suggested is that the Portuguese or Spanish visited these shores long before the Dutch explorer or Captain Cook.

The case for the Portuguese is strongest. They certainly were familiar with the eastern seaboard of Australia long before Cook. This is not surprising. Parts of Timor were established as a Portuguese colony in 1516. A distance of 456kms from the Australian coast.

It would have been strange if their skilled navigators had stopped at the East Indies. Two maps produced in the 16th century, called the Dauphin and Dieppe, clearly show a land mass that cannot be mistaken for anything other than Australia.

What about New Zealand? Well, clue-hunters, there is no obvious affirmation in map form. An interesting theory produced by a French geographer de la Rochette suggests that a strange bulge grafted on the Australian east coast — shown on the Dauphin map — could be the east coast of the North Island. There is an uncanny correspondence in length, bearing and longitude.

Certainly the British Admiralty thought the eastern coastline was known to the Portuguese before Cook. Naval charts record Cook Strait as the Gulf of the Portuguese, 1550. Other than this snippet, there is little tangible information.



PETER BROMHEAD

However, I can excite clue gatherers with a few standard props that are always produced to support the mystery. There is the finding pre-war, of the so-called Spanish helmet dredged out of the Wellington Harbour along with a cannon ball. The head-piece has been identified as a close helmet of the 16th century. Another warning! The curators of the Dominion Museum are lukewarm over its origins.

More interesting is the Tamil bell first spotted by the Rev. William Colenso in 1836. Maoris were using it as a cooking pot. It had been in their hands for many years. Characters written on the bell are in a long-disused form of Tamilense.

IT was common for the Portuguese to carry such bells on their caravels, along with a mixed crew of Javanese and Malay seamen. Could this bell have found its way into Maori hands via a shipwreck? There are three tales relating to unexplained wrecks. All on the west coast of the North Island.

Near Kawhia a hull was exposed after a great storm in 1877. Built of teak with diagonal planking, like a caravel. Examined by an official of the Dominion Museum, it supposedly had a metal plate with Tamilense characters attached to the bow. This evidence was lost. Removed

from the wreck, and sent to Auckland it apparently never arrived at its destination.

Sounds like detail from the TV repeat *The Invaders*, doesn't it? Anyhow, the ship awaits anyone energetic enough to dig it up again.

Other misty recorded data centres around Dargaville. A so-called Spanish wreck was well-known to Maoris on the shores of the Kaipara Harbour. As recently as 1983 another sighting identified as possibly an ancient caravel was spotted off a Northland beach by a farmer flying a light aircraft.

This gentleman has considerable experience in underwater archaeology, and is familiar with marine architecture.

Further north, there is a flimsy tale about a stone cairn found by early settlers, recording in Spanish or Portuguese some event never identified. Its present location is unknown, but thought to be in the Waipoua forest.

In the South Island, Captain Cook recorded in his log a strange, unexplained cross on Motuara island. Maori tradition also spoke of men arriving in shining armour, long before Captain Cook, at Anatolia Bay. Another curiosity is the Maori name for dog. "Pero-per," the Spanish is perro.

Now if you feel I've made this history writing all too easy, and you'd rather tackle something more difficult, let me take you back a few more centuries. In volumes five and six of *Le Recueil des Voyages* issued in France, it is recorded that a 12th century Arab geographer describes a cold mountainous land in the southern ocean. Far to the south-east of New Guinea, uninhabited by man and containing only giant non-flying birds covered in brown feathers.

Now that really does sound like God's own country. I wonder what happened to it?

Extract from " NEW ZEALAND WOMENS WEEKLY " Newspaper.Published at AUCKLAND, on [date] 23 JUNE 1986SUBJECT: WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT

SCRATCHING THE SURFACE

ARCHAEOLOGIST Annetta Sutton digs up the past because she is interested in people. She says her research is a way of broadening our insights into other lifestyles.

Archaeology, she declares, is a career to which you have to be committed.

Her work takes Annetta into some remote places, and she can't just choose where to dig. Archaeological projects in New Zealand tend to be precipitated by the needs of land developers rather than by pure scientific interest. And work is scarce.

"You have to be mobile to get jobs," she says. At present she has no fixed abode.

Annetta's chosen career has already taken her to excavation sites on Indian reservations in the USA. But as a New Zealand graduate she has a special interest in the pre-European way of life of the Maori people.

As an anthropology student at Auckland University in the early 1980s she was involved in excavating Maori sites in Auckland and on the Coromandel Peninsula. And recently she has been employed by the New Zealand Forest Service to assist archaeologist Michael Taylor with investigations of the pre-European Maori village sites in the Waipoua Forest, north of Dargaville.

Nearly 200 archaeological sites have been recorded in the lower Waipoua River valley and on the adjacent coast, confirming that this area was quite heavily populated by Maoris in pre-European times (probably by several thousand people), as well as by Maori and European gum-diggers until early this century. Some of the descendants of Te Roroahapu of Ngati Whatua still live in the area and are represented, along with the Forest Service and the Historic Places Trust, on the advisory committee which oversees the management of the sites.

"At Waipoua we haven't gone far towards coming to conclusions," says Annetta. "We're really just scratching the surface you might say. And it all has to be written up yet."

"But I'd say the people who lived here in pre-European times were fairly clever — well adapted

Annetta Sutton is a detective of sorts. The 'clues' she unearths belong to the past.

to their environment — and the adaptation was very rapid when you consider Maori people occupied New Zealand only within the last 1000 years. It was a tremendous adaptation from Eastern Polynesia. They brought kumara, gourds, yams, taro and other plants with them to New Zealand and had to keep the crops going in a new environment."

ONE of the interesting features of the Waipoua village sites is the extensive area of stone structures found adjacent to house terraces and food storage pits. Over 900 structures have been found in the valley and they are believed to have been associated with gardening — garden clearance heaps, planting mounds, water reticulation systems, boundary markers, enclosures, as well as house platforms, fighting terraces and tuahu (ceremonial altars). Although the structures are in ruins there is still evidence of their careful construction.

Annetta Sutton points out that the records of early European visitors from Captain Cook onwards refer to the neat, well tended gardens of the Maori people. Obviously, they were well organised and well attuned to nature. They had to be to survive.

The storage of food in deep pits was a well established technique ... a fact which is confirmed by the survival of such pits with almost similar construction on sites throughout New Zealand. Annetta Sutton and Michael Taylor, with their team of assistants, have recently excavated two pits at Waipoua. In one they unearthed the holes left by the posts which supported the roof structure. In the other they found the drain and sump system in the bottom of the pit.

Another exciting excavation of a terrace revealed a stone fireplace — confirming that the terrace was a house site — and a number of artefacts including a small argillite wood-carving chisel, a small grooved stone (possibly a sinker), and a quantity of stone flakes used for cutting

and scraping. However, the excavation did not reveal any material which could accurately date the site.

"I find this work fascinating," says Annetta. "I'm finding out what people did in the past. It's detective work and very interesting. But I get a bit disillusioned when I see the number of sites that disappear because of private development. Once sites are gone they are gone forever. There's no way you can preserve all sites, it's silly to try, and that's not the aim. The aim is, firstly, to get all the sites you can survey marked on a map — at least you know where they are, know their condition and the pattern of the sites."

"Secondly, what archaeologists strive for is to retain and protect a representative sample of all the different types of sites in a landscape. We also try to protect particularly unusual sites."

ACCORDING to Annetta the strategy used to excavate is different for each site. The Waipoua house terrace excavation involved digging through three or four layers to about 30cm. It took three weeks with an average of ten people in the team.

But a coastal cave excavation she visited in Washington State had taken six years to excavate three metres deep through 1000 layers, spanning 4000 years of seasonal occupation by Makah Indians who were specialists in whale hunting.

Another site she visited was a "wet site". This was part of an Indian campsite eroding the banks of a river and exposed only for three hours a day because it was on a tidal estuary. Hydraulic spray techniques were used instead of trowels because the sediments were so wet and the remains so fragile.

Says Annetta: "Excavating is very careful work. We use small pointing trowels, hearth brushes, pans and sieves. It's very slow and tedious but you never know what you are going to find. Every site is unique. It can be boring with few finds, but it's usually not, because you have a variety of

things to do — recording, drawing scale plans, taking field notes, taking photographs, taking soil samples, often supervising other people's work.

"We like to employ local people as much as possible. Often the tangata whenua (local people) can add 50 per cent of the story, and archaeology the other 50 per cent."

According to Annetta, contact with the tangata whenua is the first priority when planning archaeological work on Maori sites.

"We contact the local people, talk with them and get their feelings, tell them what we are doing and why, get their approval. If we don't get their approval we don't dig."

Why aren't more sites being investigated and protected in New Zealand? It is largely a matter of money, along with complex factors connected with the Historic Places legislation and land tenure.

In some parts of New Zealand land containing archaeological sites has been leased by private companies for development because of pressure on the Maori owners of the land to pay their rates.

"It's quite different from America," says Annetta, "where Indian reservations are not taxed or rated. I would like to see private developers taking more responsibility for protecting archaeological sites. I think the Forest Service is taking its responsibilities seriously. The Auckland Conservancy archaeologist, Ian Lawlor, now has a staff of six full-time archaeologists. But private developers don't very often employ archaeologists."

And usually archaeological investigations are funded only if there is something in it for the developer, or if pressure of development makes the work urgent. The study of the Waipoua sites has recently become a priority because some of them are situated in mature pine plantations which are due for logging.

"The Historic Places Trust are able, under law, to prosecute people and fine them up to \$25,000 for damage to sites. They can also impose a \$500-a-day fine while the damage continues. They try not to do that because it threatens people. They prefer to do positive things. But there have been cases

Extract from " NEW ZEALAND WOMENS WEEKLY " Newspaper.

Published at AUCKLAND , on [date] 23 JUNE 1986

SUBJECT: WAIPOUA ARCHAEOLOGICAL PROJECT.



where the developers have pulled their socks up only when threatened with a fine."

Where a site is deemed important it can be declared an archaeological reserve. Such reserves have protected status and many will come under the control of the new Conservation Department. Moves are afoot to do this with some of the Waipoua sites.

Under the Historic Places Legislation, all developers who work on land where there are archaeological sites are obliged to meet the costs of archaeological investigations. There are exceptions in the case of certain farming activities.

A developer must apply to the Historic Places Trust for an authority to modify an archaeological site, and archaeologists require a permit to excavate. Says Annetta:

"A lot of people are unaware of the law, but ignorance of the law is no justification for ruining sites."

Because of these factors, work for archaeologists in New Zealand is usually available only under some Government department. As Annetta points out, it is different from the United States where private archaeological companies compete for contracts.

But Annetta prefers to be an archaeologist in New Zealand. She says:

"In America you have to deal with rattlesnakes and grizzly bears."

— BILL KEIR

ABOVE: One of the hundreds of stone structures which have survived at the pre-European village site at Waipoua.

RIGHT: Annetta Sutton carefully scrapes soil from a stone fire place at Waipoua. Photographs: Bill Keir.



Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX II

Compartment 5 - new site record forms
and additional information sheets

ATTACHED II

Consistent with the new law, the relevant
information was not retained in the files.

Released under the Official Information Act

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name WAIPOUA
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 035-058.5

SITE NUMBER N18/104

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

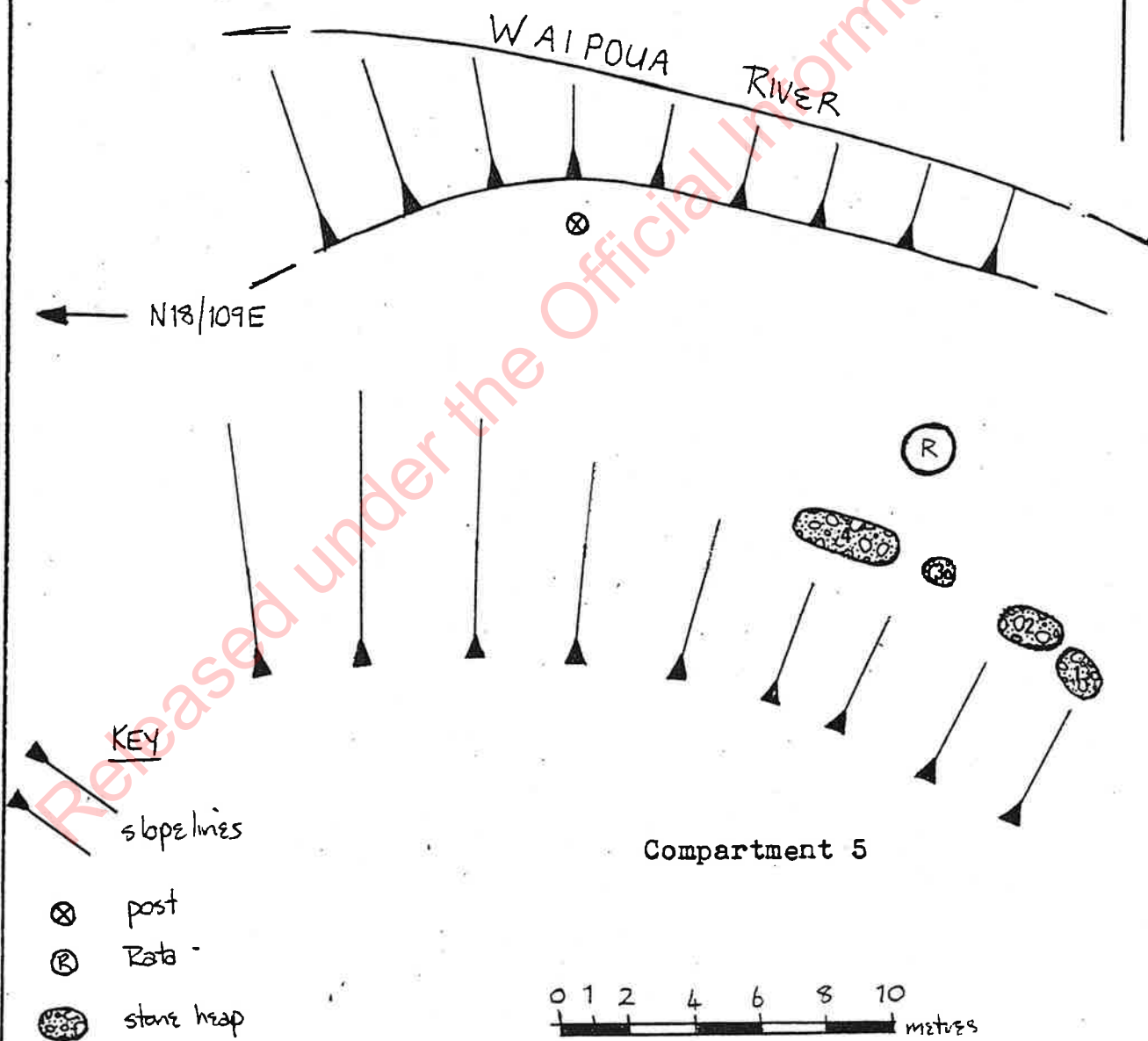
SITE TYPE Stone heaps/rata tree

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Stone heaps

1. 2x1x0.5m high
2. 2x1x0.7m high
3. 0.8m diam.x 0.15m high
4. 3x1x0.5m high

MN



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

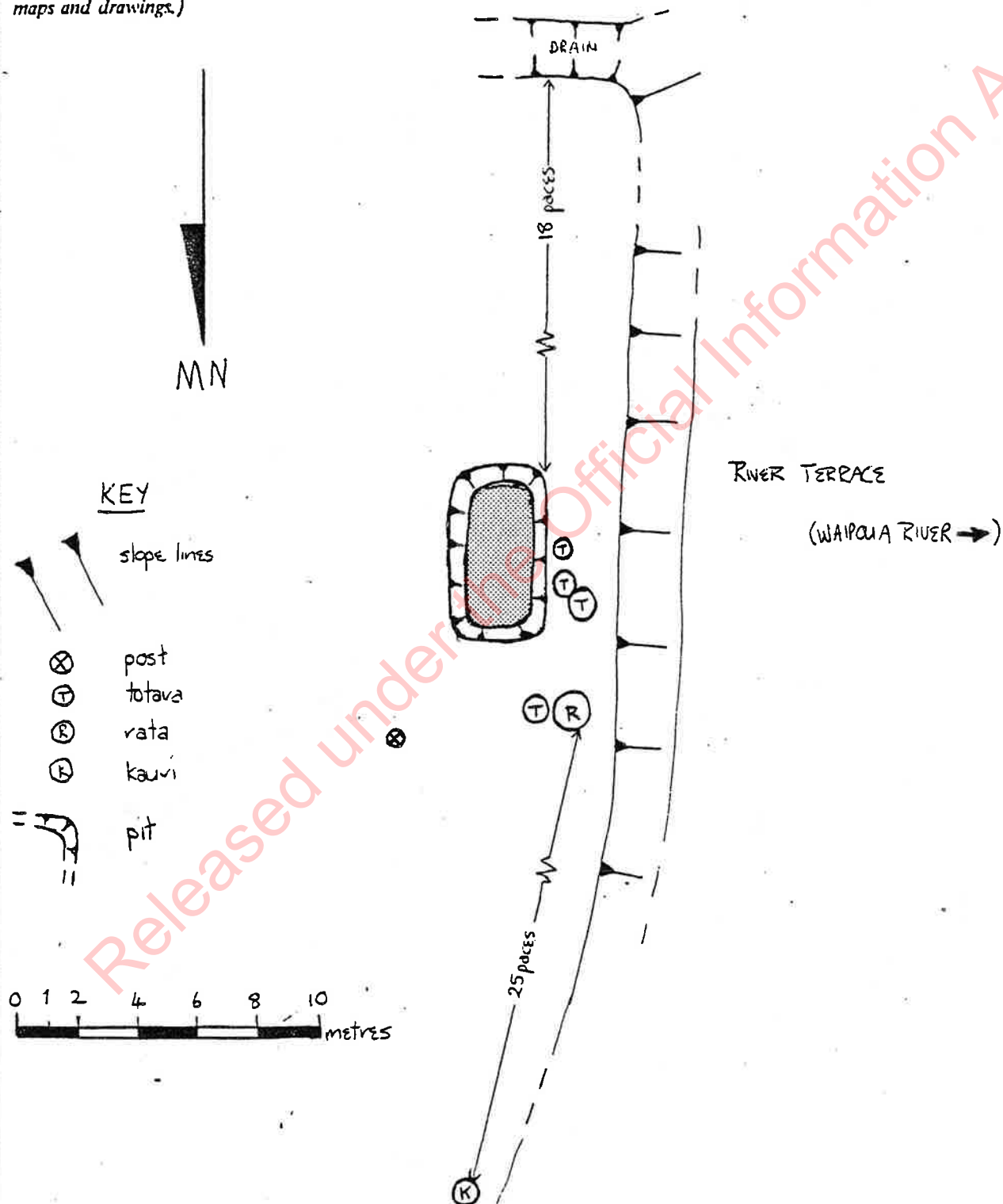
SITE NUMBER N18/110

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Pit and drain

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd 1975
Grid Reference

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION		SITE NUMBER N18/112
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
Map Number	N18	SITE TYPE Pits and terrace
Map Name	Waipoua	
Map Edition	3rd, 1975	
Grid Reference	027-055	

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This site was recorded originally in 1980 as an ill-defined pit and terrace.

Relocation of the site in 1986 subsequent to logging identified 15 pits and a terrace (see plan).

The site probably originally included over 20 pits but the central portion of the site was destroyed and the site divided into two separate portions when a deeply cut fire-break was bulldozed through it in the 1950's.

The original location of the site marked on forest maps was not accurate and the site is partly in both Compartments 5 and 66. Ten pits are in Cpt. 5 and 5 are in Cpt. 66.

The portion of the site in Compartment 5 was left unplanted during 1986 pine restocking and the perimeter was marked with a tanalised fence post bearing the NZAA site number.

The portion of the site in Compartment 66 remains planted in P. radiata (1966) and there are no immediate plans for logging.

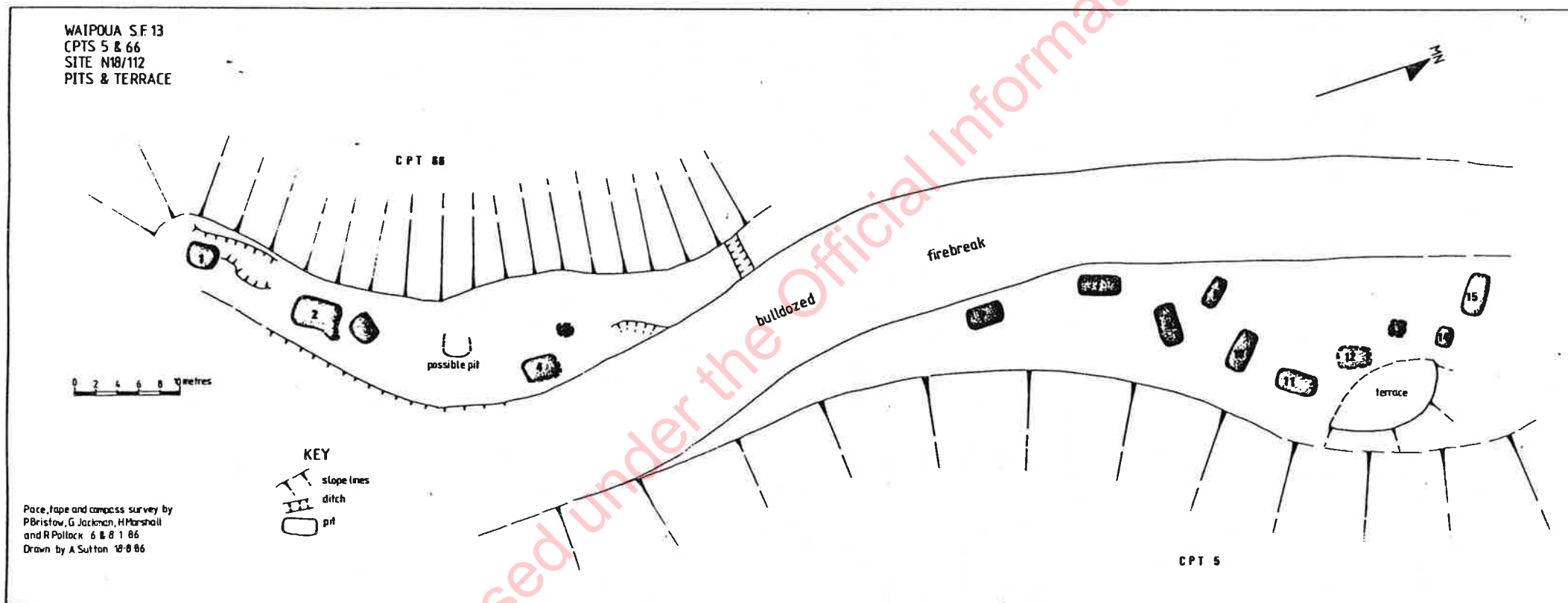
The promontory on which the site is located could have been defended and it is possible that the location was fortified.

The site location forms a prominent land mark when viewed from the settlement. Post located 23.3m at 274° from the corner of Opatonga and skid roads.

Pit Dimensions

1. 2.0x2.5x0.3m deep	11. 4.0x2.0x0.5m deep
2. 4.5x2.0x0.8m deep	12.
3. 3.0x2.0x0.3m deep	13.
4. 3.0x1.5x0.3m deep	14. 2.0x1.5m
5. 1.5x1.5x0.3m deep	15. 4.0x2.0m
6. 2.0x3.5x1.0m deep	
7. 4.0x2.0x1.0m deep	
8. 4.0x2.0x0.8m deep	
9. 3.0x1.5x1.0m deep	
10. 4.0x2.0x1.0m deep	

Michael Taylor 15-8-86



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION		SITE NUMBER N18/113
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
Map Number	N18	SITE TYPE Stone facing
Map Name	Waipoua	
Map Edition	3rd, 1975	
Grid Reference	026-059	

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Sketch only

0 10
metres

This site was revisited by P. Bristow and R. Pollock on 6 January 1986. It is located on the eastern end of a river terrace at a sharp bend in the Waipoua River, under second growth bush. The stone work is near the boundary of Compartments 66 and 5 and approximately 20m below the lower limit of the pines.

The site does not appear to be two stone heaps as originally recorded but rather an area of stone facing running across the back of the terrace. The facing is approximately 10x2m.

Vegetation consists of young native trees including totara, tane-kaha, rewarewa, manuka, hangehange, tree ferns, and blechnum ferns.

Just above the site on the ridge top and sides three or more tracks about 40cm wide and 20cm deep wind their way across the slopes. These are probably old horse tracks as the 1915 survey plan(ML 10004) shows tracks descending this ridge.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 030-056	SITE NUMBER N18/ 179
	SITE NAME: MAORI Pawherowai OTHER
	SITE TYPE PITS

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

The definition of sites N18/178, 179 and 186 requires clarification.

Site N18/178 includes two terraces and an area of stone structures which are located in indigenous bush. It includes all the features in the bush and excludes features in pine.

N18/179 is an earthwork site consisting of an elongated knoll or ridge adjacent to N18/178 and the bush. It includes the "dry pond" which now contains permanent water as removal of nearby pines appears to have affected run-off. This site was excavated by the University of Auckland and includes a gundigger's camp and possible tree planting trenches. Older Maori occupation identified by the presence of obsidian flakes was not defined.

N18/186 is a stonework site in P. patula adjacent to sites N18/178 and 179. Excavation by the University of Auckland identified garden soils on the site.

This division of the sites has been made for management purposes. The original site numbers were allocated before it was realised that the sites were continuous. The dense undergrowth and duff layer concealed most features entirely.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION		SITE NUMBER	N18/186
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		SITE NAME:	MAORI Pawherowai OTHER
Map Number	N18	SITE TYPE	Stone heaps/gardens
Map Name	Waipoua		
Map Edition	3rd, 1975		
Grid Reference	031-056		

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

The definition of sites N18/178, 179 and 186 requires clarification.

Site N18/178 includes two terraces and an area of stone structures which are located in indigenous bush. It includes all the features in the bush and excludes features in pine.

N18/179 is an earthwork site consisting of an elongated knoll or ridge adjacent to N18/178 and the bush. It includes the "dry pond" which now contains permanent water as removal of nearby pines appears to have affected run-off. This site was excavated by the University of Auckland and includes a gumdigger's camp and possible tree planting trenches. Older Maori occupation identified by the presence of obsidian flakes was not defined.

N18/186 is a stonework site in P.patula adjacent to sites N18/178 and 179. Excavation by the University of Auckland identified garden soils on the site.

This division of the sites has been made for management purposes. The original site numbers were allocated before it was realised that the sites were continuous. The dense undergrowth and duff layer concealed most features entirely.

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

Attachment 4
 NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/197

DATE VISITED 9 January 1986

SITE TYPE Find spot

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 7

Northing

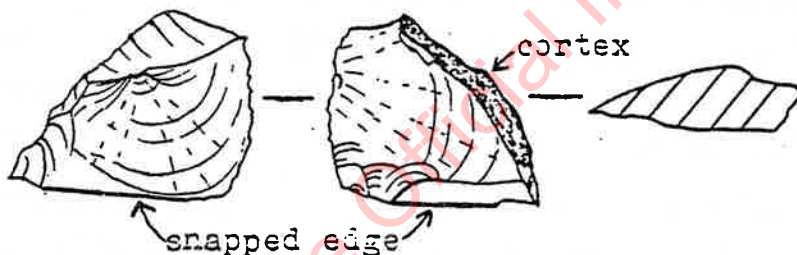
0 5 7

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. On track that marks the boundary between Compartments 5 and 66. Access via north-western skid on west Oputonga Road. Flake was picked up 150m from edge of skid on right hand side of track (facing downhill). The compartments' boundary follows the ridge to the river from the skid.

2. State of site and possible future damage Find spot was on a track used for log hauling which will face further disturbance. No surface features were visible prior to logging commencing.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Find spot of one obsidian flake found on ground surface. No other evidence of human occupation was evident either prior to the ground being disturbed by log hauling, nor during the continued use of the track.



4. Owner

Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

~~Report~~/Manager

Address

Rod Young
 O/C Waipoua SF 13

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) & G. Jackman

Brief visits by Michael Taylor

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Nil

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR

Address

P, O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

Michael Taylor
 28/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, obsidian find spot

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/202 ^{Attachment 4}
 DATE VISITED 9 January 1986
 SITE TYPE Stone heaps
 SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 4 3

Northing

0 5 8

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 5, eastern end. Access via NE(lower) skid on Kopikopiko Road(No.11). Follow ridge to north into native bush. Site is on eastern side where the ground levels out towards the river. East and over ridge from site N18/101. See location sketch.

2. State of site and possible future damage Heaps are in mature native trees and are in good condition. No future damage is likely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) Heaps cover an area of approximately 200m parallel to the river and about 150m from the river up to the ridge slope. Heaps appear to be localised in two separate areas where stone occurs naturally.

At least 25 heaps were counted including one "C" shaped structure and a "wall" running 3-5m up the slope.

The site is in light bush which is easy to move through. Trees include mature totara, rata, taraire, nikau, mamaku, supplejack, plus smaller ferns etc. Several large trees have fallen.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

XXX/Manager Rod Young
 Address O/C Waipoua

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Visited by R. Pollock, P. Bristow, and H. Marshall and walked over thoroughly.
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*) Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*) Nil

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

Alf Hancock
 29/1/82

7. Key words

Waipoua, stone heaps

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

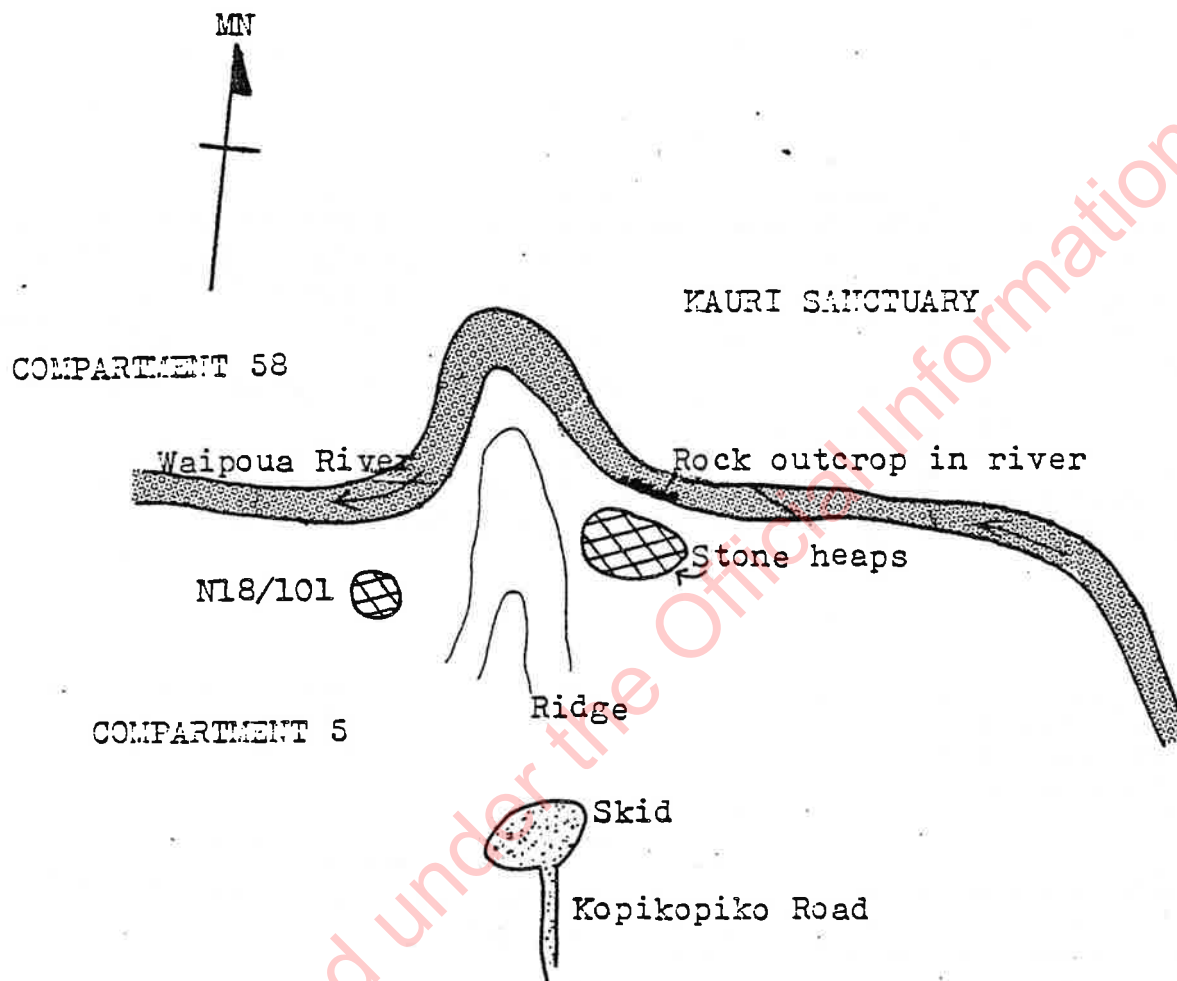
Map Number M18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 043-058

SITE NUMBER M18 /202

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



APPENDIX III

Compartment 14 - new site record forms
and additional information sheets

APPENDIX II

Department of Defense - new site record form
and additional information sheets

Released under the Official Information Act

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 013-058	SITE NUMBER N18/9
	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE Pits, terrace, reputed pa

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

See plan.

The area was resurveyed by Robert Pollock and Michael Taylor on 3 January 1986. Two pits and a terrace were recorded (see plan). The features are distinct but the pits are very shallow (30-40cm).

The plan was drawn using a tape as a baseline with paced offsets.

The vegetation is mature *Pinus palustris* (1942). Larger indigenous trees include rewarewa, makamaka; and various broadleaf species. Mingimingi is also plentiful and flax and bracken fern cover the area.

During the 1915 survey of the area, the surveyor, J. Davis, wrote in his field notebook with reference to this hill: "Puketurutu. Remains of old trenches found this hill highest point." Notebook 2848, page 6.

Michael Taylor
10 June 1986

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 014-058

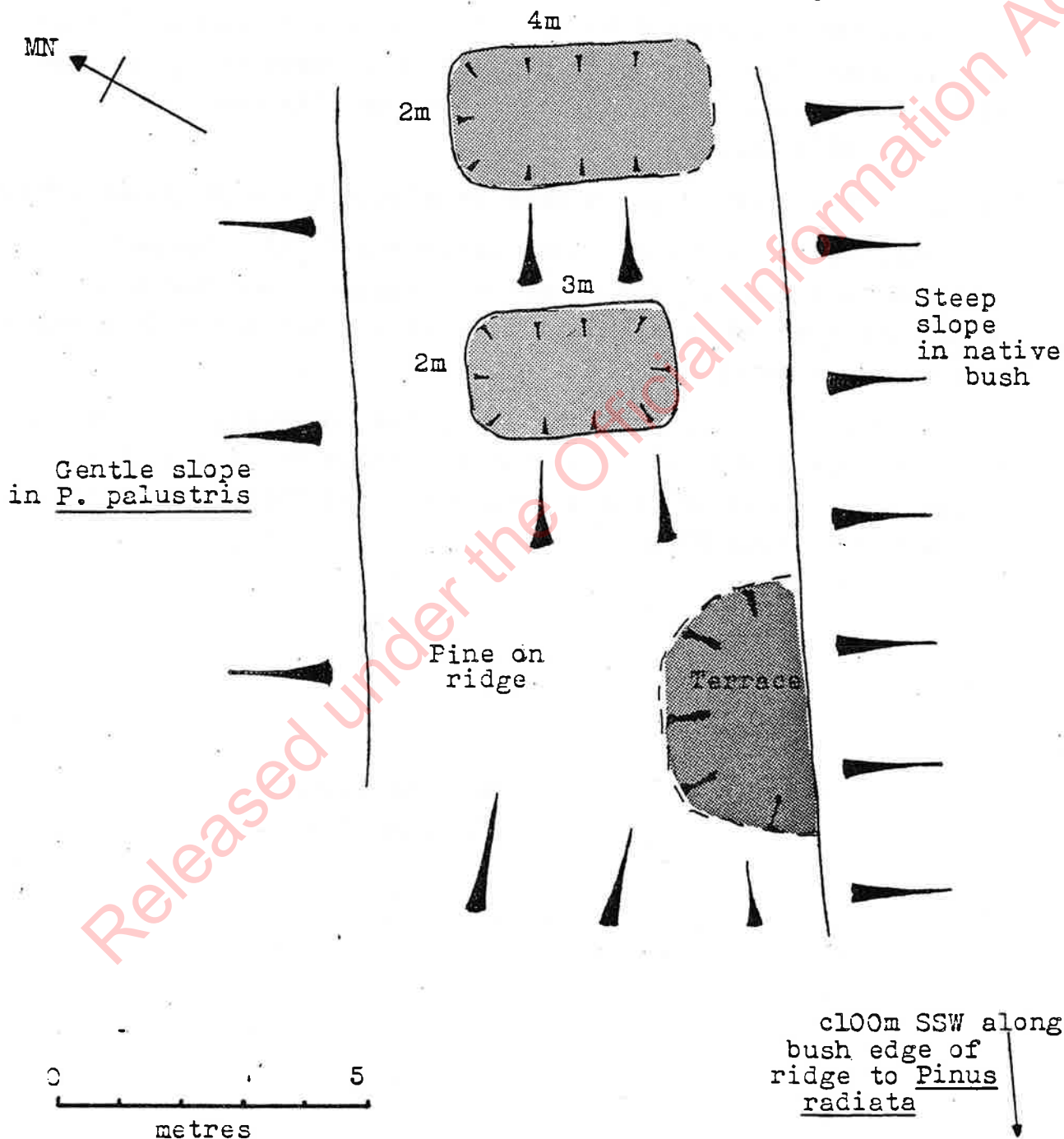
SITE NUMBER N18/9

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits/Reputed pa

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

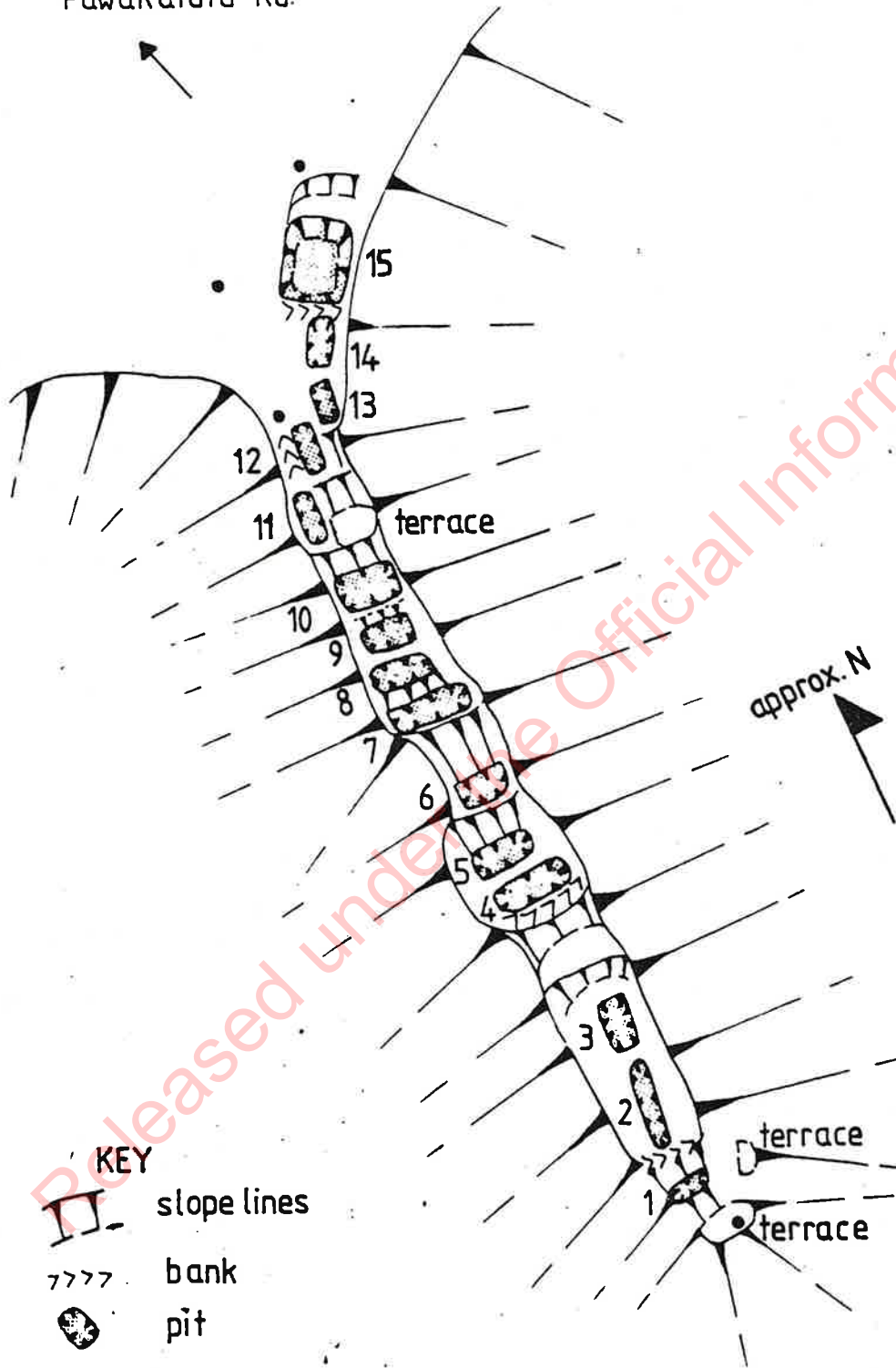
Compartment 14



SKETCH ONLY NOT TO SCALE

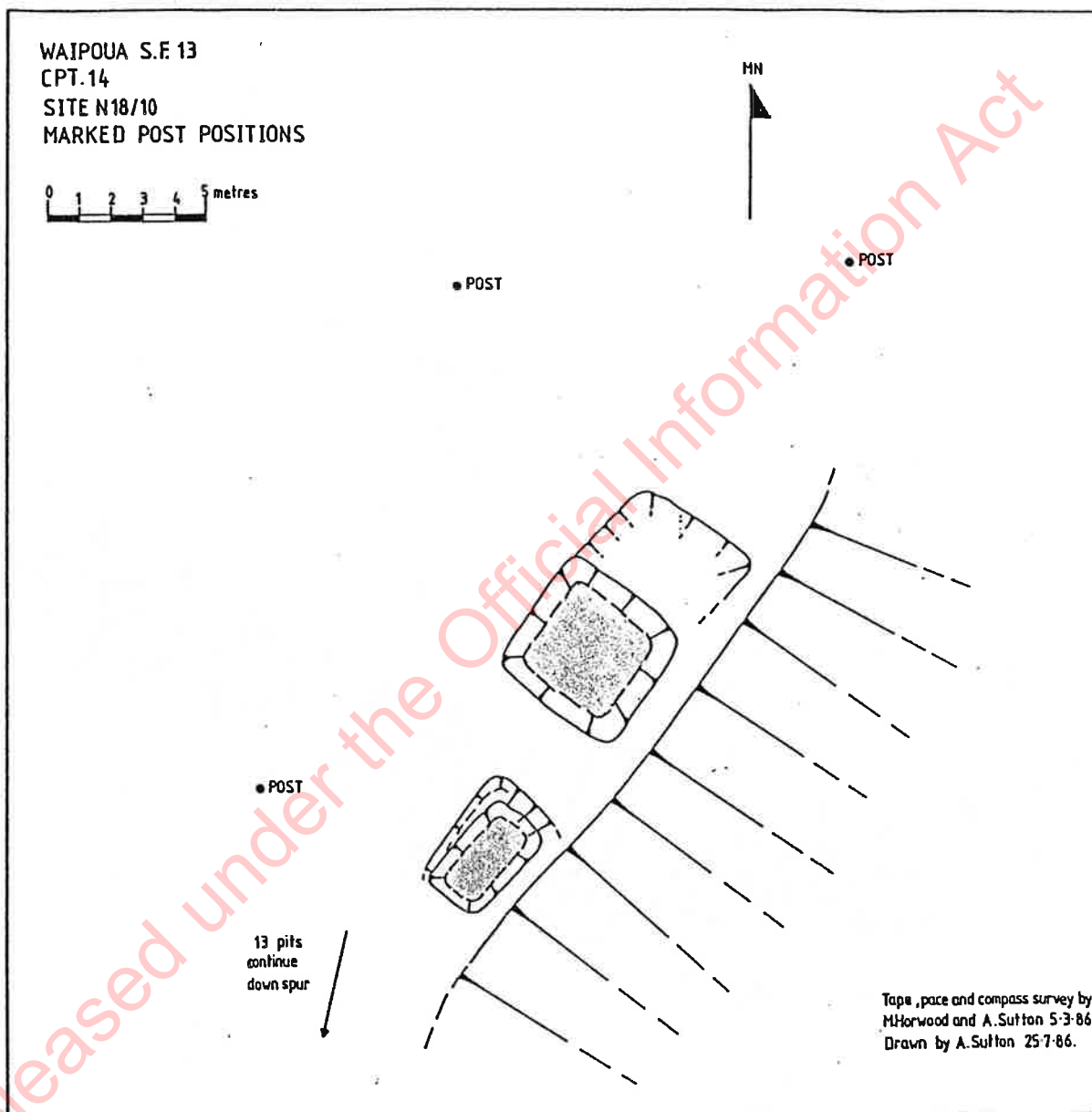
WAIPOUA SF 13
CPT 14
SITE N18/10
PITS

Pawakatutu Rd.



Pace and compass survey
by M. Horwood and A. Sutton
5.3.86.

Drawn by A. Sutton 31.6.86



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 017-050	SITE NUMBER N18/89
	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE PITS
<p><i>(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)</i></p> <p>This site was visited by R. Paniora and P. Bristow on 23 December 1985. The 5 pits are located about 75-100m west of Pawakātutu Road and 250m south of its junction with Papatea Road, on the edge of a low ridge.</p> <p>The 5 pits are well defined as planned on the site record plan.</p> <p>The area is planted in <u>Pinus radiata</u>(1966) With an understorey of manuka, mamaku, bracken fern, and small native shrubs. Thinned pines lie over the site.</p>	

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 017-049

SITE NUMBER N18/127

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Cpt. 14

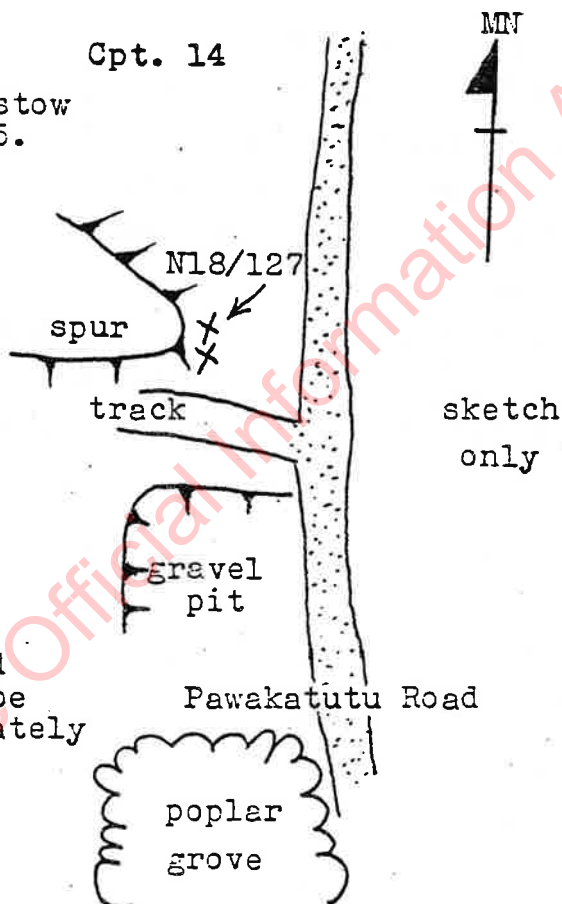
The site was revisited by P. Bristow and R. Paniora on 23 December 1985.

The site is approximately 30m west of Pawakatutu Road and about 50m north of the gravel pit at the northern end of the poplar grove by the Waipoua River ford. The stonework is located at the base of the spur (not on it as shown on the site record form).

Only one stone heap could be discerned plus an area of stones. The heap is approximately 2x1m and 0.66m high. The other stones may be a collapsed wall running approximately east-west for about 8-10m and about 3-4m wide.

The site is planted in Pinus radiata (1966) and pine thinnings obscure the ground surface. Small native shrubs and bracken fern are also growing on the site.

The stonework is not very impressive.



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

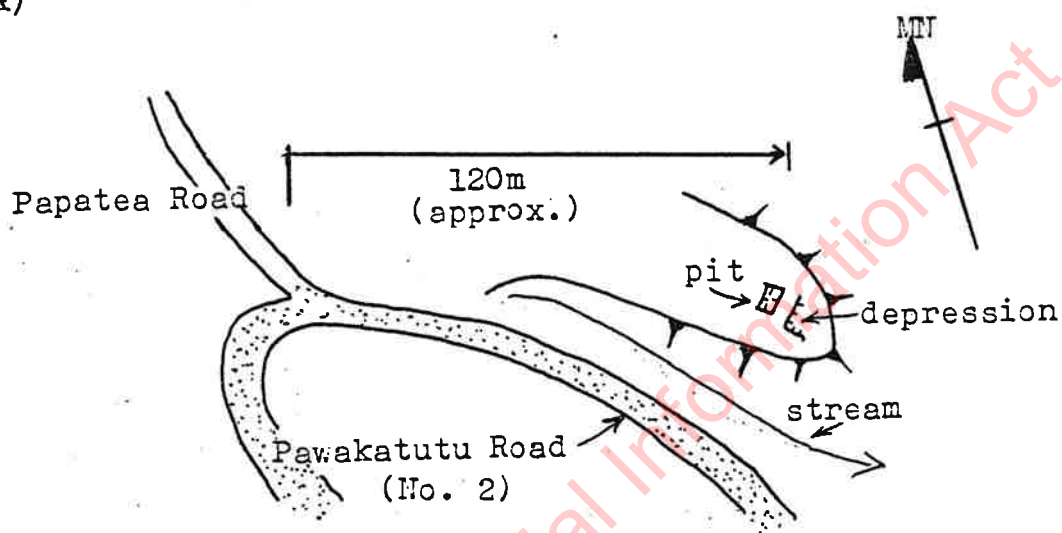
Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 012-052

SITE NUMBER N18/128

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE PIT

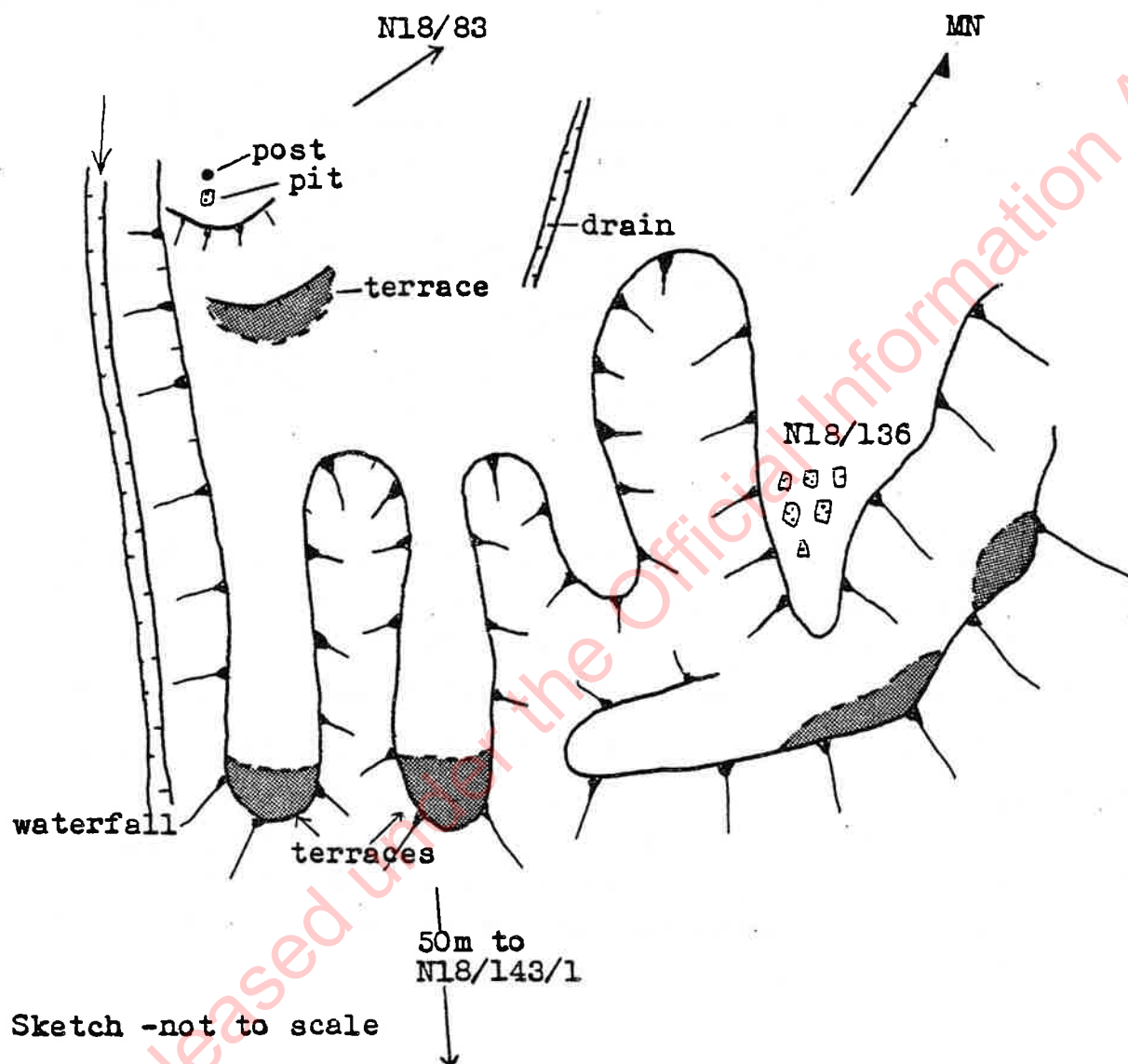
(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



This site was revisited on 23 December 1985 by R. Paniora and P. Bristow. It is located north east of Pawakatutu Road approximately 120m south of the junction with Papatea Road and about 30m into the pines from No. 2 road across a small steep gully. The site consists of a pit associated with a depression which is probably a small terrace. The site is very obscured by bracken fern and thinned pines. Vegetation cover is P. radiata (1966), tree ferns, cordyline, and small native shrubs. Areas of stone to the north west of the pit may be parts of site N18/87.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION		SITE NUMBER N18/135
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		
Map Number	N18	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
Map Name	Waipoua	
Map Edition	3rd, 1975	SITE TYPE Pits, terraces
Grid Reference	017-05 9	

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



Two new features were recorded on this site; the terrace and the drain, south-east and east of the N18/135 post. There is also a large waterfall beside the southwestern terrace. This can be located by following up the stream from the culvert on Papatea Road. The terrace recorded as a "lookout" by Papworth would accommodate a small house.

M. Taylor 10-11-86

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM Map Number N18 Map Name Waipoua Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 018-058	SITE NUMBER N18/143
	SITE NAME MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE Pits

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

See plan.

N18/143 is located 60m NW from the batten making access to N18/131 from Papatea Road.

The pits are dry and in good condition. There is no threat to the site.

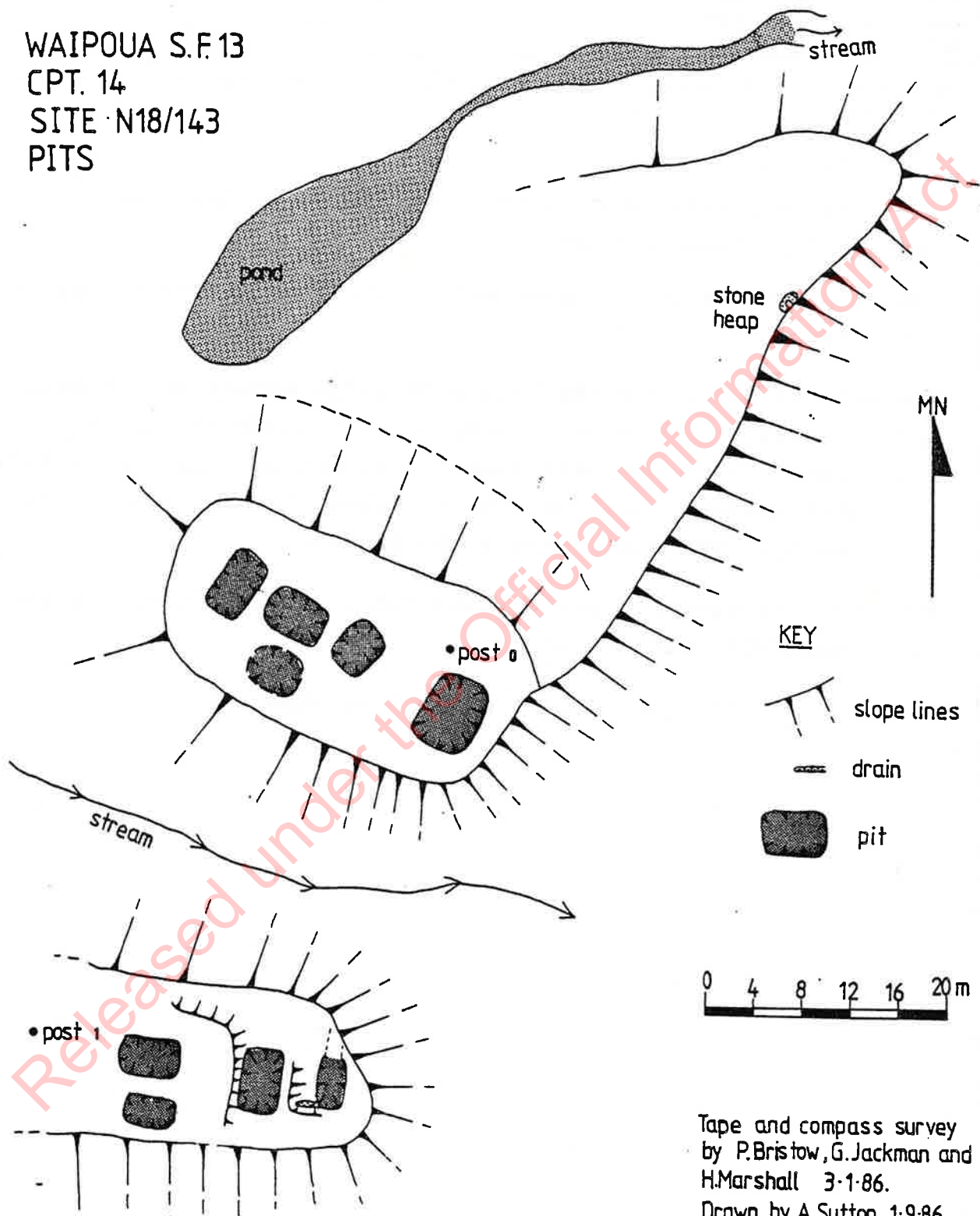
The site is in indigenous bush with large kanuka the dominant upper storey. Other upper storey trees include kauri, mapou, five finger, rewarewa, and small rata. The undergrowth includes the above species, plus totara, tanekaha, kiekie, mingimingi, coprosma sp., kohekohe, akeake and others.

The first terrace and post of N18/135 is about 50m up the same ridge that N18/143/1 is on.

See also N18/135 additional information sheet.

Michael Taylor
10 June 1986

WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT. 14
SITE N18/143
PITS



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/203 ^{Attachment 4}
 DATE VISITED 23 December 1985
 SITE TYPE Terrace & pit
 SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

017

Northing

050

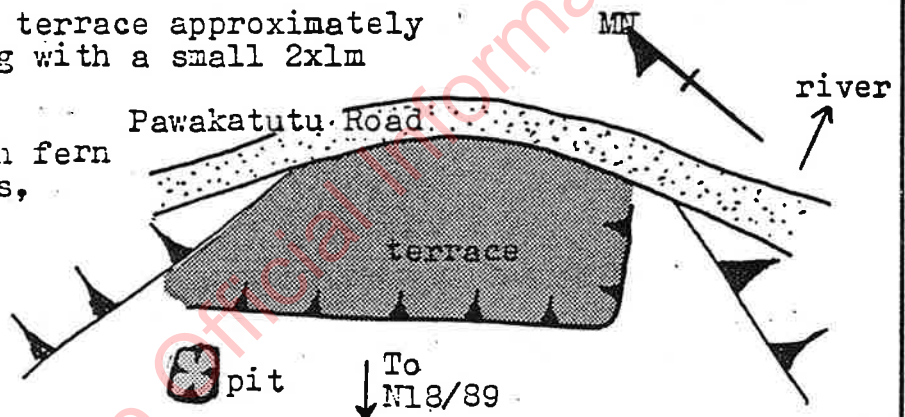
1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 14. On a prominent knoll directly above and cut through by Pawakatutu Road (No.2), approximately equidistant from the Waipoua River ford and Papatea Road. North east along ridge from N18/89.

2. State of site and possible future damage Clearly defined but planted in Pinus radiata with some damage likely when felling takes place.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

The site consists of a terrace approximately 10-12m wide by 15m long with a small 2x1m pit just above it.

The site is under pine mamaku, manuka, bracken fern and small native shrubs,



4. Owner

Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

X-Manager/Manager

Rod Young

Address

O/C Waipoua SF 13

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by R. Paniora and P. Bristow

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

NIL

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

NIL

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR

Address P.O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

[Signature]
 28/1/82

7. Key words

Waipoua, pit, terrace

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/ **223**

Attachment 4

DATE VISITED 4 March 1986

SITE TYPE Pits

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 0 9

Northing

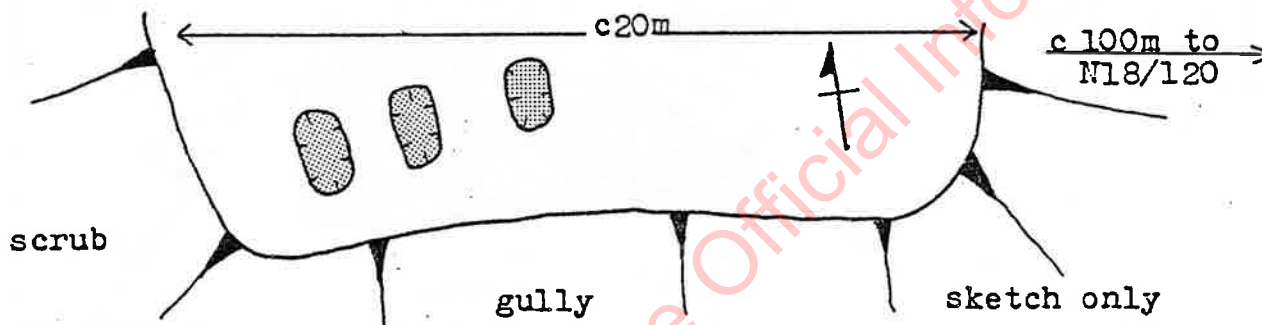
0 4 7

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 14. Access via clay track off Lake Road (No. 26) which follows the boundary between Compartments 14 and 66. The site is on a small knoll overlooking a small gully, 100 metres east of the compartment boundary from where it makes a right angle turn opposite the Waipoua settlement.

2. State of site and possible future damage Poorly defined pits which are only just discernable. Planted in Pinus radiata 1965. Eventual damage from logging.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Three pits all about 2x1m.



4. Owner

Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by Richard Paniora and Peter Bristow.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by
 Address

MICHAEL TAYLOR
 P.O. BOX 3931
 AUCKLAND

Filekeeper
 Date

Signature
 28/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, pits.

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/ **334**

DATE VISITED 4 March 1986

SITE TYPE Find spot

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 0 9

Northing

0 4 5

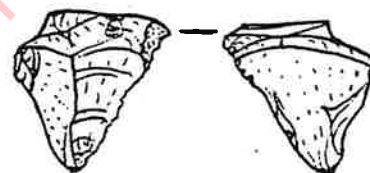
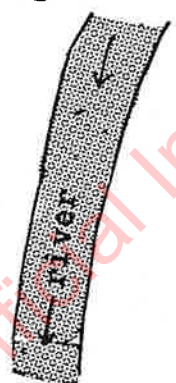
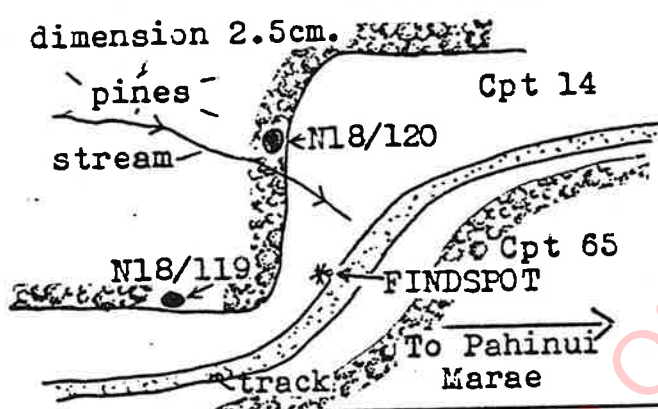
1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartments 14 and 66. Access via Lake Road. Findspot was on the edge of the clay road that forms the boundary between Cpts 14 and 66, approximately equidistant between N18/119 and N18/120. See sketch plan.

2. State of site and possible future damage

Bulldozed clay road.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Surface find of single obsidian flake, maximum dimension 2.5cm.



4. Owner

Address

NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*)

Brief visit by Richard Paniora
 and Peter Bristow.

Photographs (*reference numbers; and where they are held*)Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by

Address

MICHAEL TAYLOR

P, O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

Michael Taylor
 28/9/86

7. Key words

Find spot, obsidian, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX IV

Compartment 15 - new site records forms
and additional information sheets

APPENDIX IV

Competition is - how are you doing?
and how are you doing?

Released under the Official Information Act

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name WAIPOUA
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/259

DATE VISITED 21 January 1987

SITE TYPE Find spot

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 2

Northing

0 6 0

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua Forest. Compartment 15. Access is via Papatea Road or Kaitieke Road. Find spot is located on the old pack-horse road between Papatea and Kaitieke Roads. It is below the skid next to N18/138. The find spot is 100m north along the road from the permanent post marking N18/180.

2. State of site and possible future damage The site will be included in the Waipoua Archaeological Reserve. However, the road is likely to continue in use for vehicle and machine access and movement.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Three stone flakes were found on the surface of the road which dates at least to the historic gum-digging era. The flakes were all found on different locations but were picked up within 1m of each other. See diagram.

1. Yellow chert 2.93x1.54x1.17cm deep, 7.7gm weight
2. Red jasper 2.61x2.18x1.37cm deep, 9.7gm weight
3. Green obsidian 5.0x3.78x1.30cm deep, 17.8gm weight.

4. Owner
Address

Tenant/Manager
Address

DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 PRIVATE BAG
 DARGAVILLE

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*)

Brief visits by Michael Taylor

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by Michael Taylor

Filekeeper

Address DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

Date

WAIPOUA FOREST
 PRIVATE BAG
 DARGAVILLE

7. Key words

Find spot, stone flakes, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX V

Kawerua and Waipoua Coast:
Compartments 23, 27, and 36

EXHIBIT 1

George Washington University
Library and Wilson Center

Released under the Official Information Act

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/219
 DATE VISITED 25-3, 10-4-86
 SITE TYPE Midden/Find spot
 SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

9 4 5

Northing

0 9 1

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 36. See sketch. Access via Wairau Road (No.7), 400m along coastal dirt road found past Kararoa Road, but before No. 7 drops down to the Wairau River. The site is c5m from the SW end of the V-blading. The midden was in a V-bladed line 2m from the road.

2. State of site and possible future damage All visible signs of remains were disturbed by the bulldozed V-bladed line.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

See sketch

Concentration of shell, fire-cracked stones and charcoal turned over by V-blading covering an area of 2.0x1.6m.

The shell is crushed and fragmented and consists mainly of cats eyes. Other species present include black nerita, cooks turban, paua chiton, limpet, and white rock shell. Bone present includes fish, dog, and bird.

The matrix is a black sandy soil 5-10cm deep, underlaid by a consolidated sand pan.

A broken fragment of a tanged black argillite adze was picked up from the V-bladed spoil 4m NW of the midden.

Vegetation is low coastal scrub with macrocarpa.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address

Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Tenant/Manager
 Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Visits by Wiki Karena, Michael Taylor, Annetta Sutton and Michelle Horwood.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*) Black & white and colour,

held at the N.Z.F.S. Auckland office

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address

P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

25/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, midden, find spot, adze

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

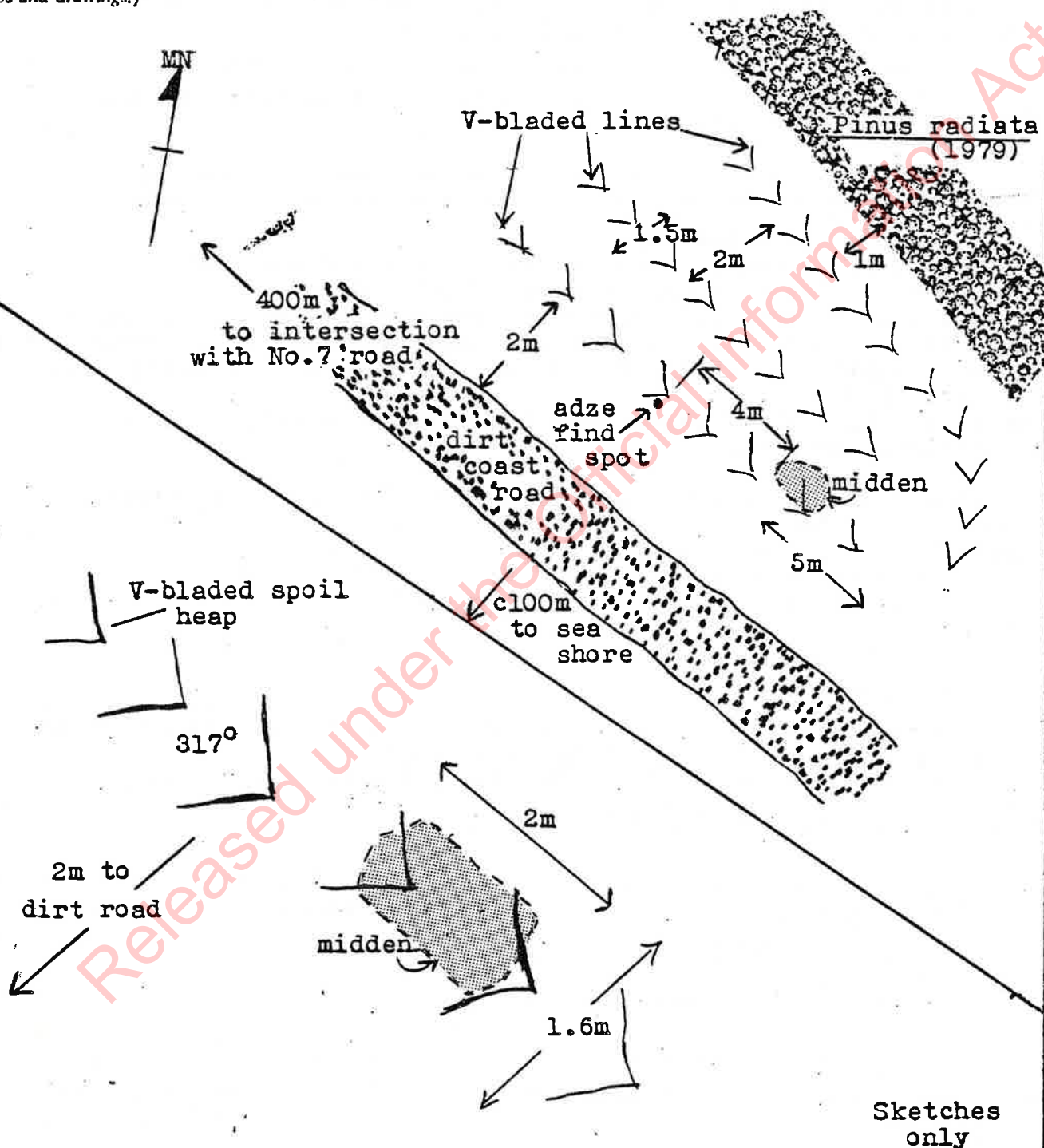
Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 945-091

SITE NUMBER N18/ 219

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Midden/Find spot

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/220

DATE VISITED 25 March 1986

SITE TYPE Find spot

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

9 5 2

Northing

0 8 2

1. Aids to relocation of site (attach a sketch map) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 36. About 500m NW of Waiotane Stream where the V-bladed shelter belt crosses the coastal 4-wheel drive track. Find spot located c5m on V-blading south of track. Both the V-bladed line and vehicle track are those closest to the coast. On seaward side of planted pine.

2. State of site and possible future damage Disturbed by bulldozed planting line.

3. Description of site (Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here)

Find spot of 3 obsidian and 1 ?basalt flake.

All the obsidian is dark green and one shows cortex.

All were found in loose V-bladed sand on a substrate of hard pan. Some fragments of mussel shell were also present, but no other cultural remains were observed.

The area is in low coastal scrub with Cup. macrocarpa (1978) on the inland side. The V-bladed line has been planted with Norfolk pine, flax and other species.

See artefact sketches.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
Address

Waipoua Forest
Private Bag
Dargaville

Tenant/Manager
Address

5. Nature of information (hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.) Brief visit by Wiki Karena

and Michael Taylor

Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held)

Nil

Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site)

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
Address

P.O. Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper
Date

Handwritten signature
25/3/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, find spot, obsidian

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (for office use)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

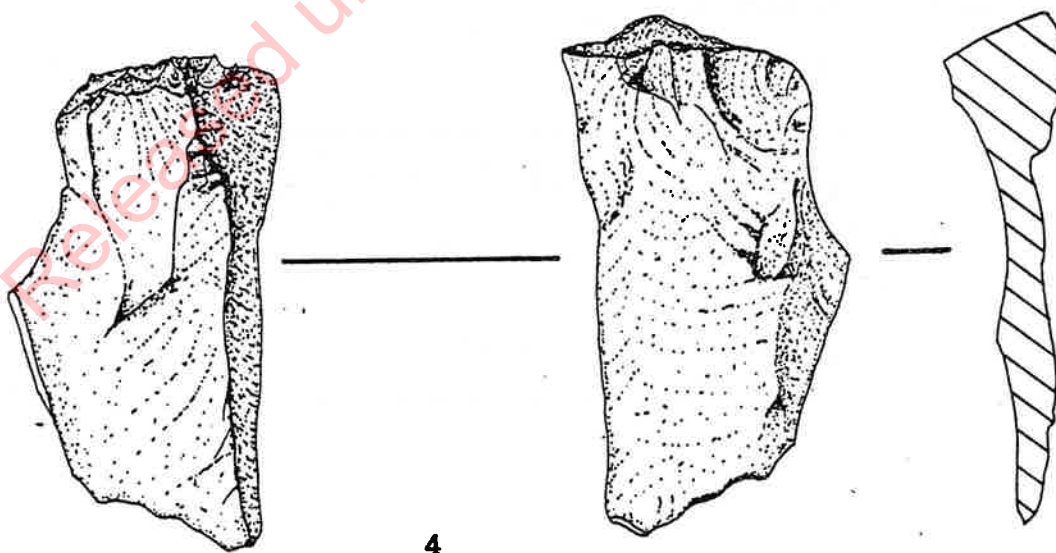
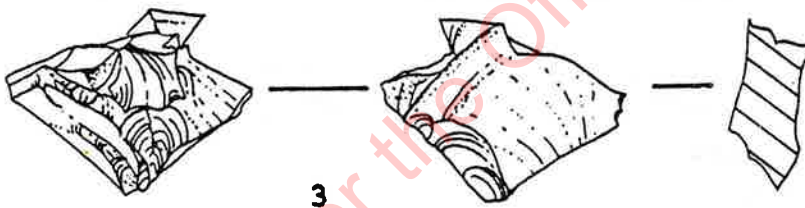
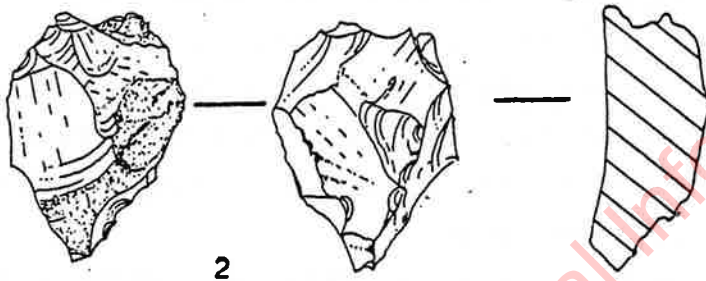
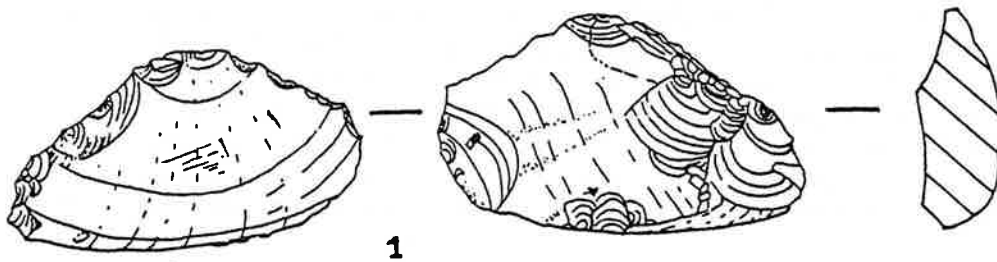
Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

Waipoua State Forest 13, stone flakes from N18/220.

Z



0 1 2 3 4 5cm

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/221

DATE VISITED 10-3-86

SITE TYPE Midden

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

9 6 5

Northing

0 5 7

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 27. Kawerua Coast. South of Kawerua Road, on V-bladed shelter belt, c350m NW of Waiotane stream. It is situated at the back of a knoll 10m from the eastern edge of the pine (ie west of a scrub filled gully). It is c120m along the V-bladed track from the NW edge of the pine, where the V-blading starts at a fence by the Kawerua paddocks.

2. State of site and possible future damage Midden exposed by bulldozing and may be entirely disturbed. Area planted in Pinus pinaster 1950, and now replanted with shelter belt trees (Norfolk pines and others).

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) Sparse, fragmented shell scatter across the track covering an area of c4x3m. Possibly part of a larger site.

Species present include: mussels, paua, catseye, whelk, white rock shell, limpets, Dosinia.

Charcoal and firecracked rock are also present. A sparse scatter of shell and stone continues along V-blading to south for several metres.

Jim Cox (Forest foreman 1940-50s) told John Coster (See Auckland file) that hangi stones with lots of shell, dog bone and tuatara jaws were found at cGR 964-057 during the planting of P. pinaster.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service

Address

Waipoua Forest
Private Bag

Dargaville

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by Michelle

Horwood, Michael Taylor and others.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Under thick pine

6. Reported by Michael Taylor

Address

P.O. Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper

Date

25/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, Kawerua, midden

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/222 Attachment 4

DATE VISITED 10 March 1986

SITE TYPE Midden

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

9 6 7

Northing

0 5 4

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 27. Access is via the coastal track that runs south from Kawerua. On a V-bladed shelter belt c60-80m NW of Waitotane Stream, and c100m from the coast. It is located at the crest of a ridge 25m before V-blading descends to the south and ends in a gully. It is about 400m SE along the track from the Kawerua paddocks where the pine begins.

2. State of site and possible future damage Disturbed by a bulldozed line which has been V-bladed and planted in Norfolk pine, flax and other species.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Small amount of shell and fire-cracked rock which covers an area of about 2.5x1.0m. The fragmentary shell included at least 7 cats eyes and some paua.

Other evidence may remain buried.

Vegetation is stunted Pinus pinaster and scrub.

4. Owner Address N.Z. Forest Service

Waipoua Forest
Private Bag
Dargaville

Tenant/Manager Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by Michelle Horwood, Michael Taylor, Wiki Karena & Annetta Sutton.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by Address Michael Taylor

P.O. Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper Date

Adrian
20/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, midden, Kawerua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

Extracts from the WAIPOUA FOREST JOURNAL 1952* regarding Kawerua

18 April 1952 Compass survey of Waikoutu section [Maori fishing Reserve of 3.5 acres]. Carried out to demark the boundaries.

28 September 1952 A discussion with Mr A. Paniora of the Waipoua Native Settlement, on the possibility of setting aside certain coastal land at Kawerua as a Wahitapu took place at Kawerua.

According to Mr. Paniora important ancestors of the present people at Waipoua first landed at a certain point on the coast. In addition Mr Paniora pointed out places where there had been some settlement by very early Maoris and also the position of burial caves now blocked by sand.

The land in question would not exceed 10 acres of coastal land which would be of nil value to the Forest Service.

It was pointed out to Mr Paniora that his proposal would be put forward through the correct channels provided that there would be no restrictions or alterations required to existing Forest Service property ie the Patrolmans lookout hut and a portion of the telephone line to this building.

Mr Paniora favoured an idea of handing over to the Forest Service all section 1, Block 1, Waipoua S.D. [Koutu Maori Fishing Reserve of 3½ acres] excepting the coastal margin of approximately 1 acre. This section would benefit the Forest Service as a road and/or firebreak could then be readily constructed from the Kawerua buildings to an area of sand approximately 60 chains to the southwest. This would in effect act as a protection line against fire as well as allowing additional access.

It was left to Mr Paniora to interview his people on these proposals. On receipt of a decision formal representations will be put in train on the question of this setting-aside and return of land.

* FOREST JOURNALS for Waipoua Forest are held at the forest headquarters. The entry was made by Mr F.T. Morrison who was then the forest O/C.

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX VI

Compartment 58 - Kauri Management

THE JOURNAL

Published by the Government of the State of New York

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX VI: Compartment 58 kauri management
(from Forester 1985).

COMPARTMENT 58

YEAR	1950	1955	1956	1957	1958	1959	1960	1961	1962	1963	1964	TOTAL
planting (ha)	4.5	2.0	2.0	1.0	1.0	5.0	4.0	6.5	4.5	4.0	3.0	37.5

Details (numbering refers to numbers on Map 5)

1. 1950 - 4.5 ha planted in kauri. Four lines fertilised with blood and bone in 1958.
2. 1955 - 2 ha planted with kauri in lines (6m x 3m) under scrub. Large broadleaf trees ringbarked in half of the area.
3. 1956 - 2 ha planted with kauri in lines (6m x 3m) large broadleaf trees ringbarked and poisoned. Also two special fertiliser plots set up and groups of totara (Podocarpus totara), kawaka (Libocedrus plumosa), rewarewa (Knightia excelsa) and kauri planted. Other species including taraire (Beilschmiëdia tarairi) and tanekaha (Phyllocladus trichomanoides) planted.

Natural regeneration in the north also released.

4. 1957 - 1 ha clearfelled and burnt. Line planted with kauri at 5.5 x 2.4 m spacing using potted stock. 0.8 ha planted with Eucalyptus spp. planted in alternate rows in west (area under 1964 plantings - No. 1) Also plots of Agathis australis planted

in small 0.4 ha area to west (under 1964 plantings
- No. 16)

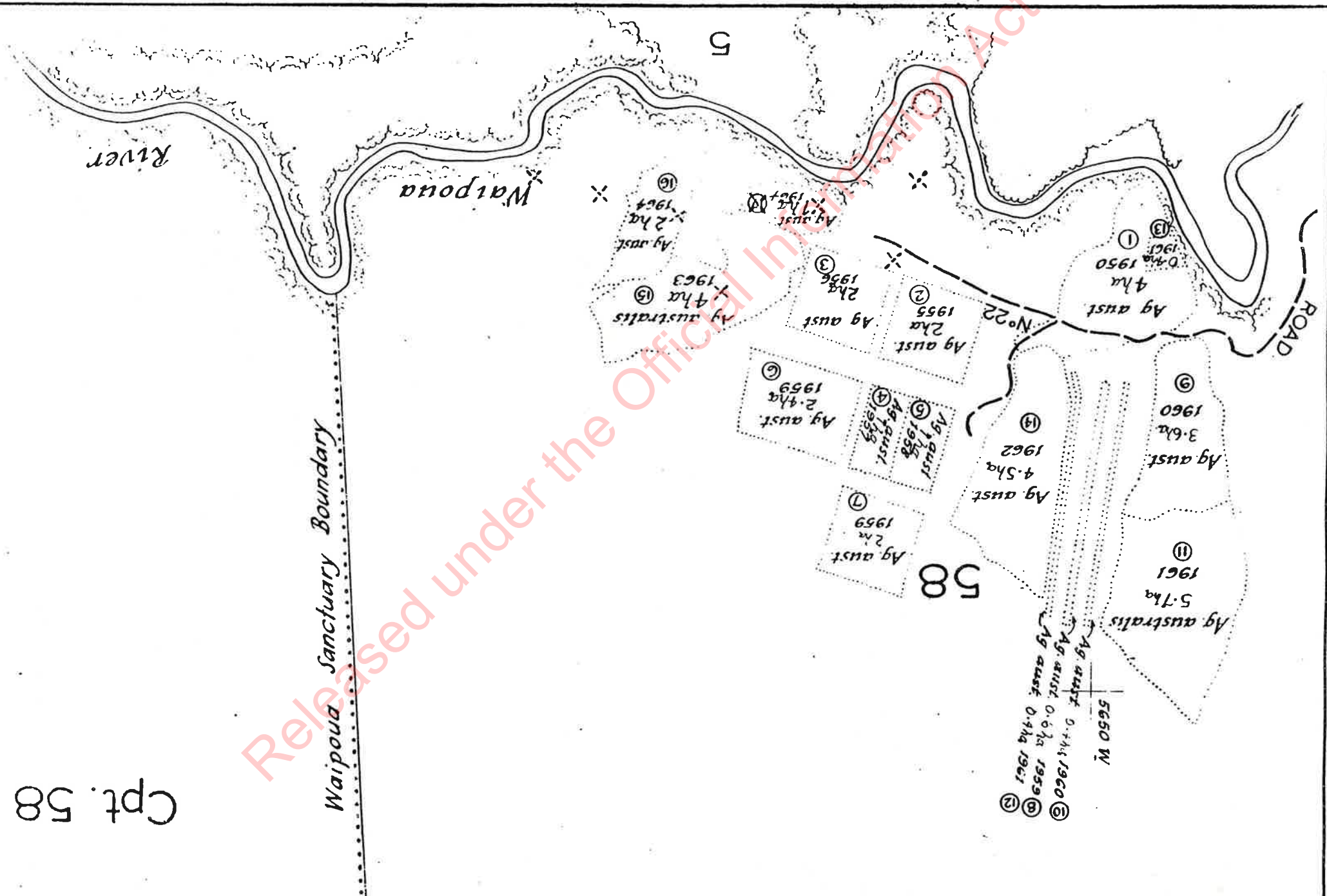
5. 1958 - 1 ha clear felled, burnt and line planted in Agathis australis at 5.5 x 2.2 m spacing using potted and bare rooted stock. Also lines of root pruning trial.
6. 1959 - 2.4 ha planted with groups of Agathis australis, Phyllocladus trichomanoides (Tanekaha) and Nothofagus spp. (beech) mostly using 2.4 m spacing. Also a small area of regeneration plots put in.
7. 2.0 ha clear felled and partly burnt. Lines of Agathis australis planted.
8. 0.6 ha strip clearfelled and burnt. Four rows planted in Agathis australis. Small area at south end of strip pre-pitted and planted in 1959 and 1960.
9. 1960 - 3.5 ha area of underscrubbed area planted with Agathis australis in lines. Plots of Nothofagus (beech) in northwest corner and five plots planted in lines in 1959 using potted Agathis australis. Two plots testing summer and winter planting in January and May 1960.
10. 0.4 ha clearfelled in a strip and planted in two rows of kauri one chain wide and also lines of kauri/tanekaha and kauri/beech.
11. 1961 - 5.7 ha planted in groups under broadleaf forest. Contains grafted kauri as centre tree in each plot. Various fertilisers applied at time of planting.
12. 0.4 ha of kauri planted in two rows in a one chain wide clearfelled strip.
13. 0.4 ha of kauri planted as part of a "Mora tree feed" experiment.

14. 1962 - 4.5 ha of kauri planted in groups in broadleaf forest. Contains grafted kauri planted as cente tree in each plot. Fertilised.
15. 1963 - 4.0 ha of kauri planted.
16. 1964 - 2.0 ha of kauri interplanted in groups under hardwood forest.
17. - 1.0 ha of kauri interplanted in groups under hardwood forest.

Released under the Official Information Act

Cpt. 58

Waipoua Sanctuary Boundary



APPENDIX VII

Compartment 58 - new site record forms
and additional information sheets

ADDITIONAL

Company No. 68 - new and revised forms
and additional information sheets

Released under the Official Information Act

<p>NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION</p> <p>SITE DESCRIPTION FORM</p> <p>Map Number N18 Map Name WAIPOUA Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 059-035</p>	<p>SITE NUMBER N18/147</p> <hr/> <p>SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER</p> <hr/> <p>SITE TYPE PITS</p>
---	---

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

This site consists of a series of 10 clear pits running down a north-south spur about 70m north of the Waipoua River edge. See site plan.

It is situated about 14m west of N18/148 across a steep gully. See N18/148 site record updates and plan.

Note grid reference correction. Also the directions to North and N18/148 on the original site plan are confused and should be disregarded.

The site is planted in Eucalyptus species.

The last pit (1) is about 15m southeast of possum line marker No. 42.

An area of stone heaps occurs northwest of the site further up the ridge.

Further down the ridge on which N18/147 is located, close to the river, are two pits, N18/214.

The site was marked with a permanent tanalised post bearing a metal tag with the NZAA site number on 18 March 1986 (See plan).

M. Taylor

24-3-86

WAIPOUA S.F.13

CPT. 58

SITE N18/147

PITS

0 1 2 3 4 5 metres

Post

MN

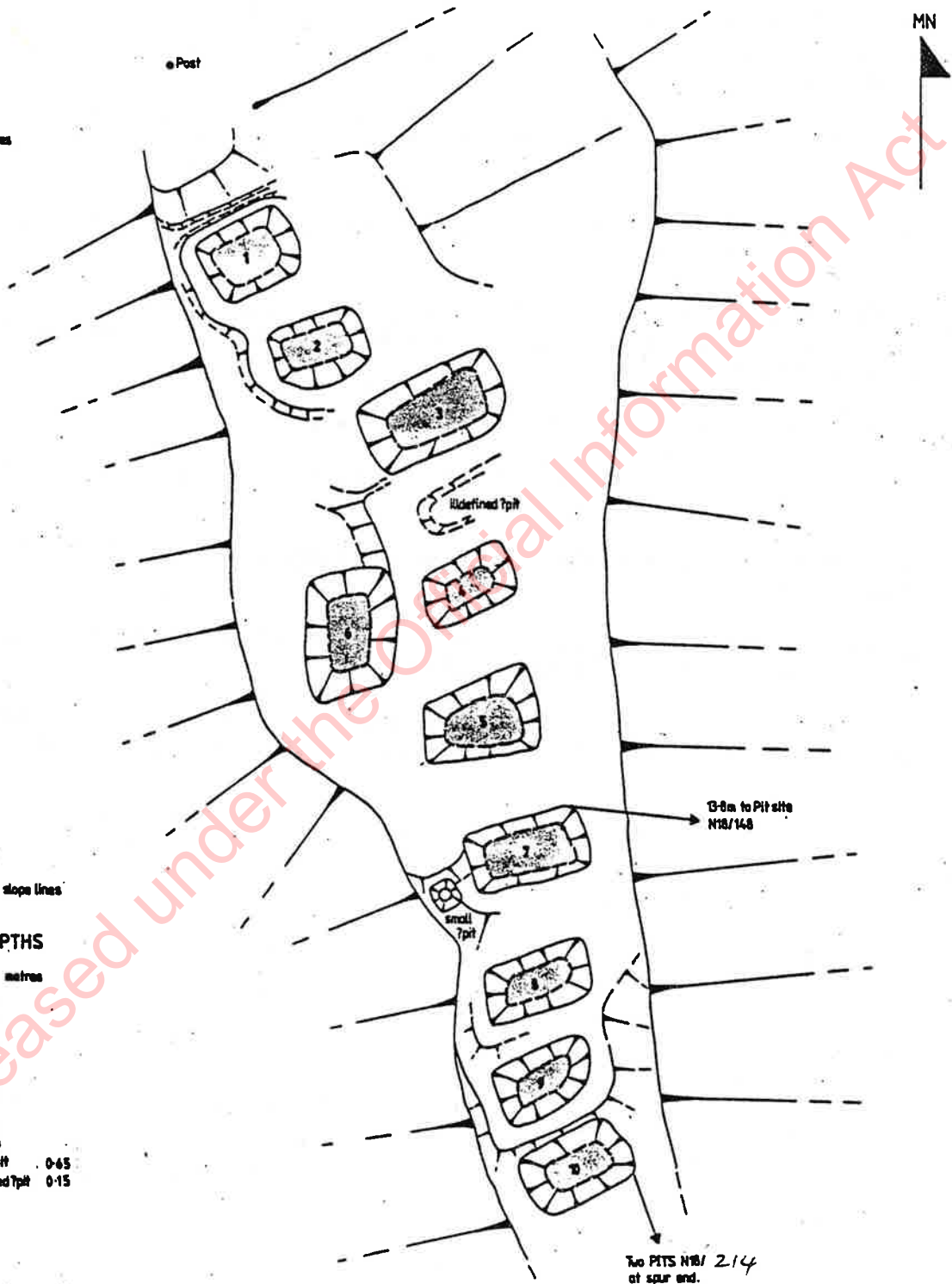
KEY

II slope lines

PIT DEPTHS

1	0-35 metres
2	0-95
3	0-60
4	0-85
5	1-20
6	0-60
7	0-65
8	1-0
9	0-75
10	0-90
small 7pit	0-65
illdefined 7pit	0-15

Tape and compass survey by W. Karewa
M. Horwood and A. Sutton 19-3-86.
Drawn by A. Sutton 15-7-86.



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM		SITE NUMBER N18/148
Map Number N18 Map Name WAIPOUA Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 036-059		SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
		SITE TYPE PITS

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

A series of well defined pits located on a small ridge about 14m east of N 18/147. The sites are separated by a steep stream gully. The site was visited on 28 January and 18 March 1986.

Note grid reference correction.

From N18/148 to N18/151 is 90m at 92° (see plan). N18/151 is at a higher level.

Possum line marker No. 45 is about 12m at 65° from the post marking N18/148.

Eucalyptus species are planted on the southwest end of the site.

Two groups of stone heaps are located in the gully further towards the river.

A permanent tanalised post bearing a metal tag with the NZAA site number was placed on the site on 18 March 1986.

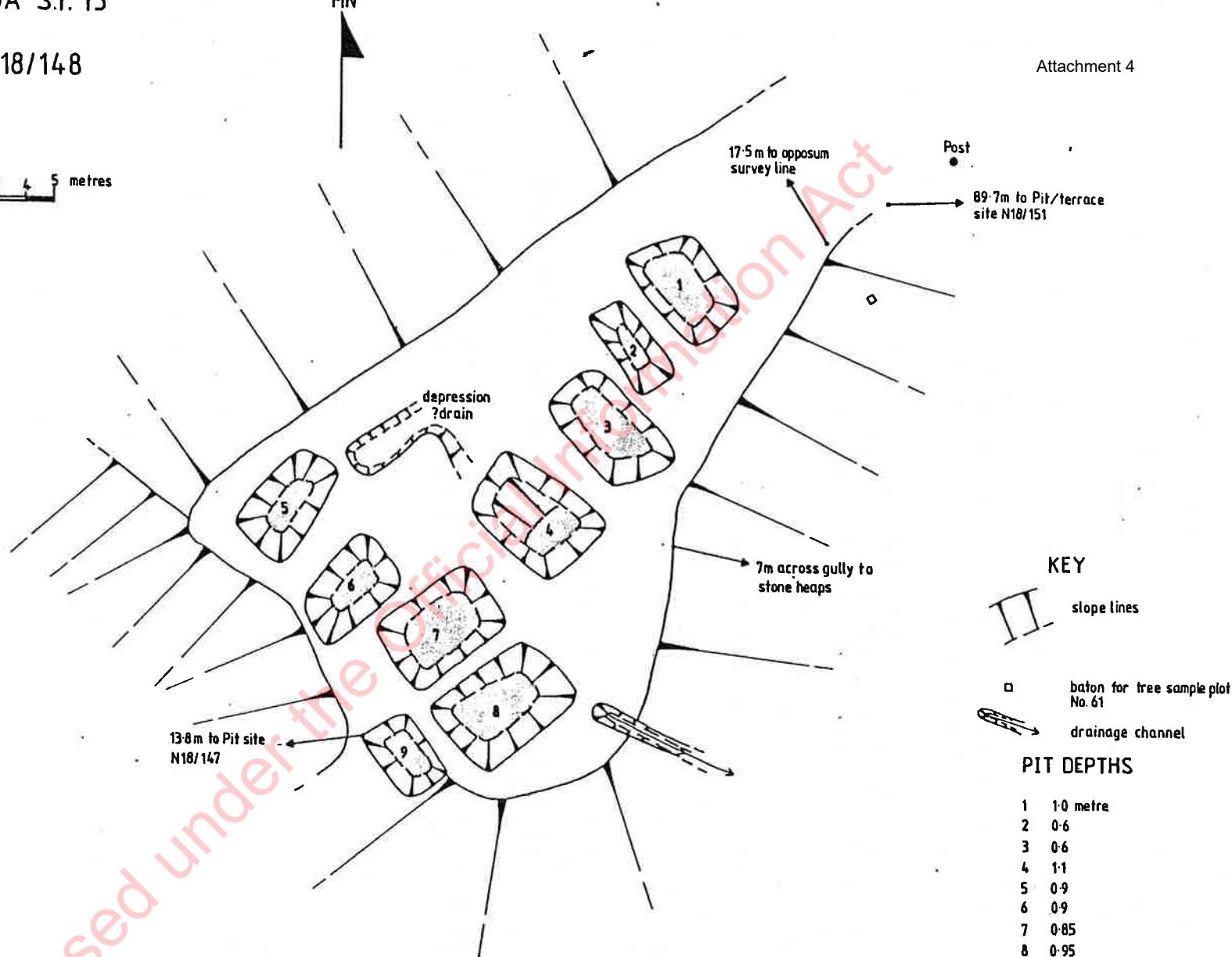
M. Taylor

24-3-86

WAIPUUA S.T. 13
CPT. 58
SITE N18/148
PITS

Attachment 4

0 1 2 3 4 5 metres



Tape and compass survey by W. Karena,
M. Horwood and R. Nichols 18.3.86.
Drawn by A. Sutton 10.6.86.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE DESCRIPTION FORM	SITE NUMBER N18/151
Map Number N18 Map Name WAIPOUA Map Edition 3rd, 1975 Grid Reference 036-060	SITE NAME: MAORI OTHER
	SITE TYPE PITS

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

A new plan of this site was prepared in 1986 (see plan).

This site was chosen to be used as a central point from which the position of other sites in the vicinity could be fixed.

The site is located in large kanuka on the 3rd terrace level above the river . It is about 350m from the river.

The site is located on the possum sample line which is marked with blue plastic tape. Trap locations on the sample line are marked with white metal tags with red numbers. N18/151 is located between numbers 48 and 49.

One permanent tanalised post with a metal tage showing the site number was placed in position on the site on 18-3-86.

Vegetation: Main canopy trees- kanuka/manuka
 Middle- mapou, fern trees, totara
 Lower- coprosma, mapou, fern, etc.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd 1975
Grid Reference 036-060

SITE NUMBER N18/151

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

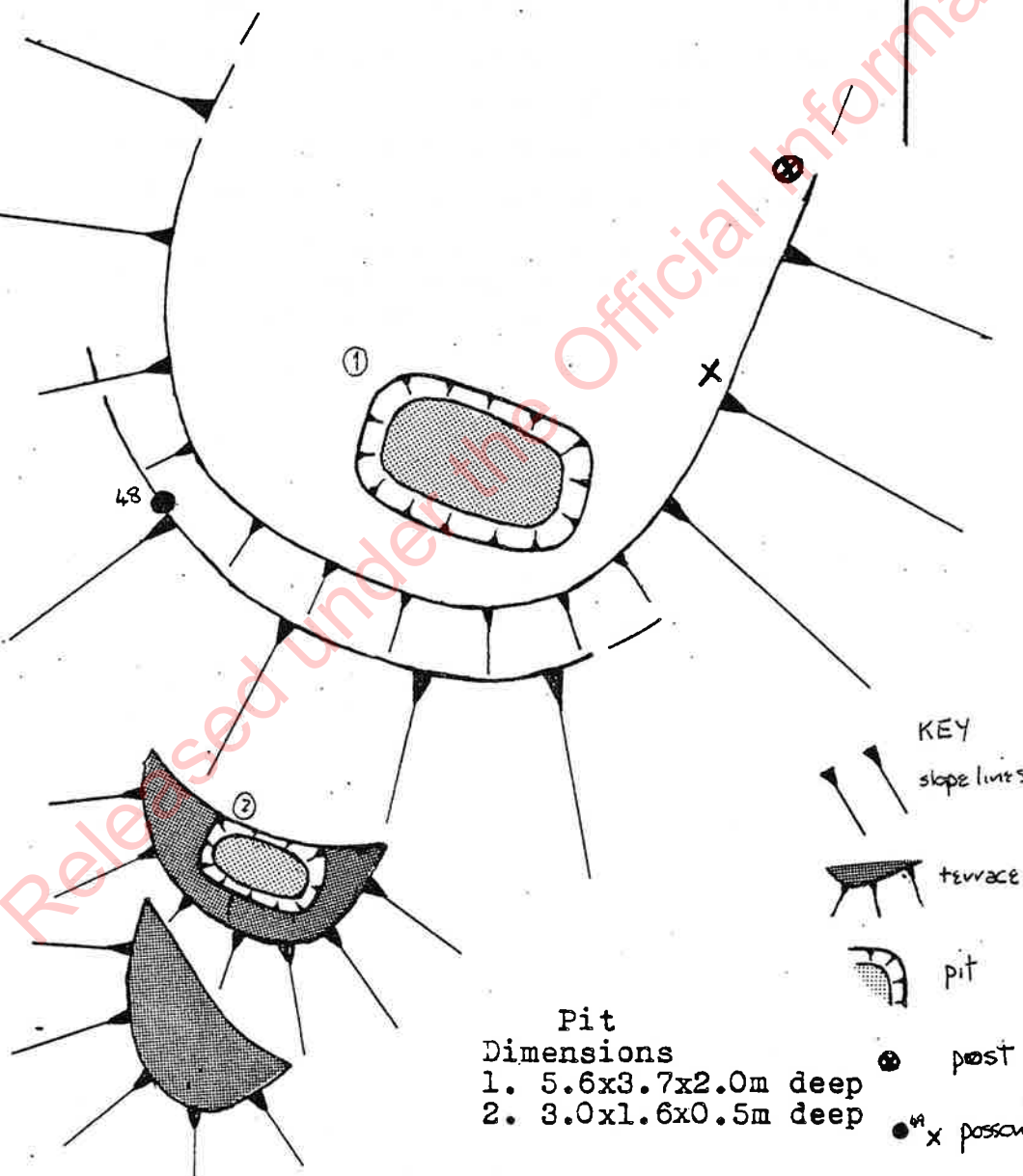
SITE TYPE Pits

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



N N

49






WAIPOUA S.F. 13
CPT. 58
SITE N18/152
PITS

0 2 4 6 8 10 metres

MN

Waipoua
River

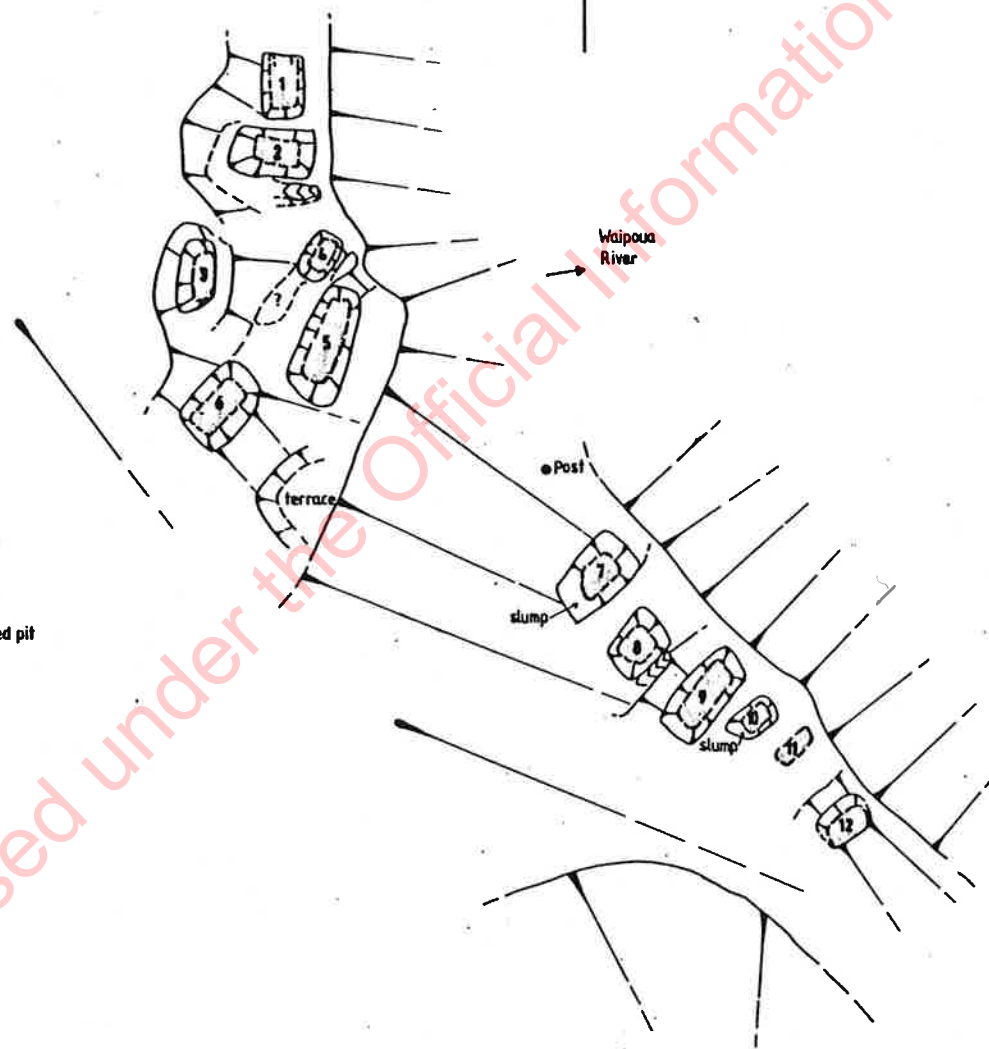
KEY

-  slopelines
-  possible infilled pit
-  bank/?pit rim

PIT DEPTHS

1	0.55 m
2	0.90
3	0.25
4	0.25
5	1.00
6	0.80
7	0.80
8	0.40
9	0.70
10	0.30
11	0.15 illdefined
12	0.20

Tape and compass survey by
W. Karena, M. Horwood and
A. Sutton 14.3.86.
Drawn by A. Sutton 28.7.86.



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number M18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER M18/205 Attachment 4
 DATE VISITED 17, 24-1-86, 17-3-86
 SITE TYPE Pits, terrace & stone
 SITE NAME: MAORI heap
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 6

Northing

0 5 9 .5

1. Aids to relocation of site (attach a sketch map) Waipoua State Forest, Compartment 58

Approximately 650 m west of Kauri Sanctuary boundary. Located on south edge of an old river terrace that drops steeply to the river. M18/152 is on the same level (85m asl), and is 74m NE from post to post. M18/151 is at 330° at 110 paces. See SRF for M18/151 for map.

2. State of site and possible future damage Well defined features, in open manuka bush. Location is remote. Pigs may cause damage.

3. Description of site (Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here)

See site plan. The site consists of 7 pits, 1 stone heap and 1 terrace. There is also 1 slight depression which is perhaps a pit. From pit 1 to pit 7 is 15m. The stone heap is 8.5m NW from pit 1. It measures 2.0m in diameter and is 0.55m high.

The vegetation consists mainly of very large kanuka, with tree ferns, mapou, totara, kohekohe, and tawa.

The site was permanently marked with a tanalised fence post on 22-4-86.

Pit dimensions: 1. 3x2m, 0.5m deep. 2. 2x1.5m, 0.3m deep. 3. 4.7x3m 0.6m deep. 4. 5x3m, 0.75m deep. 5. 3x2m, 0.1m deep, 6. 4x3.5m, 0.5m deep. 7. 3.2x2.2m, 0.4m deep.

4. Owner

Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.) Extended visits by W. Karena, P. Bristow, M. Taylor and M. Horwood.
 Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held)

Nil
 Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site)

Under thick bush

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR

Address P. O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

28/9/86

7. Key words

pits, terrace, stone heap, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (for office use)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT.58
SITE N18/205
PITS

0 1 2 3 4 5 metres

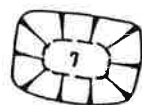
MN

110 paces to site N18/151 pits
and opposum survey line tag No.49

83m to
stoneheap

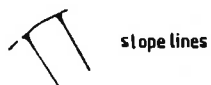
Post

24.1m to Terrace/hearth
site N18/207



outlying pit, 15m
from main complex

KEY



slope lines

Pit Depths

- 1 0.5 metres
- 2 0.3
- 3 ca. 0.6 water filled
- 4 0.75
- 5 0.1
- 6 ca. 0.5 water filled
- 7 0.4 outlier

illdefined pit
edge

Tape and compass survey by
W. Karena and M. Horwood 17.3.86.
Drawn by A. Sutton 9.6.86.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number

NZMS 1 map name

NZMS 1 map edition

N18

Waipoua

3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER

DATE VISITED

SITE TYPE

SITE NAME:

N18/206

17-3-86, 22-4-86

Pits and terraces

MAORI

OTHER

Attachment 4

Grid Reference

Easting

0

3

7

Northing

0

6

3

1. Aids to relocation of site (attach a sketch map) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58
See location plan with N18/151. Pits are on 4th level (at 145m asl), and approximately 500m from the river. The pits are on the edge of a flat which drops steeply down to a gully, where about 40m to ESE is situated site N18/. The site is NW and about 200m from N18/151. It is up a steep bush covered slope from N18/151.
2. State of site and possible future damage The pits are well preserved in thick broad-leaf forest, with dense supplejack in parts. The location is remote and future human interference is unlikely.
3. Description of site (Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here) See site plan . The site consists of 10, open, rec-tangular pits, on two levels, that curve around a spur end. A striking earth "wall" is present between pits 1 and 3, and pits 2 and 4 (See profile). See description form for pit dimensions. A drain 7m west of pit 1 runs south over the steep edge of the spur.
Vegetation is thick broadleaf forest with totara, kahikatea, nikau, fern trees, and supplejack. The understorey trees have been cut during kauri management trials , and the site is marked with plot battens 203, 208 and 218.
A permanent tanalised fence post was placed on the site on the 22-4-86.

4. Owner

Address

NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE

WAIPOUA FOREST

P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.) Reconnaissance visit followed by detailed tape and compass mapping of the site.
Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held)
Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site)
Nil
Under dense bush

6. Reported by

Address

MICHAEL TAYLOR

P.O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

28/9/86

7. Key words

Pits, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (for office use)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

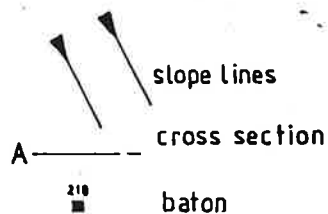
Local body

WAIPOUA S.F.13
CPT. 58
SITE N18/206
PITS & TERRACE

Attachment 4

MN

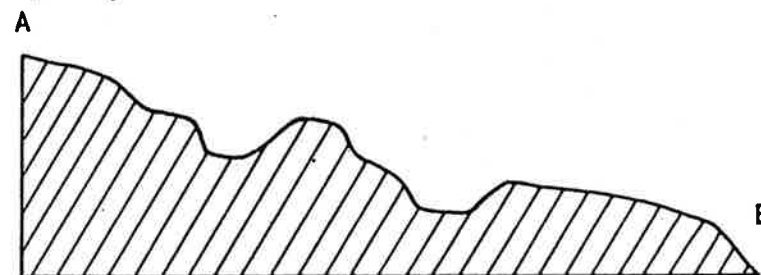
KEY



pit bases
illdefined

0 1 2 3 4 5
metres

Tape & compass plan 17.3.86
by M. Horwood, W. Karena, A. Sutton
drawn by M. Horwood 25.3.86



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 037-063

SITE NUMBER N18/ 206

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits and terrace

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Pit measurements -see site plan

1. 4x2.8m, 0.95m deep.
2. 4.8x2.6m, 0.60m deep.
3. 5x3.2m, 0.80m deep.
4. 5x3m, 1.10m deep.
5. 3.6x2m, 0.30m deep.
6. 3.4x2.4m, waterfilled.
7. 5.2x3.4m, 1.25m deep.
8. 5x2.6m, waterfilled.
9. 4x2.2m, 0.5m deep.
10. 3.6x2m, 0.55m deep.

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/207
 DATE VISITED 17 & 18-3-86
 SITE TYPE Terrace with stone hearth
 SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 7

Northing

0 6 0

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58. The terrace is located on the north side of the river on a south facing slope which runs to the river edge. It is 200m west of pit site N18/152, and 225° to a permanent post on the adjacent pit site N18/GR 036-059.5. See SRF N18/151 for map of site locations.

2. State of site and possible future damage Located deep in indigenous bush. Some disruption of the surface by tree root growth.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See sketch on separate sheet

Well defined single terrace facing SEE with a rectangular stone hearth measuring 0.75x 0.63m (outside dimensions).

The terrace is 7.5x4.5m

A few stones 15-20cm are scattered about on the terrace.

Vegetation growing on and about the terrace consists of large kanuka, punga, mamaku, and nikau.

4. Owner

Address

NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by M. Taylor, M. Horwood, A. Sutton and W. Karena.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

In thick bush

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR

Address

P. O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

7. Key words

terrace, stone hearth, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

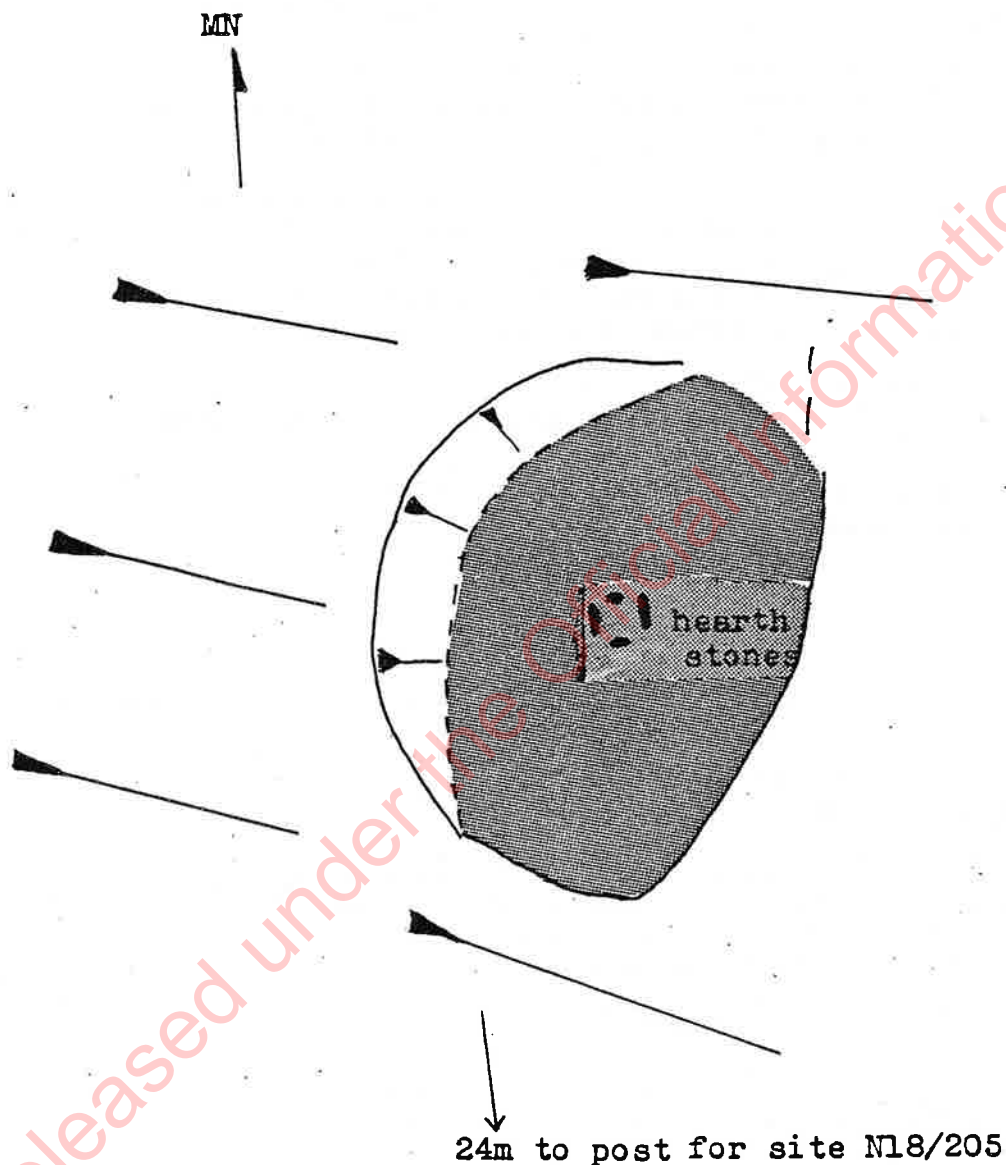
SITE NUMBER N18/207

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 037-060

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Terrace with stone
hearth

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

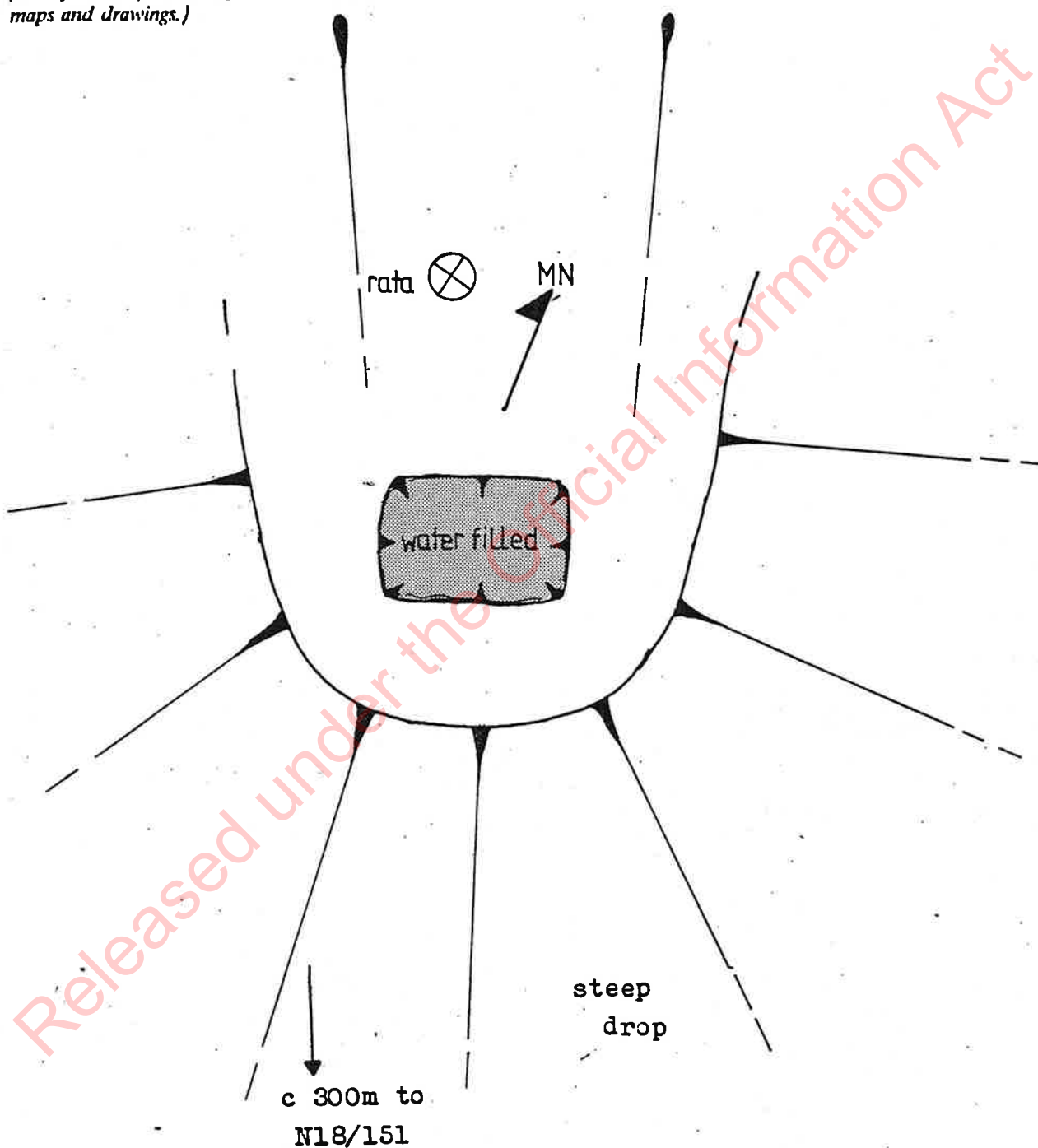
Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 038-065

SITE NUMBER N18/218

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Pit

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



sketch only-not to scale

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/218 Attachment 4

DATE VISITED 24-1-86, 19-3-86

SITE TYPE Pit

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 8

Northing

0 6 5

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58.
The pit is located on a steep ridge, about 300m north of N18/151.
It is above the main block of kanuka forest near the eastern edge
of Cpt 58. The ridge levels off and narrows at the pit location

2. State of site and possible future damage Good condition, well defined, deep in
indigenous forest.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Single pit near the apex of main kanuka block.

The pit is 2x3m and about 1m deep. The northern wall is undercut
up to about 40cm. There is a well defined level rim about 2m wide
on 3 sides of the pit. The pit contains water.

Makamaka is the dominant tree, but vegetation includes large kanuka,
rata, punga, broadleaf species, nikau, nienie and young kauri.

anuka is present on the ridge top for some distance above the pit.

4. Owner

Address

NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
WAIPOUA FOREST
P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by Robert Pollock
and Annetta Sutton and Michael Taylor

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Under dense bush

6. Reported by

MICHAEL TAYLOR

Address

P.O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

Jeffrey
27/9/86

7. Key words

Pit, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 040-061

SITE NUMBER N18/ 217

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Compartment 58

MN

Stone
heaps

Kauri
Sanctuary

Sketch
only

Waipoua River

0 10

metres

7

6

5

4

3

2

1

MN

Other stone heaps also occur in the vicinity in dense bush.

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/217 Attachment 4
DATE VISITED 24-1-86
SITE TYPE Stone heaps
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 4 0

Northing

0 6 1

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13, Compartment 58. About 150 metres west of the boundary between Cpt 58 and the Kauri Sanctuary, and west of a prominent hair-pin bend in the Waipoua River.
See sketch plan attached

2. State of site and possible future damage The heaps are all very eroded and damaged by tree root growth. The site is remote and human interference is unlikely in the future.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See attached plan. At least seven stone heaps,

the majority of which are located at the back of a river terrace, at the base of the scrap.

From the eastern end the heap dimensions are:

1. 1.0m diameter, 0.3m high, mostly small stones with some large.
2. 2.0 diameter, 0.5m high, medium sized stones.
3. 1.5m diameter, 0.3m high, mostly soil and small stones. Very disturbed with tree growing out of centre.
4. 4.0x 2.0m, 1.0m high(max.), large and small stones. The northern end has an intact face 0.5m high.
5. 1.5m diameter, 0.2m high, large stones and soil.
6. 2.0m diameter, 0.2m high, large stones.
7. 1.0m diameter, 0.4m high, small stones.

4. Owner N.Z.F.S.
Address Waipoua Forest
Private Bag
Dargaville

Tenant/Manager
Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by P. Bristow, M. Horwood, G. Jackman & M. Taylor.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Not visible under thick bush

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
Address P.O. Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper
Date

Michael Taylor
24/1/86

7. Key words Stone heaps, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/215

DATE VISITED 18-3-86

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 7

Northing

0 6 1

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58
 The site is on the north side of the river, about 600m downstream from the compartment boundary with the Kauri Sanctuary. It is located 32m at 50° to the lower part (B) of N18/152, and it is 42m at 230° to the pit site N18/205. See SRF for N18/151 for area map.

2. State of site and possible future damage Partially intact stoneheaps in remote area of bush. Future damage unlikely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) Four stone heaps on SE facing slope. The two central heaps have intact lower facings and are made up of predominantly large stones.

The vegetation is very large kanuka.

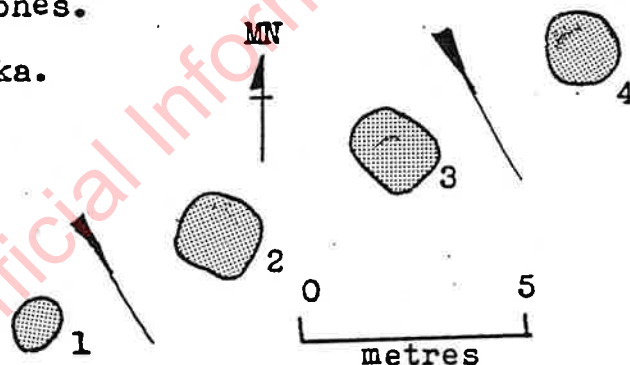
Heap 1: 1.0x1.0m, 0.3m high

Heap 2: 2.0x1.5m, 0.8m high

Heap 3: 2.0x1.5m, 0.8m high

Heap 4: 2.0x1.5m, 0.5m high

sketch plan only



4. Owner

Address

NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*)

M. Taylor and M. Horwood.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Under thick bush

Brief visits by A. Sutton,

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR

Address

P. O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

Michael Taylor
 25/9/86

7. Key words

stone heaps, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

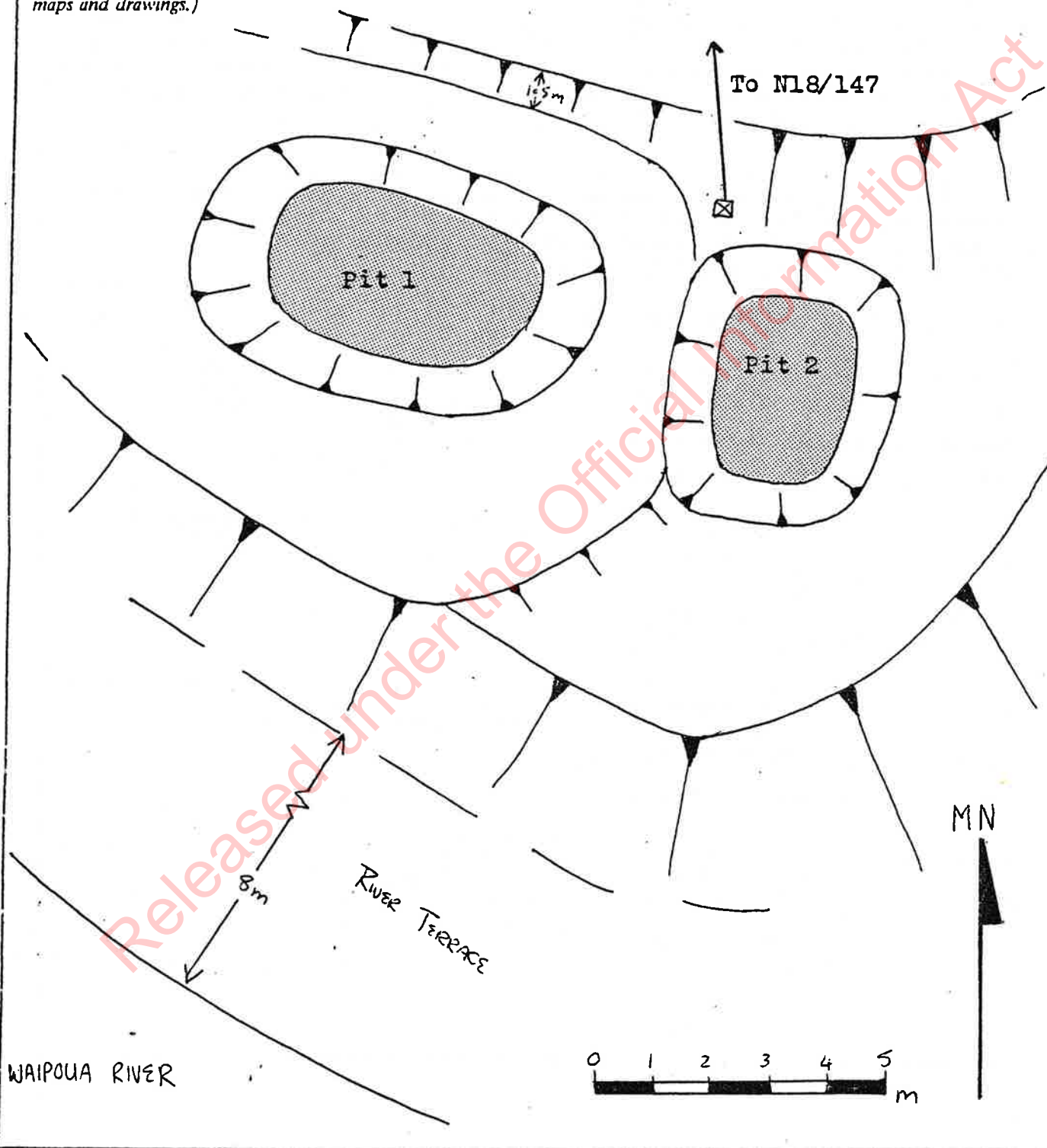
SITE NUMBER N18/214

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 034-059

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/214

DATE VISITED 19-3-86

SITE TYPE Pits

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 4

Northing

0 5 9

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58. On river terrace above river, on end of ridge. From the point marked on the site plan it is 100m to NWW up the ridge to pit 10 on site N18/147. Streams in gullies are on either side of the site. The site is 51m asl.

2. State of site and possible future damage Clear well defined pits. Site is situated on the edge of a trial eucalyptus plot. Future damage unlikely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See separate plan.

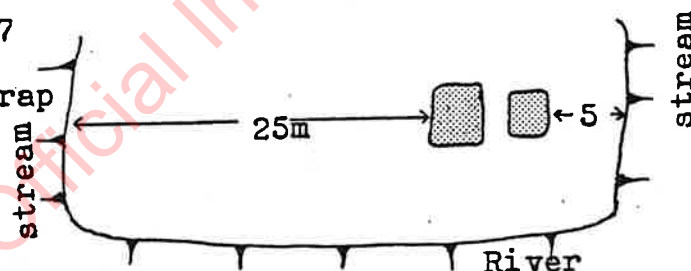
Site consists of two pits situated on a flat above the Waipoua River. Site includes a level area extending c25m to SW of the pits.

Dimensions: Pit 1: 6x3.5m, 1.6

Pit 2: 4x3m, 1.2m deep

Between these 2 pits and N18/147 on the same ridge is a terrace. It measures 8x3.5m with a 1m scrap and faces SE. It is c16m from pit 10 on N18/147.

Vegetation on the site includes totara, manuka and others.



4. Owner

Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by A. Sutton,

M. Horwood and M. Taylor.
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*) Nil

Under thick bush

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR
 Address

P, O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

Signature
 27/4/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, pits

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference

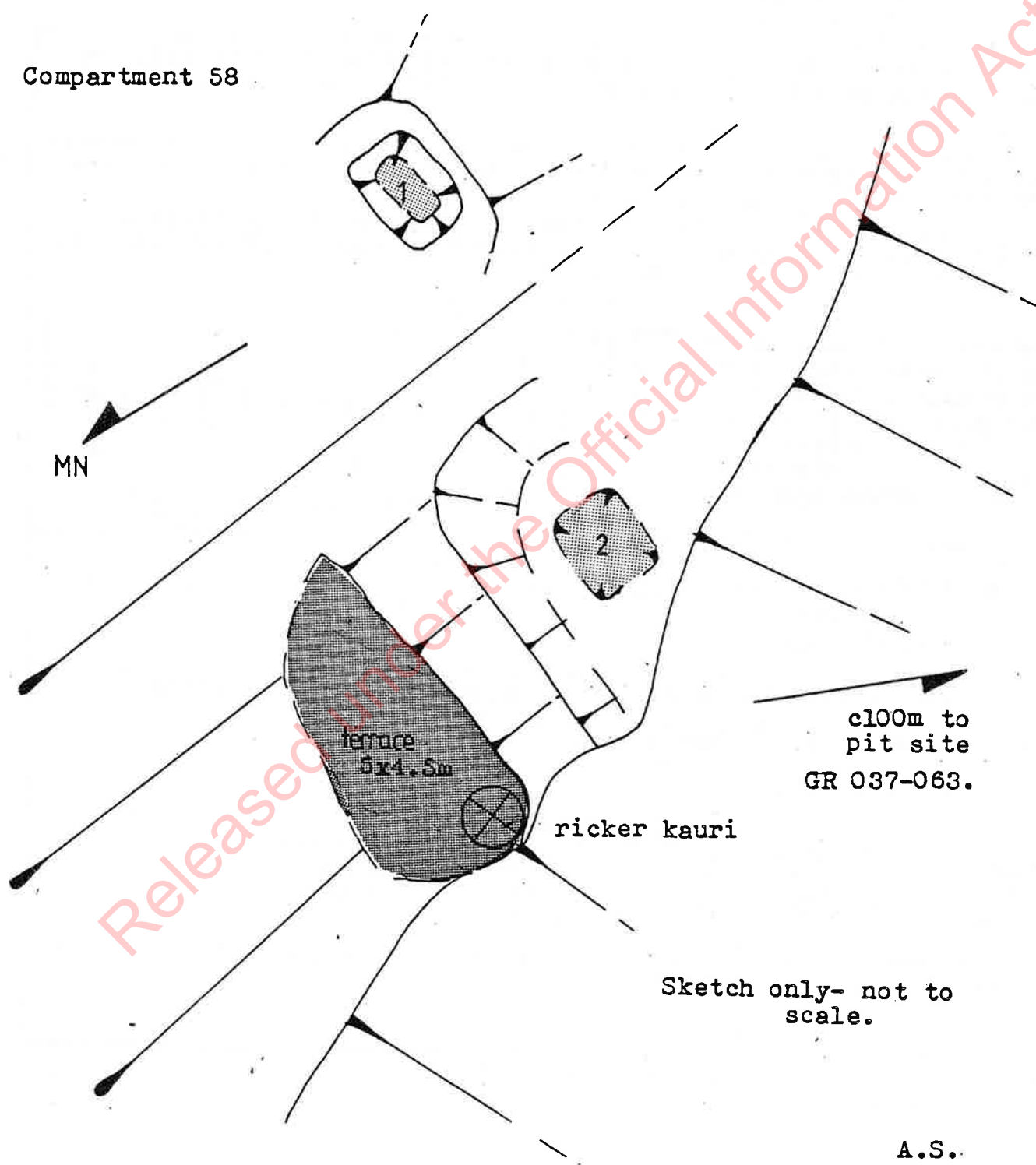
SITE NUMBER N18/213

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits and terrace

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Compartment 58



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER ^{Attachment 4} N18/213
 DATE VISITED 19-3-86
 SITE TYPE Pits and terrace
 SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

037

Northing

064

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest, Compartment 58. Access by foot across river, NW from N18/104 in Cpt 5, or via Papa-tea Road. Located on 4th old river terrace level and above N18/151. Site is approximately 100m N from pit site at GR 037-063, across a flat and up a steep scrap. On level ground at base of steep spur.

2. State of site and possible future damage Reasonable condition, in thick bush, in remote location. Some damage by tree roots, but future modification is unlikely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See separate sketch plan.

Two small shallow pits and a small terrace.

Dimensions: Pit 1: 2x1.5m, 0.5m deep with a level rim all around.

Pit 2: 1.5x1.5m, poorly defined.

The site is outside (west of) the area of kanuka bush and is in broadleaf forest. Trees include one large ricker kauri on the terrace edge, and large punga, mamaku, and nikau.

There is a good view from the site to the south across the river to Compartment 5.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua State Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Tenant/Manager
 Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by Annetta Sutton.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

In thick bush

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

25/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, pits, terrace

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

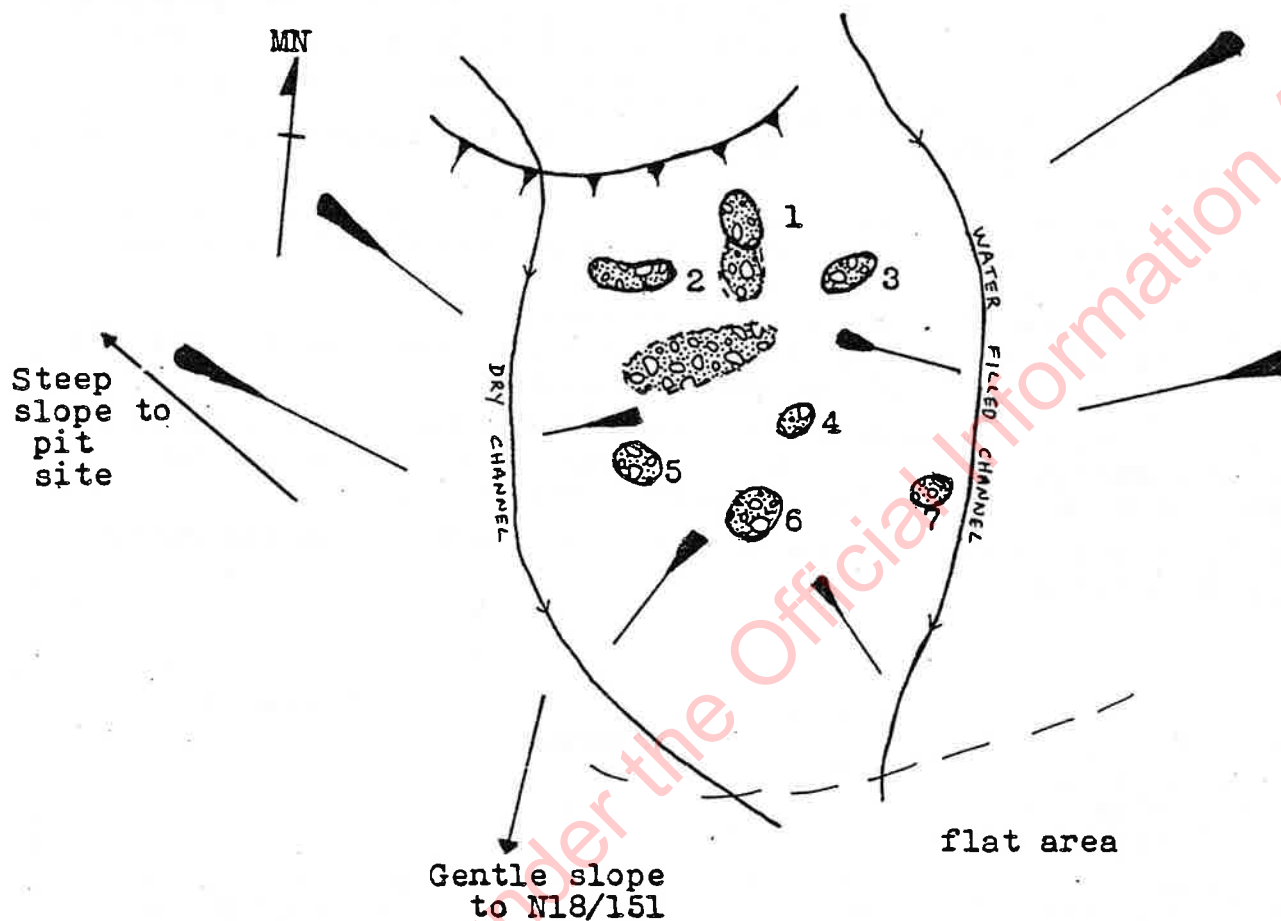
Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 036-062

SITE NUMBER N18/212

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Heap descriptions

1. Large stones (40cm diameter plus)
Also some very large rocks (1x0.5m).
2. As above.
3. As above.
4. Large stones (40cm diameter plus).
5. Large stones (40-50cm diameter).
6. Large stones (40cm plus diameter).
7. As above.

All heaps are 50cm plus in height.

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER ^{Attachment 4} N18/212
 DATE VISITED 17-1-86
 SITE TYPE Stone heaps
 SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 6

Northing

0 6 2

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58.
 The site is located on and adjacent to a small stream c150m north and above (but on the same level) as N18/151. The site is at the base of a slope which rises steeply to site at GR 037-063.

2. State of site and possible future damage The heaps are mainly collapsed. The site location is remote in dense bush, and future modification is unlikely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See separate sketch.

There are seven stone heaps covering an area about 50x50m. They are located on a moderate slope in between two small stream courses.

The amount of stone increases up the slope.

The site is outside, but adjacent to the area of bush dominated by large kanuka. The vegetation consists of kohekohe, karaka, large nikau, and supplejack which occurs especially on the lower slopes.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua State Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Tenant/Manager
 Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by Robert Pollock and Michael Taylor. Tape and compass sketch plan.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Under dense bush

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

7. Key words

Waipoua, stone heaps

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

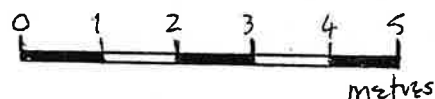
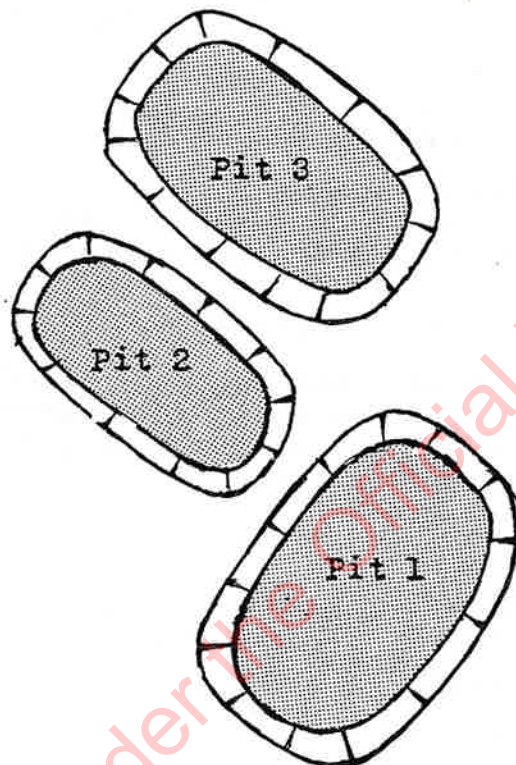
Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 036-063.5

SITE NUMBER N18/ 211

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



SKETCH ONLY

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/211
DATE VISITED 17, 19-3-86
SITE TYPE Pits
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

036

Northing

063.5

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58. Access via Papatea Road, or across the river from Cpt 5(N18/104). The site is about 250m above and NW of N18/151, on the 4th level above the river. It is about 25m NW from site GR 037-063 on a flat that runs from behind that site.

2. State of site and possible future damage Open pits in remote thick bush. Future disturbance unlikely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See separate sketch plan.

The site consists of 3 open rectangular pits.

Dimensions: Pit 1- 4x2.5m

Pit 2- 3.5x1.6m

Pit 3- 4x2.2m

All pits contain water and have frogs in residence.

The site is outside the area of large kanuka bush in broadleaf forest. There is a large rata adjacent to the pits.

The area has been used in kauri management trials and the understorey has been cut out.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
Address Waipoua State Forest 13
Private Bag
Dargaville

Tenant/Manager
Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by A. Sutton,
M. Horwood, W. Karena, and M. Taylor
Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Under thick bush

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
Address P.O. Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper
Date

Michael Taylor
27/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, pits

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/210 Attachment 4

DATE VISITED 17-3-86

SITE TYPE Terrace

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 7 . 5

Northing

0 6 1

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58

Located on gentle SE facing slope c60m ESE of N18/151. The site is about 180m above and north of the river and is towards the eastern edge of the kanuka bush. It is about 30m above the pit site at N18/GR 036-059.5.

2. State of site and possible future damage In mature kanuka, poorly defined and damaged by tree roots and pigs.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Single terrace facing SE, measuring about 9x4m with a shallow scrap 1m wide.

The main trees are very large kanuka with a light understorey.

4. Owner
Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
WAIPOUA FOREST
P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager
Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by M. Taylor
and M. Horwood

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Under thick bush

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR
Address P.O. BOX 3931
AUCKLAND

Filekeeper
Date

Michael Taylor
28/9/86

7. Key words

Terrace, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 037-059

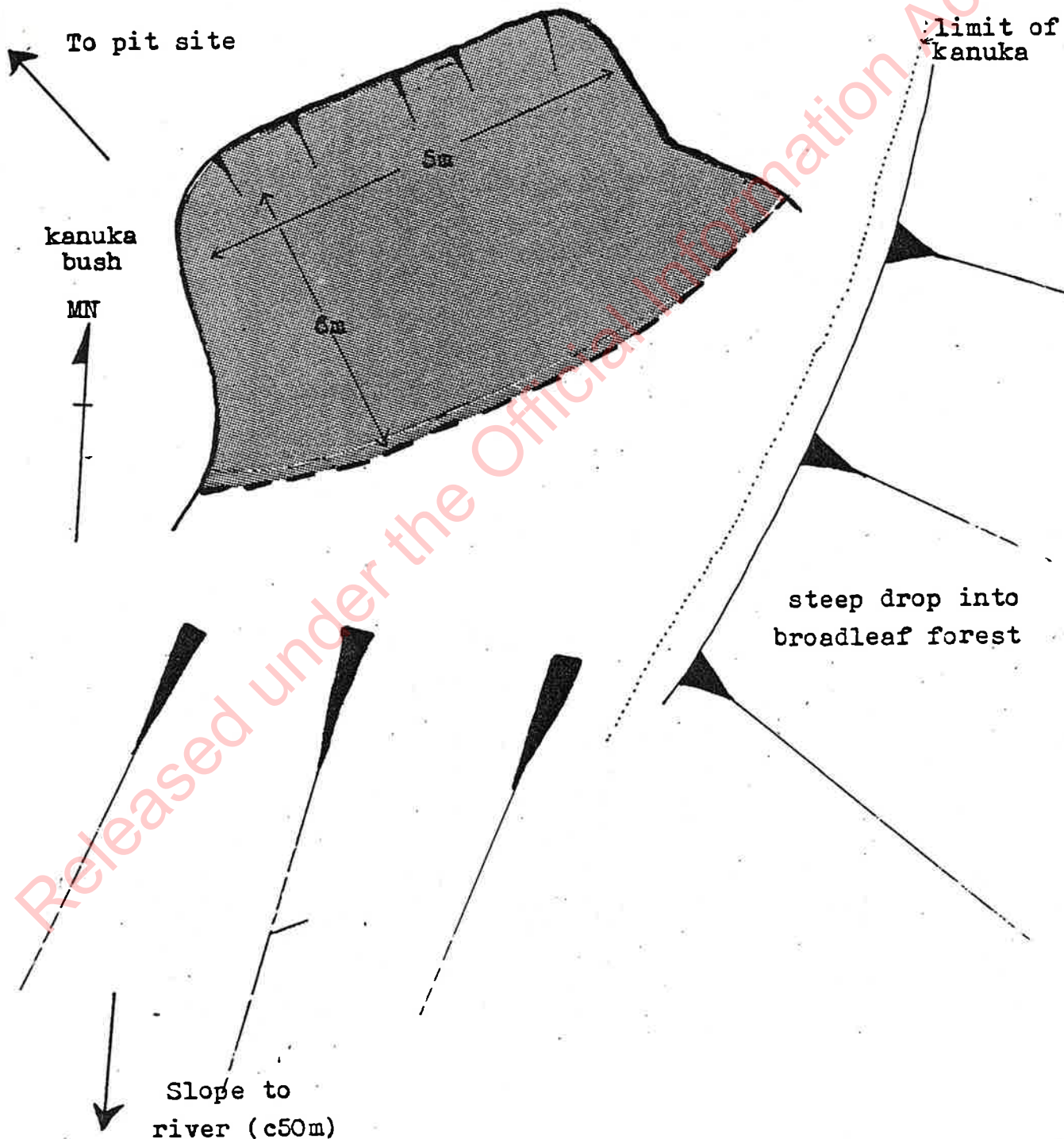
SITE NUMBER N18/ 209

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Terrace

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Cpt. 58



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/209 Attachment 4
DATE VISITED 24-1-86
SITE TYPE Terrace
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0	3	7
---	---	---

Northing

0	5	9
---	---	---

1. Aids to relocation of site (attach a sketch map) Waipoua State Forest 13, Compartment 58. The terrace is approximately 50m upslope from the edge of the Waipoua River. To the east there is a steep drop down to a lower level. The terrace is 40m SE of pit site N18/GR 036-059.5. See SRF N18/151 map.

2. State of site and possible future damage Clearly defined terrace in remote area of bush. Some tree root damage. Vulnerable to damage by wild pigs.

3. Description of site (Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here)

See sketch plan.

Single terrace in mature kanuka on a south facing slope ie towards the river. The terrace is 6x5m and widens on its open side.

The scrap at the back of the terrace is 75cm high.

Large kanuka is the main canopy tree. There are puna growing from the terrace.

There are loose rocks on the terrace but no sign of a hearth.

4. Owner

Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
WAIPOUA FOREST
P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager

Address

5. Nature of information (hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.) Brief visit by Michael Taylor.

Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held)

Nil

Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site)

In dense bush

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR

Address P.O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

25/9/86

7. Key words

terrace, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (for office use)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/208

DATE VISITED 19-3-86, 24-4-86 Attachment 4

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 3 6

Northing

0 6 4

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest, Compartment 58.
 Access via Papatea Road, or across Waipoua River from N18/104.
 Site is on a south to southwest slope in tall nikau. It is about
 50m NWW from the pit site at GR 037-063, past the smaller pit
 site at GR 036-063.5.

2. State of site and possible future damage In remote location under very tall nikau
 with an open understorey. Damage unlikely unless by pigs.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)
 Seventeen (or more) stone heaps covering an area
 about 50x50m.
 Heaps are made up of mainly large stones (ie 30-50cm), and the
 heaps are about 2m in diameter.
 A drainlike feature is present on the north-west edge of the
 main stone heap group, running downslope.
 Vegetation is principally very tall nikau with some broadleaf trees
 The understorey is quite open.

4. Owner
 Address

N.Z. Forest Service,
 Waipoua Forest,
 Private Bag,
 Dargaville.

Tenant/Manager
 Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visits by Annetta Sutton,
 Alex Nathan, Michelle Horwood and Michael Taylor.
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)
 Nil
 Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)
 Under thick bush

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

Annette
 28/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, stone heaps.

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX VIII

Compartment 65 -
additional information sheets

APPENDIX VII

COMMITTEE ON
GOVERNMENT INFORMATION

Released under the Official Information Act

WAIPOUA S.F. 13

CPT. 62

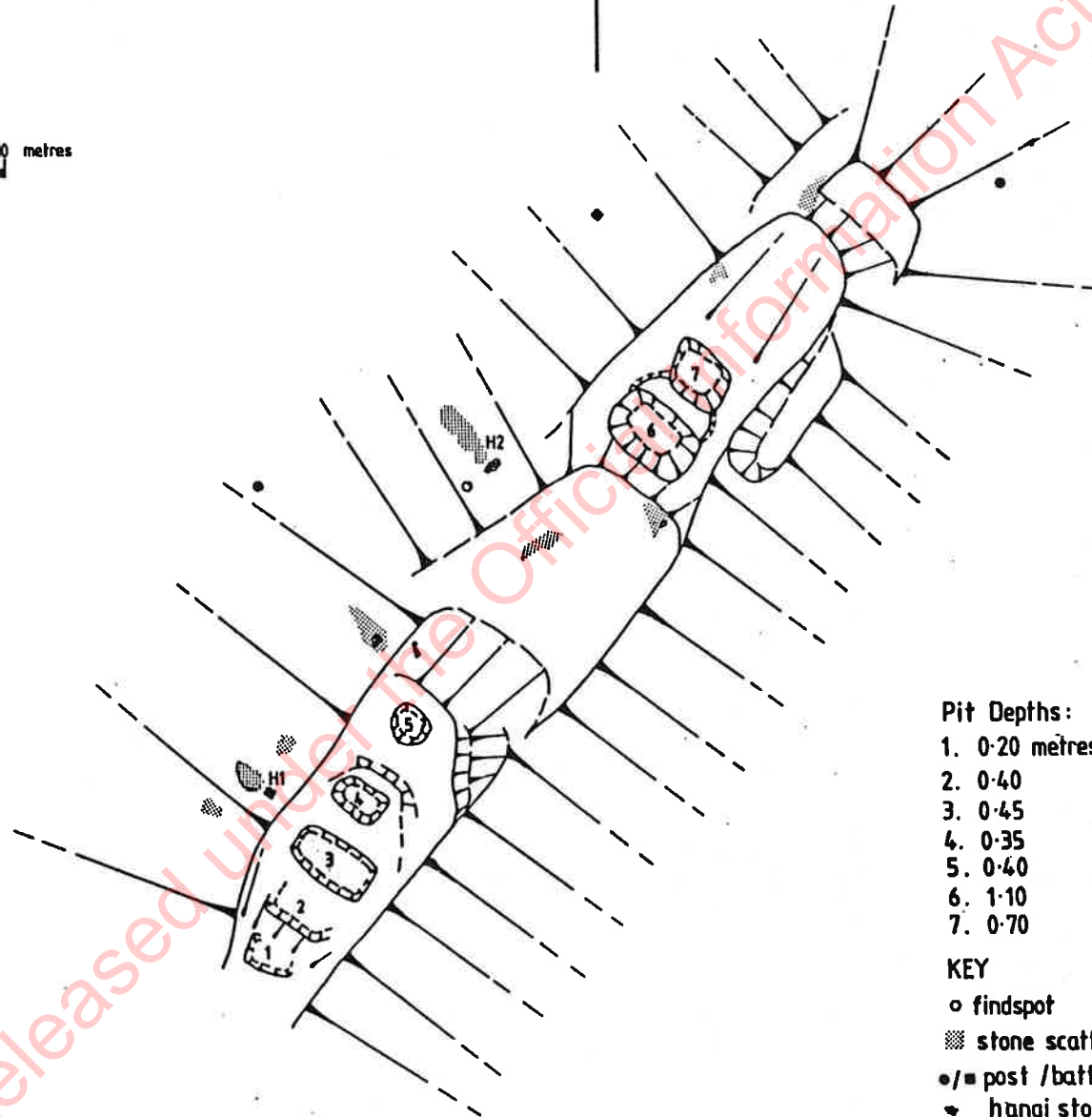
SITE N18/162

PITS & HANGI SCATTERS

Attachment 4

0 2 4 6 8 10 metres

MN



Pit Depths:

1. 0-20 metres
2. 0-40
3. 0-45
4. 0-35
5. 0-40
6. 1-10
7. 0-70

KEY

- findspot
- stone scatters
- /■ post /batten
- ▼ hangi stones
- H1 hangi

Tape and compass plan by
M. Horwood and A. Sutton 6-3 86.
Drawn by A. Sutton 19-5 86.

Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX IX

Compartment 66 - new site record forms
and additional information sheets

ALPHABETICALLY

Continued to cover this record from
all additional information sheets

Released under the Official Information Act

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 022-054

SITE NUMBER N18/114

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone work

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Site N18/114 extends over a much greater area than previously recorded (See sketch map). There are many more stone heaps and also stone faced terraces near the bottom of the slope on the flatter areas. There are possible stone facings in the stream. There is also stone work, both heaps and facings, in the area of scrub that is not planted in pine, behind the north-eastern swamp. This area is very steep and thickly overgrown. The stonework extends up the steep slopes behind N18/114 and N18/115 towards Oputonga Road for about 150m.

The vegetation in the scrub area includes whao, hangehange, coprosma, kiokio, five finger, tutu, ti, wheki, toitoi, flax, whitewood and bracken.

The vegetation in the P. radiata includes hangehange, coprosma, bracken fern, fivefinger and blackberry.

The site was visited by G. Jackman, R. Pollock, H. Marshall and P. Bristow during the resurvey of Compartment 66 on 6-7/1/86.

M. Taylor
 13-1-86

Released under the Official Information Act

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/198

DATE VISITED 11 March 1985

SITE TYPE Terrace

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 6

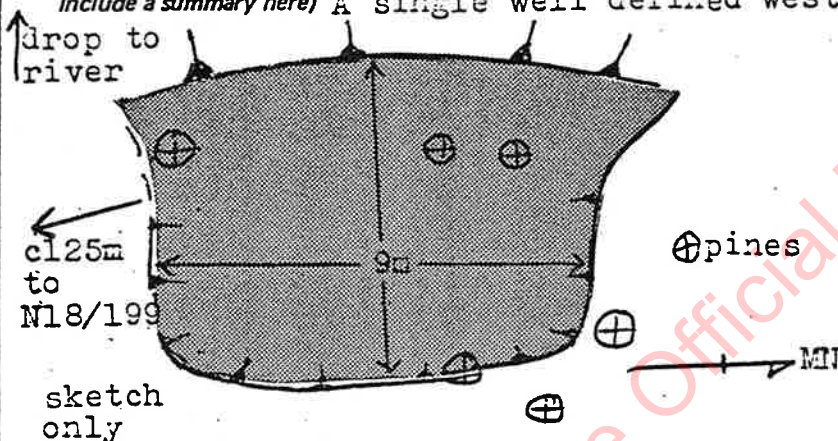
Northing

0 5 7

1. Aids to relocation of site (attach a sketch map) Waipoua SF 13. Cpt 66. Access via western skid on Oputonga Road. From skid edge follow down logging track between Cpts. 5 & 66 for approximately 250m The site is 25m into the pines. Behind the terrace the ground is gently sloping while in front it drops steeply down to the river

2. State of site and possible future damage Located in Pinus radiata(1966) and will eventually suffer minor damage during logging. Well preserved.

3. Description of site (Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here) A single well defined west facing terrace.



The surface of the ground is obscured by vegetation. Undergrowth includes akeake, five finger, cordyline, bracken, mamaku and manuka.

4. Owner

Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE

XXXX/Manager

Address

Rod Young
 O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (hearsay, brief or extended visit etc.) Brief visit by M. Taylor(11-3-85) and by P. Bristow & R. Pollock(10-1-86). Distances are paced.

Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held) Nil

Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site)

6. Reported by

MICHAEL TAYLOR

Address

P. O. BOX 3931

AUCKLAND

Filekeeper

Date

Michael Taylor
 27/9/82

7. Key words

terrace, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (for office use)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18 /199 Attachment 4

DATE VISITED 8 January 1986

SITE TYPE Terraces

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 5

Northing

0 5 7

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 66. On west facing spur from main ridge which divides Cpts. 5 & 66. From north-western most skid on Oputonga Road, site is 280° from NW skid corner, & 200m (estimated) into pines. Or site can be reached by walking 150m down track between Cpts. 5 & 66 (NW direction) and then 120m to SW into pines.

2. State of site and possible future damage Planted in Pinus radiata (1966) but in good condition and well defined. Logging will eventually damage the terraces.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Four terraces stepped down a spur- see plan

Terrace 1: 9x3m with a depression 2x2m in the centre.

Terrace 2: 10x4m.

Terrace 3: 10x6m.

Terrace 4: 5x5m, may be damaged by an old bulldozer track down the spur.

Vegetation is medium Pinus radiata with sparse undergrowth- a few coprosma, ferns and dead manuka with a light pine needle cover.

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua SF 13
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Filekeeper/Manager Rod Young
 Address O/C Waipoua SF

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by Robert Pollock, Peter Bristow, Helen Marshall and Gordon Jackman.
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*) Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

6. Reported by
 Address Michael Taylor
 P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

28/1/86

7. Key words

terraces, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

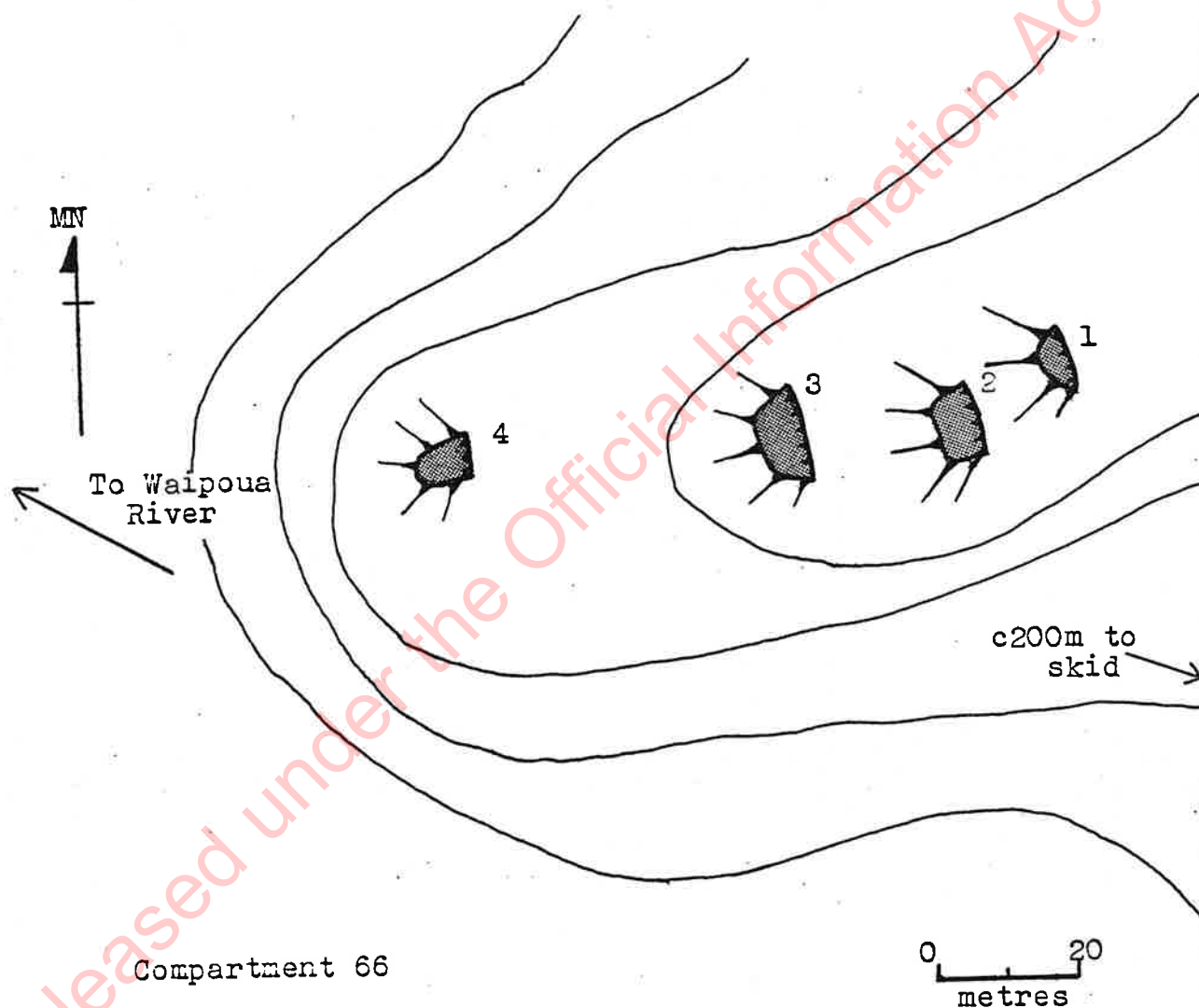
Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 025-057

SITE NUMBER N18/199

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Terraces

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number M18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER M18/200
DATE VISITED 8 January 1986
SITE TYPE Stone heaps
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Attachment 4

Grid Reference Easting

0	2	4
---	---	---

 Northing

0	5	1
---	---	---

1. Aids to relocation of site (attach a sketch map) Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 66. Access via west Oputonga Road(No.15). The site is 50m west of and below the road and about 40m south of a small skid cut on the eastern side of Oputonga Road. The site is located on a slope down a steep bank from the road. See location sketch map.

2. State of site and possible future damage The site is planted in Pinus radiata(1966) and has sustained damage from tree thinning. Large boulders pushed over the bank during road construction have also caused damage. Eventual logging will cause further damage.

3. Description of site (Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here) The site consists of 20-30 stone heaps within an area of 70x50m. They extend from on a steep slope below Oputonga Road to the bottom of a gentler slope below. The heaps vary in size from 2x2m by 1m high, to 5x4m by 2m high. They are mostly constructed from large stones(20-30cm diameter) although some have concentrations of smaller stones. The heaps all have a rounded form and no faced stonework is visible.

Understorey consists of five finger, hangehange, coprosma, tree ferns, mapou, bracken fern.

4. Owner Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
WAIPOUA FOREST
P.B. DARGAVILLE
Tenant/Manager Address Rod Young
O/C Waipoua SF 13

5. Nature of information (hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.) Brief visit by G. Jackman and H. Marshall.
Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held) Nil
Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site) Nil

6. Reported by Address MICHAEL TAYLOR
P.O. BOX 3931
AUCKLAND
Filekeeper Date *Michael Taylor*
28/9/86

7. Key words Waipoua, stone heaps

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (for office use)
NZHPT Site Field Code

<table border="1"><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr></table> Type of site							<table border="1"><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr></table> Present condition and future danger of destruction						
<table border="1"><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr></table> Local environment today							<table border="1"><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr></table> Security code						
<table border="1"><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr></table> Land classification							<table border="1"><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td></tr></table> Local body						

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference

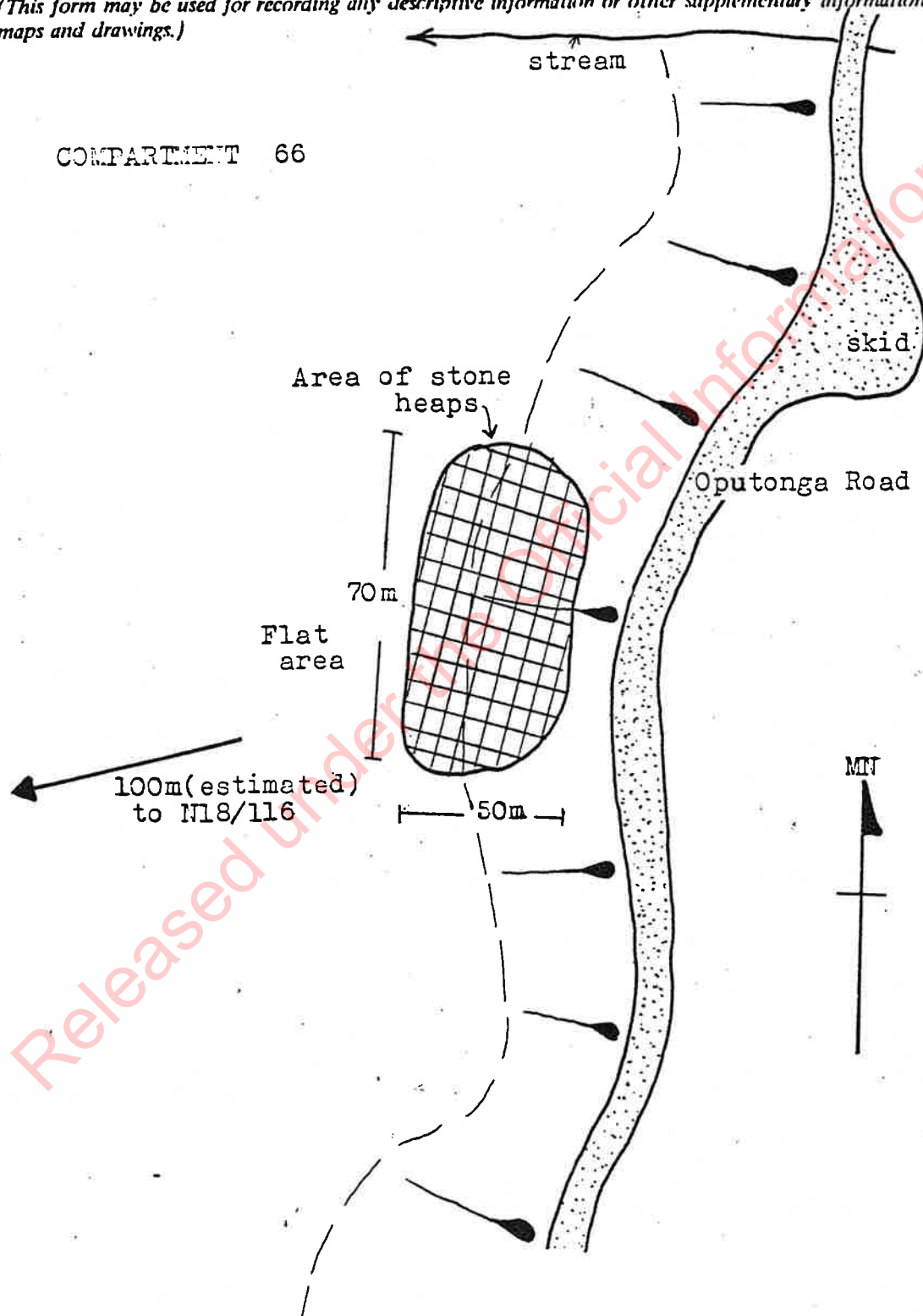
SITE NUMBER N18/ 200

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

COMPARTMENT 66



SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/201
DATE VISITED 9 January 1985
SITE TYPE PITS
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 2 5

Northing

0 4 9

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) See sketch map. Waipoua SF 13. Compartment 66. Access via west Oputonga Road. The site is on the south western edge of a flat that extends 120m from the pits to a steep slope that is below Oputonga Road. The pits are approximately 90m north east of N18/118 and an estimated 200m north of newly recorded stonework.

2. State of site and possible future damage Planted in *P. radiata* (1966) which has been thinned. Cut pine, bracken fern, dead manuka, and blackberry obscure the features which are shallow. Stock may have trampled the pits. Logging will damage the site.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

See sketch plan

Two shallow pits, side by side:

Pit 1- 3x1.5m, 0.5m deep

Pit 2- 3x2m, 0.5m deep

The pits are situated on the edge of a wide flat and a gentle slope running down to the south and south-west.

The area is planted in *P. radiata* with a light understorey of bracken fern, five finger, coprosma, hangehange, and manuka.

4. Owner Address NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
WAIPOUA FOREST
P.B. DARGAVILLE

Person/Manager Address Rod Young
O/C Waipoua SF 13.

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by G. Jackman and H. Marshall.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Not visible.

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR
Address P.O. BOX 3931
AUCKLAND

Filekeeper
Date

[Signature]
28/9/82

7. Key words

Pits, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

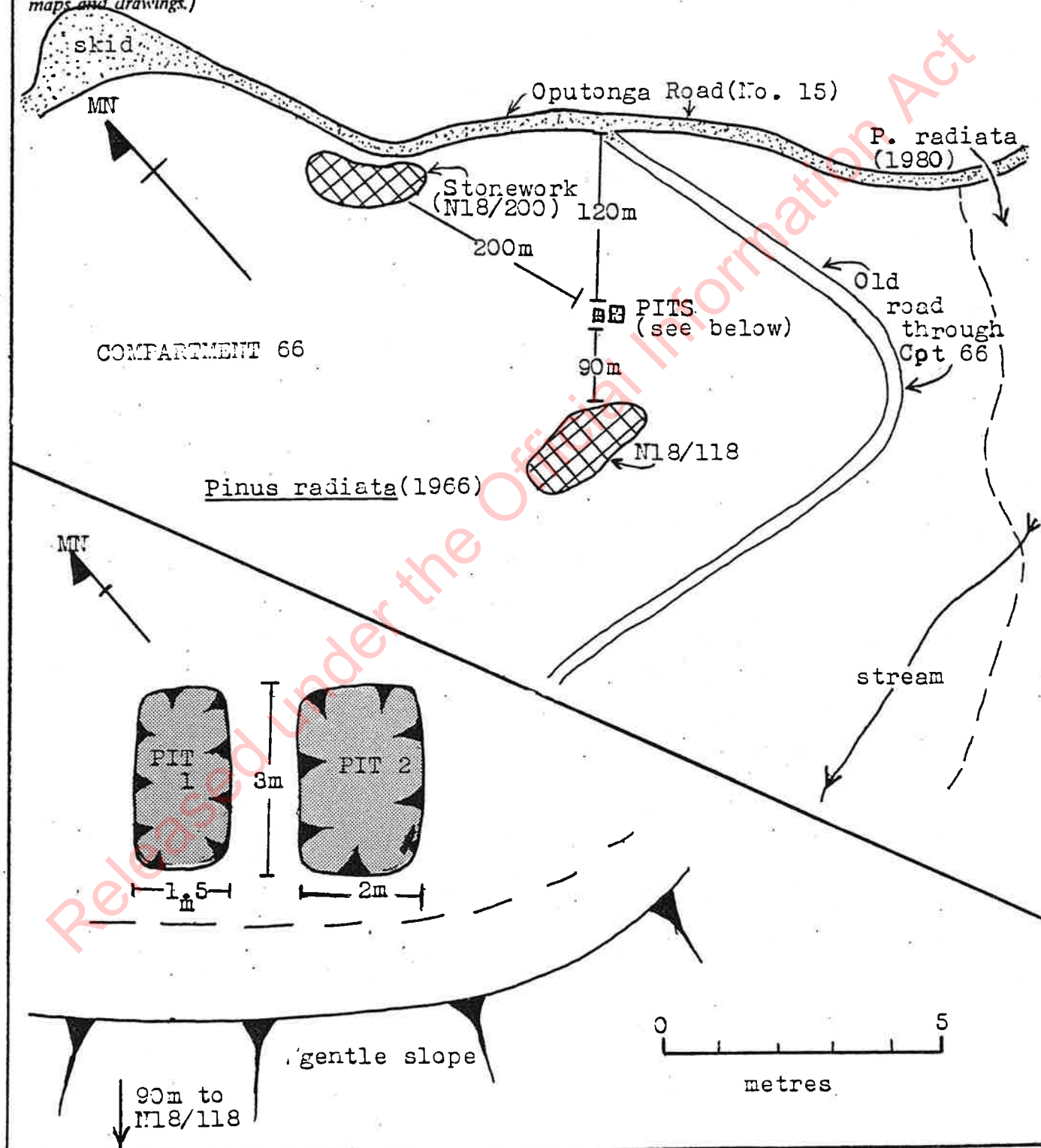
SITE NUMBER N18/201

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 025-049

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE PITS

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



Released under the Official Information Act

APPENDIX X

Kauri Sanctuary
- new site record forms

APPENDIX 2

Wash. State record for
Knot, Daniel

Released under the Official Information Act

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 3rd, 1975

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/204

DATE VISITED 17-1-86

SITE TYPE Pits

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0 4 1

Northing

0 6 3

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua State Forest, Kauri Sanctuary, north side of Waipoua River, on a north/south ridge near the present Compartment 58/Sanctuary boundary. Situated on the eastern side of a hairpin bend in the river. On the west side of the ridge is a steep drop into the Waipoua River and on the east is a small stream in a deep gully. The site is opposite N18/202. See sketch.

2. State of site and possible future damage In dense bush in the Kauri Sanctuary. Remote. Future damage unlikely.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*)

Three pits - see sketch.

Two pits in one group, both 2x1m, and 0.3m deep.

The third pit is about 12m further up the ridge (ie north) and is also 2x1m.

Mixed bush including tawa, totara, taraire, kowhai, nikau, ponga, hangehange and 5 finger.

4. Owner
Address

NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
WAIPOUA FOREST
P.B. DARGAVILLE

Tenant/Manager
Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit during reconnaissance survey of north Waipoua River slopes.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Under dense bush.

6. Reported by MICHAEL TAYLOR
Address P, O. BOX 3931

Filekeeper
Date

25/9/86

AUCKLAND

7. Key words

Pits, Waipoua

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

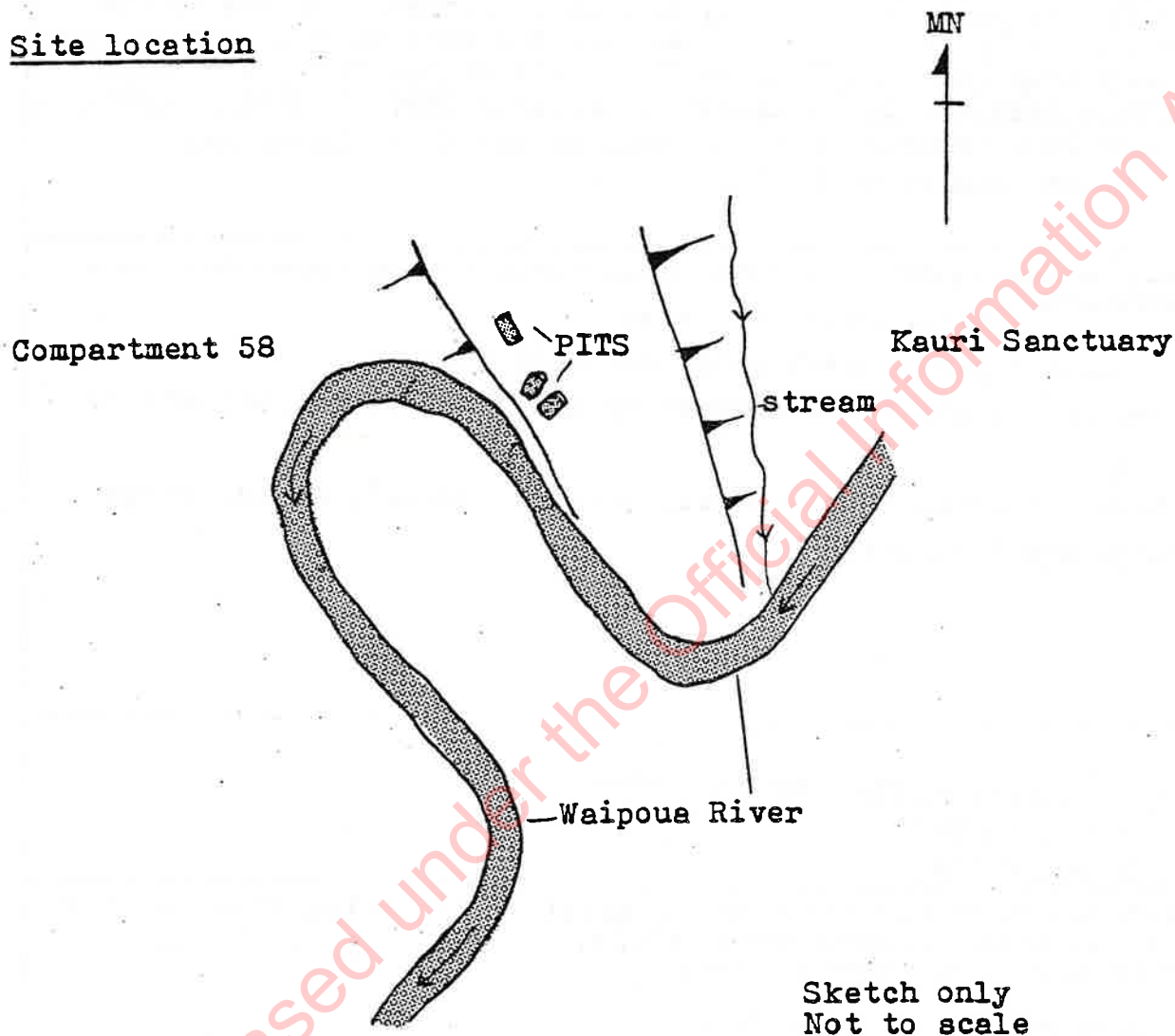
Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 041-063

SITE NUMBER N18/ 204

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Site location

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number **M18**
 NZMS 1 map name **Waipoua**
 NZMS 1 map edition **3rd, 1975**

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER **M18/** Attachment 4 **216**
 DATE VISITED **17-1-86**

SITE TYPE **Pits**
 SITE NAME: **MAORI**
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

0	5	2
---	---	---

Northing

0	5	0
---	---	---

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) **Waipoua State Forest 13, Kauri Sanctuary**
 On the north side of the river opposite a point just north of the junction of Oputonga and Kopikopiko Roads. The site is on a narrow ridge, on a sharp bend in the river, with the river on both sides. See sketch location plan.

2. State of site and possible future damage **Site is in light indigenous bush. Pigs are living in the area and may cause subsurface damage.**

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) **See plan.**

The site consists of 4 pits on a narrow ridge running NE-SW.

Pit measurements:

1. 3x1.5m, 1m deep.
2. 3x1.5m, 1m deep.
3. 4x2m, 1m deep.
4. 4x1.5m, 1m deep.

The "island" which this ridge connects is a likely site of occupation.

Vegetation consists of second growth manuka, tanekaha, mingimingi, mapou, fivefinger, and totara.

4. Owner
Address

**NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE**

Tenant/Manager
Address

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) **Brief visit during reconnaissance survey of north bank of Waipoua River.**
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*) **Nil**

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Not visible.

6. Reported by **MICHAEL TAYLOR**
 Address **P.O. BOX 3931
 AUCKLAND**

Filekeeper
Date

Michael Taylor
20/9/86

7. Key words

Waipoua, pits

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

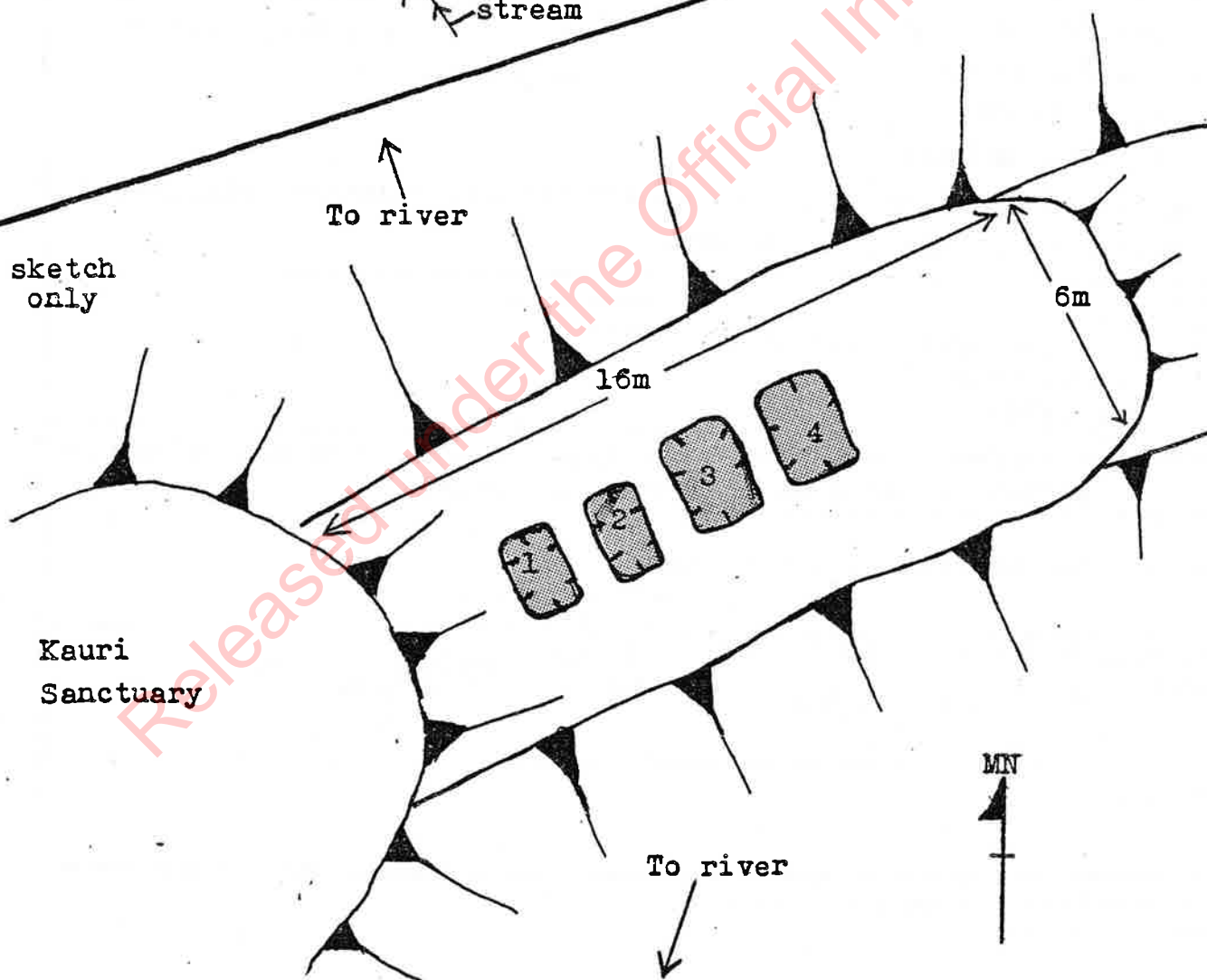
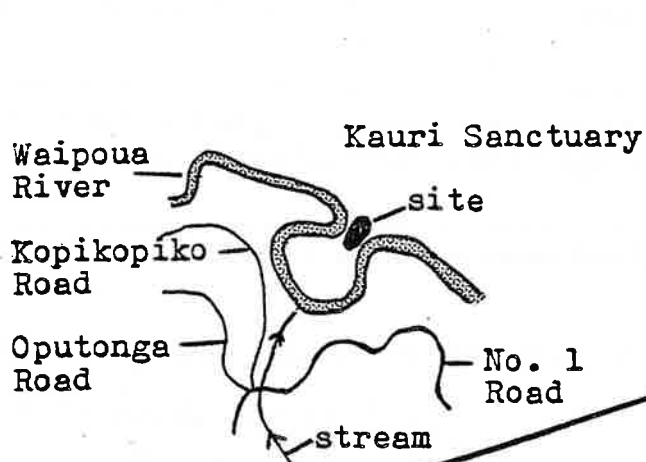
Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 052-050

SITE NUMBER N18/216

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Pits

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)



APPENDIX XI

Wairau River
- new site record forms

ATTENDING

Twisted River
Emory Street

Released under the Official Information Act

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number **N18**
 NZMS 1 map name **Waipoua**
 NZMS 1 map edition **3rd, 1975**

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER **N18/A104** Attachment 4DATE VISITED **30 December 1985**SITE TYPE **Stone heaps/ drain**

SITE NAME: **MAORI**
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

9 6 1

Northing

0 9 8

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) **Waipoua SF 13 in Wairau River valley, on the northern bank, across the river from an access track which leaves Kararoa Road about 400m upriver from its intersection with Road 33(Ohaua Road). Directly across river from site at Grid ref. 959-098 and south-west of site Grid ref. 962-099.**

2. State of site and possible future damage **The site is in second growth native bush and should remain undisturbed.**

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) **See site plan. Eleven stone heaps, one of which is particularly well formed and spanner shaped (see separate plan). Most heaps are rounded and 1-2m across and about 0.5m high. Generally they are constructed of stones about 20-30cm diameter. A well defined drain is present at the northern end of the flat. One heap was curbed with larger stones and filled with smaller stones and was only about 0.25m high.**

The vegetation is old second growth native trees- kanuka, mapou, nikau, mamaku, hangehange, coprosma sp., and two large ricker kauri.

The site was permanently marked with a fence post tagged with the NZAA site number on 25/4/86. The post is 8m from H10 at 316°.

4. Owner

Address **NEW ZEALAND FOREST SERVICE
 WAIPOUA FOREST
 P.B. DARGAVILLE**

Tenant/Manager
 Address

**Rod Young
 O/C Waipoua SF 13**

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*)**Brief visit by G. Jackman &**

P. Bristow
 Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Yes, N.Z.F.S. Auckland**2 photos of "spanner" heap**Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)**Nil**

6. Reported by

Address

**MICHAEL TAYLOR
 P. O. BOX 3931**

Filekeeper
 Date

[Signature]
28/9/86

AUCKLAND

7. Key words

Wairau River, stone heaps, drain8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)

NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE NUMBER N18/194

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference 961-098

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Description of individual stone heaps

See site plan

Heap 1: Approx. 1.5m diam., 0.20m high. Medium sized stones, few large. Situated at the back of river terrace. The heap is very disturbed, and virtually flattened.

Heap 2: Approx. 2.0m diameter. Medium to large stones. Possible heap only and is very disturbed.

Heap 3: Approx. 2.5x2.0m, 0.50m high. Many large stones (up to 70cm long) with both medium and small stones. Near base of slope and more intact than H1 and H2.

Heap 4: Approx. 1.5m diameter, 0.8m high. Mostly large stones (40-60cm in length). Situated at the base of the slope and is quite slumped although some of the shape is retained.

Heap 5: Approx. 2x1.5m, 0.60m high. Constructed with a lot of small stones with some large and medium. Very slumped.

Heap 6: Approx. 1.5m diameter, 0.50m high. Mostly medium sized stones. Very disturbed.

Heap 7: Approx. 1.5m diameter, 0.40m high. H7 consists of only about 10 large stones (up to 80cm long) and is very disturbed. A line of stones appears to connect H6 and H7.

Heap 8: Approx. 2x1.5m, 1.0m high. Mostly medium and small stones. This is the most intact heap. A line of large stones appears to run partway to H7.

Heap 9: Possible heap. Stone scatter covers an area about 1.5m in diameter, 0.20m high. A few large stones and some small. Very slumped.

Heap 10: (See plan). "Spanner" shaped heap. Approx. 11m long, 3m wide and 0.7m high. The NW end is made of large and medium stones and retains its constructed faces intact. The remainder is less formally constructed of small and medium stones and is more slumped.

Heap 11: Approx. 2.5x1.5m, 0.25m high. Medium to large stones surrounds a depressed centre.

Heap 12: Approx. 2x1m, 0.40m high. Large stones.

Heap 13: Approx. 1.5m in diameter, 0.75m high. Mostly medium and small stones, with some large.

There is about 0.45cm of brown loamy soil on this river terrace.

Additional information collected by M. Horwood, R. Paniora, and P. Bristow 7 March 1986.

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 961-098

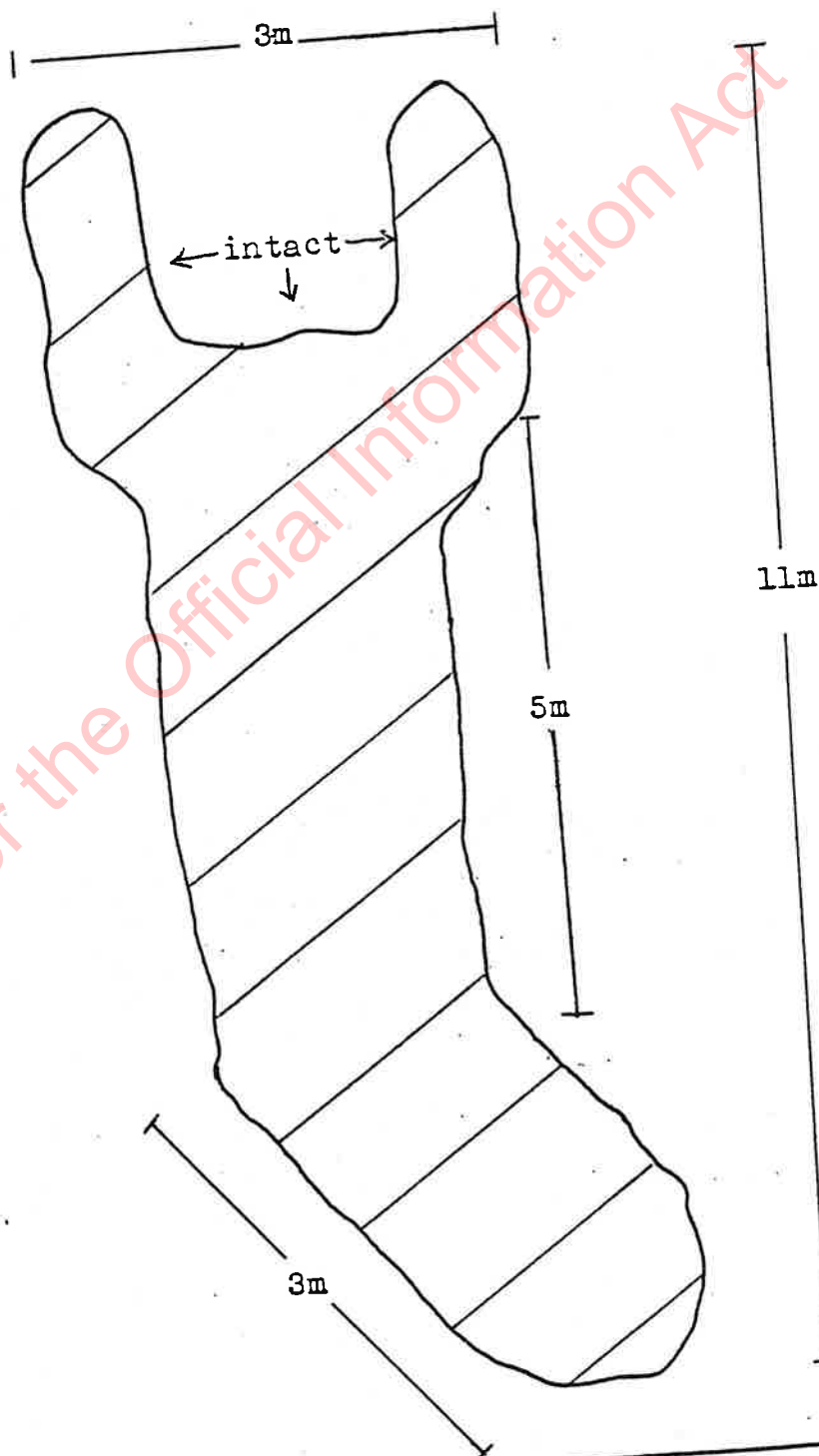
SITE NUMBER N18/194

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heap

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Heap 10
Large stone heap
See site plan for
location.



NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

SITE NUMBER N18/194

Attachment 4

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 961-098

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Site Grid ref.
959-098
N18/195

track to
Kararoa Road

Wairau
River

drain

H13

H12

river flat

H11

40m

100m

H1

H2

H8

H9

H7

H6

POST

H5

see
detailed
sketch

H10

H3

H4

Site
Grid ref.
962-099
N18/196

MT

Wairau
River

Sketch only. Not to
scale. Distances from pacing
and compass.

SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
 NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
 NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/ 195

DATE VISITED 30 December 1988 ^{Attachment 4}

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Grid Reference

Easting

9 5 9

Northing

0 9 8

1. Aids to relocation of site (*attach a sketch map*) Waipoua SF 13. On flat on southern side of Wairau River. Access is at present via a foot track marked with red tape which goes down from Kararoa Road (No. 21) about 400m upriver from the intersection of Roads 21 & 33. The site is at the base of the ridge which this track goes down.

2. State of site and possible future damage The site is located in large 2nd growth bush and is at no risk from forest development.

3. Description of site (*Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here*) See site plan. Five stone heaps at the base of

of a rock outcrop at the back of a river flat 120x35m (paced). All the heaps appear collapsed and rounded-

Heap 1: 1.5x0.8m, height 0.3m. Constructed of small stones less than 15cm across.

Heap 2: 1.5x1.5m, height 0.5m. Stones less than 25cm across.

Heap 3: 1.2x1.2m, height 0.4m. Stones 15-25cm across.

Heap 4: 1.5x1.5m plus it runs up slope, height 1m. Stones less than 40cm across.

Heap 5: 1.7x1.5m, height 0.4m. Made of many small stones less than 10cm with a few larger stones.

Between heaps 4 & 5 is a drain which comes from a raupo swamp which is on the ridge above the heaps.

continued....

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
 Address Waipoua Forest
 Private Bag
 Dargaville

Tenant/Manager Rod Young
 Address O/C Waipoua SF 13

5. Nature of information (*hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.*) Brief visit by Peter Bristow, Gordon Jackman, Michael Taylor & Robert Pollock.

Photographs (*reference numbers, and where they are held*)

Nil

Aerial photographs (*reference numbers, and clarity of site*)

Nil

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
 Address P.O. Box 3931
 Auckland

Filekeeper
 Date

[Signature]
 25/9/88

7. Key words

Wairau River, stone heaps, drain

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (*for office use*)
 NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION

SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
 Map Name Waipoua
 Map Edition 3rd, 1975
 Grid Reference

SITE NUMBER N18/195

SITE NAME: MAORI
 OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps, drain

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

Toward the western end of the river flat is a large cone shaped hill of outcropping rock about 10m high. This lies between the swamp and the river flat. At the foot of this stone hill is another possible stone feature, perhaps a collapsed heap, in dense undergrowth.

The river flat is covered by very old kanuka with mapou, kauri, kohekohe, lancewood, nikau, hangehange, and coprosma forming a younger understorey. On the western end of the flat is a medium kauri and a large puriri is located on the rivers' edge.

A permanent marking post made of tanalised pine was placed on the site and marked with a permanent tag bearing the NZAA site number on 25th April 1986. The post is located 10.5m from heap 1 at 33°.

Released under the Official Information Act

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 959-098

SITE NUMBER N18/ 195

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps/ drain

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

sketch map
using compass
and pacing

Wairau
River

across river to
site Grid ref. 961-098,
N18/194.

track to
Kararoa Road

rocks

POST

flat

1

2

3

4

5

drain

rocks

Puriri
tree

flat

swamp

cone shaped
hill

Kauri
tree

swamp

Wairau
River

MN

0

50

metres

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION SITE RECORD FORM (NZMS1)

NZMS 1 map number N18
NZMS 1 map name Waipoua
NZMS 1 map edition 1975, 3rd

NZAA NZMS 1 SITE NUMBER N18/196
DATE VISITED 30 December 1985
SITE TYPE Stone heaps
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

Attachment 4

Grid Reference

Easting

9 6 2

Northing

0 9 9

1. Aids to relocation See site plan. Waipoua State Forest 13. Northern bank of Wairau River. Access via Kararoa Road (No. 21). Access at present is via a track from Road 21 marked with red tape. The site is located on the northern river bank on an old river terrace directly up-river from and above the stone heap site at Grid reference 961-098.

2. State of site and possible future damage The site is located in light native bush and is not at risk from forest development. The heaps are partially collapsed.

3. Description of site (Supply full details, history, local environment, references, sketches, etc. If extra sheets are attached, include a summary here)

See site plan attached. Thirteen stone heaps are located at the back of an old flat river terrace, along the base of a ridge. The heaps are constructed of relatively uniform stones. Distances were paced from a tape baseline and heap dimensions were estimated.

Heap 1: 1.5x1m, height 0.5m
Stones 20-40cm diameter

Heap 2: 1x1m, height 30cm
Stones 20-30cm diameter

Heap 3: 1x1.5m, height 0.5m
Stones 30-50cm diameter

Heap 4: 1x1.5m, height 40-50cm
Stones 30-50cm diameter

Heap 5: 1x1m, height 50cm
Stones 20cm plus diameter

Heap 6: 1.5x0.75m, height 40cm
Stones 30cm plus

Heap description continued...

4. Owner N.Z. Forest Service
Address Waipoua Forest
Private Bag
Dargaville

XTENANT/Manager Rod Young
Address O/C Waipoua Forest

5. Nature of information (hearsay, brief or extended visit, etc.) Brief visit by Michael Taylor and Robert Pollock during reconnaissance survey of Wairau River.
Photographs (reference numbers, and where they are held) Nil

Aerial photographs (reference numbers, and clarity of site)

6. Reported by Michael Taylor
Address P.O. Box 3931
Auckland

Filekeeper
Date

28/9/82

7. Key words stone heaps, Wairau River

8. New Zealand Register of Archaeological Sites (for office use)
NZHPT Site Field Code

Type of site

Local environment today

Land classification

Present condition and future danger of destruction

Security code

Local body

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 1975, 3rd
Grid Reference 962-099

SITE NUMBER N18/196

SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.) Heap description continued from site record form...

Heap 7: 1x0.75m, height 40-50cm
Stones 20cm diameter & one larger
stone 1x0.5m.

Heap 8: 1.5x1m, height 30cm
Stones 20cm plus diameter

Heap 9: 1.5x1.5m, height 50cm
Stones 20cm plus diameter

Heap 10: 1x0.8m, height 20cm
Stones 20cm. Loosely scattered.

Heap 11: 1.5x1.5m, height 1m
Stones 10-20cm diameter

Heap 12: 1.5x1m, height 50cm
Stones 30-40cm diameter

Vegetation on the site is predominantly makamaka, but larger trees include ti-tree, mapou, tanekaha and fern trees. Smaller trees c50cm high include kauri and nikau.

About 20m northeast of the heaps the river terrace drops off over a steep bank onto a lower level where there is situated a small swamp with a shallow drain that runs down to the river. These may be modified natural features.

The site was permanently marked with a tanalised fence post and marked with a tag bearing the NZAA site number on 25 April 1986. The post was positioned 11.5m at 75° from Heap 13(see plan).

NEW ZEALAND ARCHAEOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION
SITE DESCRIPTION FORM

SITE NUMBER N18/ 196

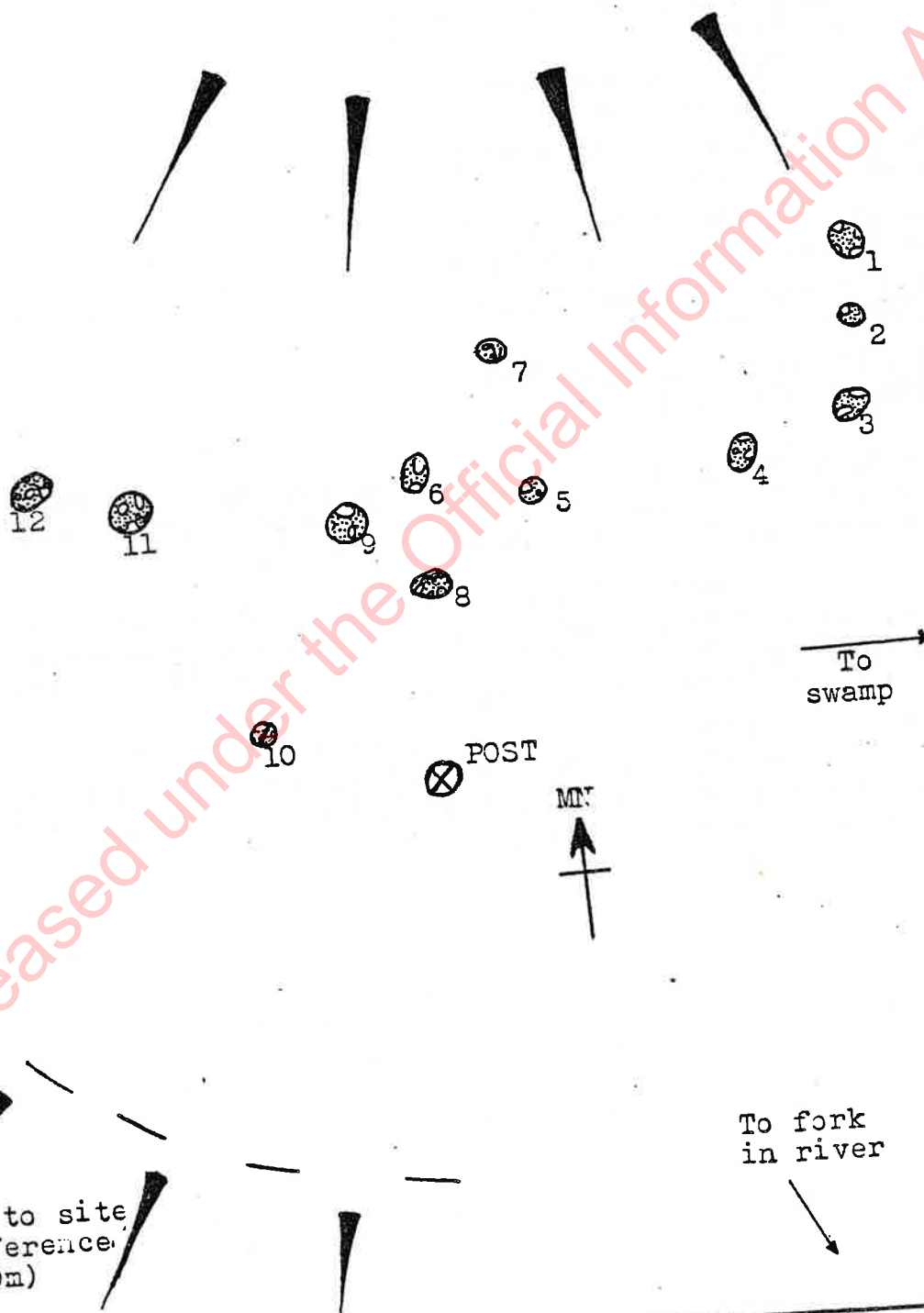
SITE NAME: MAORI
OTHER

SITE TYPE Stone heaps

Map Number N18
Map Name Waipoua
Map Edition 3rd, 1975
Grid Reference 962-099

(This form may be used for recording any descriptive information or other supplementary information on the site, or for maps and drawings.)

0 5
metres



Steep drop to site
at Grid reference
961-098 (50m)
N18/194

To fork
in river

Released under the Official Information Act

Released under the Official Information Act



File ref: docdm-904066

To: File note

From: Brian Sheppard, Manager Government Support, Policy & Regulatory Services

Date: 3 February 2012

Subject: 'Embargoed' archaeological records from Waipoua Forest

From time to time, the Department of Conservation receives correspondence about 'secret' archaeological evidence from 1988 that described a pre-Maori settlement in Northland's Waipoua Forest.

I was Senior Archaeologist for the Department and New Zealand Historic Places Trust at that time, based in Wellington, and was involved in assisting the Department to integrate archaeological support functions for the Trust and those of the former New Zealand Forest Service.

The material in question was a set of field notes and maps generated by archaeologists working on contract to the New Zealand Forest Service. The investigations were required under authorities issued by the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, to allow the forestry to take place in an area of archaeological interest in the Waipoua Forest.

The Forest Service archaeologists came to DOC when the Department of Conservation was established in 1987, the Waipoua archaeologists being based in Whangarei.

There had been a disagreement between the forestry archaeologists and those (based in Auckland) acting for the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, on the adequacy of the records.

Mr Taylor, whose name appears on the agreement for the transfer of the records to the National Archives was the lead archaeologist for this investigation. The agreement (see copy below) records that, on 15 September 1988, they were transferred to the National Archives but "*restricted until 2063. Prior consultation requires approval of the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee or other appropriate subsequent Te Roroa authority*".

The restriction was lifted shortly afterwards and the records have consequently been open for public access for a number of years.

Although any controversy about the records related only to their adequacy, rather than any indication of a pre-Maori occupation, the temporary restriction for public access generated a myth that they contained information that, in some way challenged our understanding of the human settlement of New Zealand.

In recent years, many of the archaeological sites in the lower Waipoua Valley have been returned to Te Roroa as part of Treaty settlement. The Department of Conservation encourages people seeking information on these sites to talk to Te Roroa in recognition of their cultural connection to them.



NATIONAL ARCHIVES

AT 88/57

BATH

AGREEMENT FOR THE TRANSFER OF ARCHIVES

THIS BLOCK TO BE FILLED IN BY THE TRANSFERRING DEPARTMENT

From: Department of Conservation
Kaikōhe

File ref.

The Chief Archivist,
 National Archives,
 P.O. Box 6148,
 Wellington.

The records listed on the attached 14 sheets are offered for transfer to your custody, for deposit in the National Archives, under the Archives Act 1957.

Restricted until 2063

No restrictions on the use of the records by bona fide research workers are required.

Prior consultation requires approval of the Te Kōwhiri Māori Archaeological Advisory Committee or other appropriate authority subsequent to Kōwhiri

The quantity of records to be transferred is metres

Signature of authorising officer: M. Taylor x

Date: 15/7/88 x Designation: Archaeologist v

Name of officer responsible for compiling the list: M. Taylor x

Designation: Archaeologist x

THIS BLOCK TO BE FILLED IN BY NATIONAL ARCHIVES

I agree to accept the custody of these records.

I hereby undertake to abide by the restrictions, if any, placed on the use of the records.

The records should now be sent to the National Archives Auckland

When they have been received one copy of the list and form N.A. 4 will be returned to you as a receipt.

Date: 7-9-1988

19 M. Nathan
 Chief Archivist.

DOCDM-929861 - 12-A-0258

s9(2)(a)

- Archeological evidence at Waipoua Forest

s9(2)(a)

Dear

s9(2)(a)

Thank you for your letter of 13 March 2012 to the Prime Minister the Rt Hon John Key concerning an article in the 'ELocal Community Magazine' on archaeological evidence from the Waipoua Forest that it reports as being held, under embargo, until 2063. The Prime Minister has transferred your letter for my consideration and reply.

I am pleased to advise you that the embargoed information described in the article has been available from the National Library for public scrutiny for nearly a quarter of a century.

The ELocal article refers to a decision by Te Roroa in 1988 to place some archaeological records from the Waipoua Forest in the National Library, under embargo until 2063. The author notes that the embargo was lifted in the same year but still speculates on what they might contain, without, apparently having studied them.

I understand that neither this material, nor any other archaeological evidence, supports the claims in the article for evidence of a pre-Maori city or settlement in the forest, or anywhere else in New Zealand.

It is unfortunate that a misunderstanding that led to that early, short-lived embargo, fuelled speculation that there may be something to hide. Archaeologists follow standard scientific practice of constantly reviewing and debating their work. For archaeologists, this applies both to the individual clues from the distant past and how they affect our understanding of it. These debates are carried out in public and published for specialist and broader peer review. None of that work supports the conclusions in the ELocal article.

Amongst these reviews, for example, is the suggestion that great walls, apparently built from large stone slabs have been found but, in each case, geologists have confirmed that they are geological features with natural horizontal and vertical fractures.

I hope that this helps to dispel any misunderstandings about the early settlement of Waipoua.

Yours sincerely

Hon Kate Wilkinson
Minister of Conservation

Released under the Official Information Act

Murray Atkins

From: Meirene Hardy-Birch
Sent: Monday, 13 February 2012 11:19 a.m.
To: Murray Atkins
Subject: FW: OIA Request - s9(2)(a) - access to archived documents relating to Waipoua Forest [8-2012]

Attachments: The Evolution of the People of New Zealand1.doc; Restricted till 2063.PNG



The Evolution of
the People of...



Restricted till
2063.PNG (29 K...

Kia ora Muz over the last 4 years we have received a number of correspondence from the public requesting information in regards to the Waipoua archaeological sites. Can you please put this response from Brian Sheppard on the files for future use as this explains the situation nicely. The two files in particular that require this is:

Archaeological Sites

HHH-02-03 NLKC-1 01/01/1988 General - Wahitapu Sites
 HHH-02-04 NLKC-1 25/03/1980 - 01/08/1989 General - Site Records & Maps
 HHH-09-01-01-04 NLKC-1 Site Conservation and Recording by Conservancy Areas - Northland - Kauri Coast Area Office - Waipoua Stone Mounds & Cl4 Dates & enquires
 HHH-09-01-01-04-01 NLKC-1 10-12-1986 Site Conservation and Recording by Conservancy Areas - Northland - Archaeological Assessment and Summary - Te Roroa HHH-09-01-01-10 NLKC-1 06/03/1985 - 15/02/1988 Site Conservation and Recording by Conservancy Areas - Northland - Kauri Coast Area Office - Waipoua - Archeologists field notes
 HHH-09-01-01-11 NLKC-1 03/02/1975 - 31/12/1987 Site Conservation and Recording by Conservancy Areas - Northland - Kauri Coast Area Office - Waipoua - Site records / maps & photos
 HHH-09-01-01-13 NLKC-1 18/11/09 Site Conservation and Recording by Conservancy Areas - Northland - Kauri Coast Area Office - Waipoua - Archeologists Project - State Forest 13

Iwi

LSW-01-33 NLKC-1 05/12/1988 General - Ministerials
 LSW-143-02 NLKC-1 15/10/1985 - 18/11/2009 Te Iwi O Te Roroa - Waipoua - Archaeological Advisory Committee Meeting

Thanking you

Meirene Hardy-Birch - Area Manager - Poumanahere | Kauri Coast Area Office - About us
 | Department of Conservation - Te Papa Atawhai - www.doc.govt.nz

-----Original Message-----

From: Brian Sheppard
Sent: Thursday, 2 February 2012 3:36 p.m.
To: Gavin Rodley (MIN)
Cc: Andrew MacPherson; Chris Jenkins; Alan Moran; Brian Sheppard; Gabrielle Muir; Nadia Brown
Subject: Re: OIA Request - s9(2)(a) - access to archived documents relating to Waipoua Forest [8-2012]

Gavin

It would not be appropriate for the Department of Conservation to comment on a statement from 1986 attributed to Dr Ranginui Walker, or on the Government's response to the Treaty of Waitangi but I can comment on the archaeological records from the Waipoua Forest.

The material in question was a set of field notes and maps generated by archaeologists working on contract to the New Zealand Forest Service, as required under authorities issued by the New Zealand Historic Places Trust to allow the forestry to take place in an area of archaeological interest in the Waipoua Forest. The archaeologists came under the control of the Department of Conservation when it was established in 1987. Mr Taylor, whose name appears on the agreement for the transfer of archives was the

lead archaeologist for this investigation.

There had been a disagreement between the archaeologists working in the forest and those acting for the New Zealand Historic Places Trust on the adequacy of the records. This resulted in Mr Taylor's transfer of the records to the National Archives. The copy of the agreement that you have provided records that, on 15 September 1988, those records were transferred to the National Archives. It also notes that they were to be "restricted until 2063. Prior consultation requires approval of the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeological Advisory Committee or other appropriate subsequent Te Roroa authority".

That restriction was lifted shortly afterwards and the records have consequently been open for public access for a number of years. An OIA request for these records would need to be declined as the information is not held by the Department but is publicly available from National Archives.

Although any controversy about the records related only to their adequacy, rather than any indication of a pre-Maori occupation, the temporary restriction for public access generated a myth that they contained information that, in some way challenged our understanding of the human settlement of New Zealand.

I hope that this is helpful.

Brian

Brian Sheppard
Manager, Government Support
Policy and Regulatory Services Group
Department of Conservation—Te Papa Atawhai
DDI: +64 4 471 3071 | M: +64 27 6874 6907

Conservation for prosperity Tiakina te taiao, kia puawai

www.doc.govt.nz

-----Original Message-----

From: Gavin Rodley (MIN) [mailto:Gavin.Rodley@parliament.govt.nz]
Sent: Thursday, 2 February 2012 2:02 p.m.
To: Brian Sheppard; Andrew MacPherson
Subject: FW: OIA Request - s9(2)(a) - access to archived documents relating to Waipoua Forest [8-2012]

Hi Brian and Andrew

I refer to the query below from Anna Whiskin from DPMC.

I would appreciate some advice on this matter - thanks.

Yours sincerely

Gavin Rodley
Private Secretary for Conservation
Office of the Hon Kate Wilkinson
Telephone: 04 817 9150 (direct dial)
Facsimile: 04 817 6519
Mobile: 0274 861538
Email: gavin.rodley@parliament.govt.nz

-----Original Message-----

From: Anna Whiskin [mailto:Anna.Whiskin@dpmc.govt.nz]
Sent: Thursday, 2 February 2012 1:24 pm
To: Gavin Rodley (MIN)
Subject: OIA Request - s9(2)(a) - access to archived documents relating to Waipoua Forest [8-2012]

Gavin Rodley
Private Secretary - Conservation
Office of Hon Kate Wilkinson

Minister of Conservation

Gavin

Apologies if you are not the right person to approach in your Office - if this is the case, could you possibly let me know who I should get in touch with.

In the email below is an information request from s9(2)(a) which asks "What was found that caused the Government to restrict these findings and why is approval required from the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeology Advisory Board?" We are assisting the PM's Office with responding to the request.

Attached to the email (and to this one) is a scanned sheet from National Archives which shows that the file was transferred to the Archives in 1988 by the Department of Conservation.

Should this request be transferred to the Minister of Conservation or to the Department of Conservation do you think? If it should be transferred to DoC, do you have a contact there who I should let know it's coming or are you able to consult with them?

Kind regards
Anna Whiskin
DPMC (x 9896 - mornings)

>>> "Sarah Boyle (MIN)" <Sarah.Boyle@parliament.govt.nz> 24/01/2012 8:19
>>> a.m. >>>

From: s9(2)(a) [mailto:s9(2)(a)]
Sent: Sunday, 22 January 2012 11:39 am
To: Sarah Boyle (MIN); John Key
Subject: Re: Official Information Act Request.

Mr Wayne Eagleson,
Chief of Staff,
Prime Ministers Office,
Parliament Building,
Wellington.

Dear Sir,

Re: Official Information Act Request.

Thank you for your letter and enclosures dated the 18 January 2012.

The enclosures are headed, "Ideas of Maori Origins" and this is exactly what they are, "Ideas", which vary over the years. I would have thought Government, when agreeing to the "Declaration of the Rights of the Indigenous People" would base this on far more evidence than just "Ideas".

While all the selected evidence you have produced shows Maori as the indigenous people there is just as much other evidence to show they are not, including the statement from Dr Ranginui Walker, which was published in 'The New Zealand Book of Events', page 18, (1986). "The traditions are quite clear: wherever crew disembarked there were already tangata whenua (prior inhabitants). The canoe ancestors of the 14th century merged with these tangata whenua tribes. From this time on the traditions abound with accounts of tribal wars over the land and its resources".

When the Tiriti o Waitangi was signed the "canoe ancestors of the 14 century" were known as 'tangata Maori', not 'tangata whenua'.
See attached article which appears on the One New Zealand website.
www.onenzfoundation.co.nz<<http://www.onenzfoundation.co.nz>>.

The only research ever undertaken by the Government into pre-Maori was in the Waipoua Forest in the 1980's but its findings have been restricted from the public until 2065. See copy of 'The Agreement for Transfer of Archives' attached.

Under the Official Information Act, "What was found that caused the Government to restrict these findings and why is approval required from the Te Roroa-Waipoua Archaeology Advisory Board"?

Yours sincerely,

s9(2)(a)

Researcher, s9(2)(a)

cc. Hon John Key, Prime Minister.

Please consider the environment before printing this e-mail.

The information contained in this email message is for the attention of the intended recipient only and is not necessarily the official view or communication of the Department of the Prime Minister and Cabinet. If you are not the intended recipient you must not disclose, copy or distribute this message or the information in it. If you have received this message in error, please destroy the email and notify the sender immediately.

(DPMC Secured)

Released under the Official Information Act

The Evolution of the People of New Zealand

Maori are not “tangata whenua” – there were prior inhabitants - Dr Ranginui Walker

“The traditions are quite clear: wherever crew disembarked there were already tangata whenua (prior inhabitants). The canoe ancestors of the 14th century merged with these tangata whenua tribes. From this time on the traditions abound with accounts of tribal wars over the land and its resources”. Comment by Dr Ranginui Walker in ‘The New Zealand Book of Events’, page 18, (1986). When the Tiriti o Waitangi was signed the “canoe ancestors of the 14 century” were known a *tangata Maori*.

Maori tradition also makes it clear that the *tangata whenua* were light skinned with fair or reddish hair and in some cases, blue eyes. The Te Arawa tribes that moved to Rotorua and Taupo found people already inhabiting these areas. These people were called **Ngati Hotu** and were described by Te Arawa as, **“of non-Maori appearance, having reddish hair and pale skin”**. Other names given to the *tangata whenua* were **Patupaiarehe** or **Turehu**. Maori traditions tell of these friendly, peaceful and law abiding people teaching Maori many of their skills and cultures before they either “merged with the tangata Maori” or were exterminated by them. Captain Cook recalls he saw fair skinned Natives with reddish or blonde hair when he visited New Zealand in 1769. Tradition also tells that, *the tribal wars over land and resources* drove the *tangata whenua* into extinction.

Dr Ranginui Walker’s statement that his ancestors “merged with the tangata whenua” is confirmed as we find fair or red hair appearing in *tangata Maori*, although the *tangata whenua* were exterminated as were the peaceful Moriori of the Chatham Islands by the *tangata Maori* before the British became legally involved in New Zealand.

When the *Pakeha* started living in New Zealand in the early 19th century, they had no intention of harming the *tangata Maori*. They treated them with respect, although there were a few unfortunate incidents when the two cultures met. Especially when the Captain and 25 crew of the French ship *La Favourite* were killed and the crew retaliated by killing 250 *tangata Maori* and setting fire to their village. Another incident was when the ‘*tangata Maori*’ slaughtered the crew, men, women and children when the British ship the *Boyd* arrived in New Zealand in 1809.

With the signing of the Tiriti o Waitangi in 1840, New Zealand became a British Colony and *tangata Maori* were given the same rights as the people of England. At the time they signed the Tiriti o Waitangi, they were a distinct race of people called *tangata Maori*, but as they continued to intermarry of their own free will with the *Pakeha*, this race no longer exists. The British never tried to exterminate the ‘*tangata Maori*’ as the *tangata Maori* had exterminated the *tangata whenua* and the *Moriori*, they treated them with respect by giving them the same rights as the people of England under one flag and one law.

While the Government has done little research into the *tangata whenua*, they have researched areas of the Waipoua Forest, but the results of this research have been restricted from the public until 2065. What did they find that must be hidden from the public until 2065? While Maori admit that not all burial sites (human remains) are *Maori*, the Government returns all remains to Maori for reburial or disposal without DNA or other methods of finding their ‘true’ identity. The Government has just accepted the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous People, but the people that signed the Tiriti o Waitangi were called *tangata Maori* not *tangata whenua* or *Indigenous People*.

Once, again we are being duped by a Government that does not want us to know our *true* history.

As the people that arrived in the 14th century "*merged with the tangata whenua*" and became *tangata Maori*, the *tangata Maori* merged with the *Pakeha* and signed the Tiriti o Waitangi to become *British Subjects*, but once we adopted the Statute of Westminster in 1947 we all became *New Zealand Citizens* irrespective of race, colour or creed.

While the Tiriti gave *tangata Maori* protection and one law for all the people of New Zealand, it also gave *tangata Maori* the responsibility to act within the law. "..... the chief's placed in the hands of the Queen of England, the Sovereignty and authority to make laws. Some sections of the Maori people violated that authority, war arose and blood was spilled. The law came into operation and land was taken in payment. This in itself is Maori custom – revenge – plunder to avenge a wrong. It was their chiefs who ceded that right to the Queen. The confiscations cannot therefore be objected to in the light of the Treaty". Sir Apirana Ngata, M.A., LL.B.D. M.P., Minister of Native Affairs, 1922.

In the 1940's the Government still under the control of the British Government held inquiries into the alleged breaches of the law against the *tangata Maori* and any found to be valid had full and final settlements. Once these claims had been settled or rejected as the case may be, New Zealand adopted the Statute of Westminster in 1947 when all the people of New Zealand became New Zealand Citizens under one flag and one law, irrespective of race, colour or creed.

Since this time hundreds of thousands of people from other lands have settled in New Zealand and intermarried with those already here to become New Zealand Citizens.

Maori today are not the *tangata whenua* or the distinct race of people, the *tangata Maori* that signed the Tiriti in 1840, therefore should not be given preferential rights over any other New Zealander. Through intermarriage of their own free will with other races and the adoption of the Statute of Westminster in 1947, Maori today are New Zealand Citizens – No more – No less.

The End. (c).

Prepared by the One New Zealand Foundation Inc. 15/12/2011.



NATIONAL ARCHIVES

AT 88/57

BATH

AGREEMENT FOR THE TRANSFER OF ARCHIVES

THIS BLOCK TO BE FILLED IN BY THE TRANSFERRING DEPARTMENT

From: Department of Conservation
Kaikōhe

File ref.

The Chief Archivist,
 National Archives,
 P.O. Box 6148,
 Wellington.

The records listed on the attached 14 sheets are offered for transfer to your custody, for deposit in the National Archives, under the Archives Act 1957.

Restricted until 2063

No restrictions on the use of the records by bona fide research workers are required.

Prior consultation requires approval of the Te Kōwhiri-Whānau Archaeological Advisory Committee or other appropriate subsequent Te Kōwhiri authority

The quantity of records to be transferred is metres

Signature of authorising officer: M. Taylor

Date: 15/7/88 Designation: Archaeologist

Name of officer responsible for compiling the list: M. Taylor

Designation: Archaeologist

THIS BLOCK TO BE FILLED IN BY NATIONAL ARCHIVES

I agree to accept the custody of these records.

I hereby undertake to abide by the restrictions, if any, placed on the use of the records.

The records should now be sent to the National Archives Auckland

When they have been received one copy of the list and form N.A. 4 will be returned to you as a receipt.

Date: 7-9-1988

M. Taylor
 Chief Archivist.

Released under the Official Information Act

